The Sacred Books of the East: The institutes of Vishnu

Friedrich Max Müller
The New York Public Library
Astor, Lenox & Tilden Foundations

The R. Heber Newton Collection
Presented by His Children

* 1931 *
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

VOL. VII

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1880

[All rights reserved]
THE

INSTITUTES OF VISHNU

TRANSLATED BY

JULIUS JOLLY

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1880

[All rights reserved]
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vishnu and the Goddess of the Earth</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Four Castes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duties of a King</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weights and Measures</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criminal and Civil Law</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law of Debt</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writings</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Witnesses</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordeals</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inheritance</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funeral Ceremonies</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funeral Oblations</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impurity</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacraments</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studentship</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crimes</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hells</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmigration</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penances</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duties of a Householder</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for a Snātaka</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-restraint</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Srāddhas</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pious Gifts</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hermit</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ascetic</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

Meditation on Vishnu .............................. 287
Conclusion ........................................ 291
General Index ..................................... 303
Sanskrit Index .................................... 307
Additions and Corrections ....................... 312

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the
Translations of the Sacred Books of the East .... 313

LIST OF THE MORE IMPORTANT ABBREVIATIONS.

Gaut. — Gautama's Dharmarâstra, ed. Stenzler.
M. — Mânava Dharmarâstra, Calcutta edition, with the Com-
mentary of Kullûka.
Nand. — Nandapandita, the commentator of the Vishnu-sûtra.
Sânkh. — Sâîkhâyana's Gṛhya-sûtra, ed. Oldenberg, in the
fifteenth volume of the Indische Studien.
Y. — Vâgîñavalkya's Dharmaâstra, ed. Stenzler.

Âpast. and Gaut. refer also to Dr. Bühler's translation of these
two works in the second volume of the Sacred Books of the East.
INTRODUCTION.

The Vishnu-smṛiti or Vaishnava Dharmaśāstra or Vishnu-sūtra is in the main a collection of ancient aphorisms on the sacred laws of India, and as such it ranks with the other ancient works of this class which have come down to our time\(^1\). It may be styled a Dharma-sūtra, though this ancient title of the Sūtra works on law has been preserved in the MSS. of those Smṛitis only, which have been handed down, like the Dharma-sūtras of Āpastamba, Baudhāyana, and Hiranyakesin, as parts of the respective Kalpa-sūtras, to which they belong. The size of the Vishnu-sūtra, and the great variety of the subjects treated in it, would suffice to entitle it to a conspicuous place among the five or six existing Dharma-sūtras; but it possesses a peculiar claim to interest, which is founded on its close connection with one of the oldest Vedic schools, the Kathas, on the one hand, and with the famous code of Manu and some other ancient law-codes, on the other hand. To discuss these two principal points, and some minor points connected with them, as fully as the limits of an introduction admit of, will be the more necessary, because such a discussion can afford the only safe basis for a conjecture not altogether unsupported regarding the time and place of the original composition of this work, and may even tend to throw some new light on the vexed question as to the origin of the code of Manu. Further on I shall have to speak of the numerous interpolations traceable in the Vishnu-sūtra, and a few remarks regarding the materials

---

\(^1\) This was first pointed out by Professor Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 134. His results were confirmed and expanded by the subsequent researches of Dr. Bühler, Introduction to Bombay Digest, I, p. xxii; Indian Antiquary, V, p. 39; Kasmīr Report, p. 36.
used for this translation, and the principles of interpretation that have been followed in it, may be fitly reserved for the last.

There is no surer way for ascertaining the particular Vedic school by which an ancient Sanskrit law-book of unknown or uncertain origin was composed, than by examining the quotations from, and analogies with, Vedic works which it contains. Thus the Gautama Dharma-sâstra might have originated in any one among the divers Gautama Karanas with which Indian tradition acquaints us. But the comparatively numerous passages which its author has borrowed from the Samhitâ and from one Brâhmaṇa of the Sāma-veda prove that it must belong to one of those Gautama Karanas who studied the Sāma-veda. Regarding the code of Yâgñavalkya we learn from tradition that a Vedic teacher of that name was the reputed author of the White Yagur-veda. But this coincidence might be looked upon as casual, if the Yâgñavalkya-smrîti did not contain a number of Mantras from that Vedic Sâwhitâ, and a number of very striking analogies, in the section on funeral ceremonies particularly, with the Grîhyasûtra of the Vâgasaneyins, the Kâtiya Grîhya-sûtra of Pâraskara. In the case of the Vishnu-sûtra an enquiry of this kind is specially called for, because tradition leaves us entirely in the dark as to its real author. The fiction that the laws promulgated in Chapters II–XCVII were communicated by the god Vishnu to the goddess of the earth, is of course utterly worthless for historical purposes; and all that it can be made to show is that those parts of this work in which it is started or kept up cannot rival the laws themselves in antiquity.

Now as regards, first, the Vedic Mantras and Pratîkas (beginnings of Mantras) quoted in this work, it is necessary to leave aside, as being of no moment for the present purpose, i. very well-known Mantras, or, speaking more

INTRODUCTION.

precisely, all such Mantras as are frequently quoted in Vedic works of divers Sākhās; 2. the purificatory texts enumerated under the title of Sarva-veda-pavitrāṇī in LVI. The latter can afford us no help in determining the particular Sākhā to which this work belongs, because they are actually taken, as they profess to be, from all the Vedas indiscriminately, and because nearly the whole of Chapter LVI is found in the Vāsishṭha-smṛiti as well (see further on), which probably does not belong to the same Veda as this work. Among the former class of Mantras may be included, particularly, the Gāyatrī, the Purushasūkta, the Aghamarshana, the Kūshmāndīs, the Vyāhritis, the Gṛyesṭha Sāmans, the Rudras, the Trinākiketa, the Trisuparna, the Vaishnavas, Sākra, and Bārhaspatya Mantras mentioned in XC, 3, and the Mantra quoted in XXVIII, 51 (= Gautama’s ‘Retasya’). Among the twenty-two Mantras quoted in Chapters XLVIII, LXIV, LXV (including repetitions, but excluding the Purushasūkta, Gāyatrī, Aghamarshana) there are also some which may be referred to this class, and the great majority of them occur in more than one Veda at the same time. But it is worthy of note that no less than twelve, besides occurring in at least one other Sākhā, are either actually found in the Samhitā of the Kārāyanīya-kathas, the Kāṭhaka¹ (or Karaka-sākhā?), or stated to belong to it in the Commentary, while one is found in the Kāṭhaka alone, a second in the Atharva-veda alone, a third in the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa alone, and a fourth does not occur in any Vedic work hitherto known². A far greater number of Mantras occurs in Chapters XXI, LXVII, LXXIII, LXXIV, LXXXVI, which treat of daily oblations, Srāddhas, and the ceremony of setting a bull at liberty. Of all these Mantras, which,—including the Purushasūkta and other such well-known Mantras as well as the short invocations addressed to Soma, Agni, and other deities, but excluding the invocations addressed to Vishnu in the spurious Sūtra, LXVII, 2,—are more than a hundred in number, no more than forty or so are found in Vedic

¹ In speaking of this work I always refer to the Berlin MS.
² XLVIII, 10. Cf., however, Vāgas. Samh. IV, 12.
works hitherto printed, and in the law-books of Manu, Yāgñavalkya, and others; but nearly all are quoted, exactly in the same order as in this work, in the Kārāyanīya-kāthaka Grīhya-sūtra, while some of them have been traced in the Kāthaka as well. And what is even more important, the Kāthaka Grīhya does not contain those Mantras alone, but nearly all the Sūtras in which they occur; and it may be stated therefore, secondly, that the Vishnu-sūtra has four long sections, viz. Chapter LXXIII, and Chapters XXI, LXVII, LXXXVI, excepting the final parts, in common with that work, while the substance of Chapter LXXIV may also be traced in it. The agreement between both works is very close, and where they differ it is generally due to false readings or to enlargements on the part of the Vishnu-sūtra. However, there are a few cases, in which the version of the latter work is evidently more genuine than that of the former, and it follows, therefore, that the author of the Vishnu-sūtra cannot have borrowed his rules for the performance of Srāddhas &c. from the Kāthaka Grīhya-sūtra, but that both must have drawn from a common source, i.e. no doubt from the traditions current in the Kātha school, to which this work is indebted for so many of its Mantras as well.

For these reasons¹ I fully concur in the view advanced by Dr. Bühler, that the bulk of the so-called Vishnu-smṛiti is really the ancient Dharma-sūtra of the Kārāyanīya-kāthaka Śākhā of the Black Yagur-veda. It ranks, like other Dharma-sūtras, with the Grīhya and Srauta-sūtras of its school; the latter of which, though apparently lost now, is distinctly referred to in the Grīhya-sūtra in several places, and must have been in existence at the time when the Commentaries on Kātyāyana’s Srauta-sūtras were composed, in which it is frequently quoted by the name

¹ For details I may refer the reader to my German paper, Das Dharmaśūtra des Vishnu und das Kāṭaka-grīhyasūtra, in the Transactions of the Royal Bavarian Academy of Science for 1879, where the sections corresponding in both works have been printed in parallel columns, the texts from the Kāṭaka Grīhya-sūtra having been prepared from two of the MSS. of Devapāla’s Commentary discovered by Dr. Bühler (Kasmīr Report, Nos. 11, 12), one in Devanāgarī, and the other in Sāradā characters.
of Katha-sutra on divers questions concerning Srauta offerings, and at the time, when the Kashmirian Devapâla wrote his Commentary on the Kathaka Grihya-sutra, which was, according to the Kashmirian tradition, as explored by Dr. Bühler, before the conquest of Kasmîr by the Mahomedans. Devapâla, in the Introduction to his work, refers to 'thirty-nine Adhyayas treating of the Vaitânika (= Srauta) ceremonies,' by which the Grihya-sutra was preceded, from which statement it may be inferred that the Kathaka Srauta-sutras must have been a very voluminous work indeed, as the Grihya-sutra, which is at least equal if not superior in extent to other works of the same class, forms but one Adhyaya, the fortieth, of the whole Kalpa-sutra, which, according to Devapâla, was composed by one author. It does not seem likely that the Vishnu-sutra was composed by the same man, or that it ever formed part of the Kathaka Kalpa-sutra, as the Dharma-sutras of Baudhâyana, Âpastamba, and Hiranyakesin form part of the Kalpa-sutras of the respective schools to which they belong. If that were the case, it would agree with the Grihya-sutra on all those points which are treated in both works, such as e.g. the terms for the performance of the Samskâras or sacraments, the rules for a student and for a Snâtaka, the enumeration and definition of the Krikkhras or 'hard penances,' the forms of marriage, &c. Now though the two works have on those subjects a number of such rules in common as occur in other works also, they disagree for the most part in the choice of expressions, and on a few points lay down exactly opposite rules, such as the Vishnu-sutra (XXVIII, 28) giving permission to a student to ascend his spiritual teacher's carriage after him, whereas the other work prescribes, that he shall do so on no account. Moreover, if both works had been destined from the first to supplement one another, they would, instead of having several entire sections in common, exhibit such cross-references as are found e.g. between the Âpastamba Grihya and Dharma-sutras; though the absence of such

references might be explained, in the case of the Vishnu-
sutra, by the activity of those who brought it into its
present shape, and who seem to have carefully removed
all such references to other works as the original Dharm-
sutra may have contained. Whatever the precise nature of
the relations between this work and the other Sutra works
of the Kārāyaniya-kāthaka school may have been, there is
no reason for assigning to it a later date than to the
Kāthaka Srauta and Grihya-sūtras, with the latter of which
it has so much in common, and it may therefore claim a
considerable antiquity, especially if it is assumed, with Dr.
Bühler, that the beginning of the Sutra period differed for
each Veda. The Veda of the Kāthas, the Kāthaka, is not
separated from the Sutra literature of this school by an
intermediate Brāhmaṇa stage; yet its high antiquity is
testified by several of the most eminent grammarians of
India from Yāska down to Kaiyata. Thus the Kāthaka
is the only existing work of its kind, which is quoted by
the former grammarian (Nirukta X, 5; another clear
quotation from the Kāthaka, XXVII, 9, though not by
name, may be found, Nirukta III, 4), and the latter places
the Kāthas at the head of all Vedic schools, while Patañ-
gali, the author of the Mahābhāṣya, assigns to the ancient
sage Kāthaka, the reputed founder of the Kāthā or Kāthaka
school of the Black Yagur-veda, the dignified position of
an immediate pupil of Vaisampāyana, the fountain-head of
all schools of the older or Black Yagur-veda, and mentions,
in accordance with a similar statement preserved in the
Rāmāyana (II, 32, 18, 19 ed. Schlegel), that in his own
time the ‘Kālāpaka and the Kāthaka’ were ‘proclaimed in
every village’. The priority of the Kāthas before all other
existing schools of the Yagur-veda may be deduced from
the statements of the Karanavyūha, which work assigns to
them one of the first places among the divers branches of

1 See Weber, Indische Studien XIII, p. 437 seq.
2 Mahābhāṣya, Benares edition, IV, fols. 84 b, 75 b.
the Karakas, whom it places at the head of all schools of the Yagur-veda. Another argument in favour of the high antiquity of the Kathas may be derived from their geographical position. Though the statements of the Mahabhāsha and Ramayana regarding the wide-spread and influential position of the Kathas in ancient times are borne out by the fact that the Karanavvyaha mentions three subdivisions of the Kathas, viz. the Kathas proper, the Prākyya Kathas, and the Kapishtala Kathas, to which the Kārāyanīyas may be added as a fourth, and by the seeming identity of their name with the name of the Kātha in the Paṅgāb on the one hand, and with the first part of the name of the peninsula of Kattivar on the other hand, it seems very likely nevertheless that the original home of the Kathas was situated in the north-west, i.e. in those regions where the earliest parts of the Vedas were composed. Not only the Kāthā, but the Kāmbītholos as well, who have been identified with the Kapishtala Kathas, are mentioned by Greek writers as a nation living in the Paṅgāb; and while the Prākyya Kathas are shown by their name (‘Eastern Kathas’) to have lived to the east of the two other branches of the Kathas, it is a significant fact that adherents of the Kārāyanīya-kāthaka school survive nowhere but in Kasmīr, where all Brāhmaṇas perform their domestic rites according to the rules laid down in the Grihya-sūtra of this school. Kasmīr is moreover the country where nearly all the yet existing works of the Kāthaka school have turned up, including the Berlin MS. of the Kāthaka, which was probably written by a Kasmīrian. It is true that some of the geographical and historical data contained in that work, especially the way in which it mentions the Paṅkālas, whose ancient name, as shown by the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa (XIII, 5, 4, 7) and Rig-

2 See, however, Max Müller, Hist. Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 333.
3 Bühler, Kasmīr Report, p. 20 seq.
4 This was pointed out to me by Dr. Bühler.
veda (VIII, 20, 24; VIII, 22, 12), was Krivi, take us far off from the north-west, the earliest seat of Áryan civilization, into the country of the Kuru-Paákálas in Hindostán proper. But it must be borne in mind that the Káthaka, if it may be identified with the 'Karaka-sákhá,' must have been the Veda of all the Karakas except perhaps the Maitráya-
níyas and Kapishthálas, and may have been altered and enlarged, after the Kathás and Karakas had spread themselves across Hindostán. The Sútras of a Sákhá which appears to have sprung up near the primitive home of Áryan civilization in India, which was probably the original home of the Kathás at the same time, may be far older than those of mere Sutra schools of the Black Yágrur-veda, which have sprung up, like the Ápastamba school, in South India, i.e. far older than the fourth or fifth century B.C.¹

But sufficient space has been assigned to these attempts at fixing the age of the Káthaka-sútras which, besides remaining only too uncertain in themselves, can apply with their full force to those parts of the Vishnu-sútra only, which have been traced in the Káthaka Gṛihya-sútra. It will be seen afterwards that even these sections, however closely connected with the sacred literature of the Kathás, have been tampered with in several places, and it might be argued, therefore, that the whole remainder of the Vishnu-sútra, to which the Káthaka literature offers no parallel, may be a subsequent addition. But the antiquity of the great majority of its laws can be proved by independent arguments, which are furnished by a comparison of the Vishnu-sútra with other works of the same class, whose antiquity is not doubted.

In the foot-notes to my translation I have endeavoured to give as complete references as possible to the analogous passages in the Smrtis of Manu, Yagñavalkya, Ápastamba, and Gautama, and in the four Gṛihya-sútras hitherto printed. A large number of analogous passages might have been traced in the Dharma-sútras of Váishnava.²

¹ See Bühler, Introd. to Ápastamba, p. xliii.
² See the Benares edition (1878), which is accompanied with a Commentary by Krishnapandita Dharmádhikárin. I should have given references to this
and Baudhāyana as well, not to mention Hiranyakesin’s Dharma-sūtra, which, according to Dr. Bühler, is nearly identical with the Dharma-sūtra of Āpastamba. Two facts may be established at once by glancing at these analogies, viz. the close agreement of this work with the other Sūtra works in point of form, and with all the above-mentioned works in point of contents. As regards the first point, the Sūtras or prose rules of which the bulk of the Vishnu-sūtra is composed, show throughout that characteristic laconism of the Sūtra style, which renders it impossible in many cases to make out the real meaning of a Sūtra without the help of a Commentary; and in the choice of terms they agree as closely as possible with the other ancient law-books, and in some cases with the Grihya-sūtras as well. Numerous verses, generally in the Sloka metre, and occasionally designed as ‘Gāthās,’ are added at the end of most chapters, and interspersed between the Sūtras in some; but in this particular also the Vishnu-sūtra agrees with at least one other Dharma-sūtra, the Vāsishtha-smṛiti, and it contains in its law part, like the latter work, a number of verses in the ancient Tristubh metre. Four of these Tristubhs are found in the Vāsishtha-smṛiti, and three in Yāska’s Nirukta as well, and the majority of the Slokas has been traced in the former work and the other above-mentioned law-books, and in other Smṛitis. In point of contents the great majority both of the metrical and prose rules of the Vishnu-sūtra agrees with one, or some, or all of the works named above. The Grihya-sūtras, excepting the Kāthaka Grihya-sūtra, naturally offer a far smaller number of analogies with it than the Smṛitis, still they exhibit several rules, in the Snātaka-dharmas and otherwise, that have not been traced in any other Smṛiti except the work here translated. Among the Smṛitis again, each single one may be seen

work, the first complete and reliable edition of the Vāsishtha-smṛiti, in the footnotes to my translation, but for the fact that it did not come into my hands till the former had gone to the press. For Baudhāyana I have consulted a Munich MS. containing the text only of his Sūtras (cod. Haug 163).

1 XIX, 23, 34; XXIII, 61; XXIX, 9, 10; XXX, 47 (see Nirukta II, 4; Vāsishtha II, 8–10); LVI, 27 (see Vāsishtha XXVIII, 15); LIX, 30; LXXII, 7; LXXXVI, 16.
from the references to contain a number of such rules, as are only met with in this work, which is a very important fact because, if the laws of the Vishnu-sûtra were found either in all other Smrîtis, or in one of them only, its author might be suspected of having borrowed them from one of those works. As it is, meeting with analogous passages now in one work, and then in another, one cannot but suppose that the author of this work has everywhere drawn from the same source as the other Sûtrakâras, viz. from ancient traditions that were common to all Vedic schools.

There are, moreover, a number of cases in which this work, instead of having borrowed from other works of the same class, can be shown to have been, directly or indirectly, the source from which they drew, and this fact constitutes a third reason in favour of the high antiquity of its laws. The clearest case of this kind is furnished by the Vâsishtha-smrîti, with which this work has two entire chapters in common, which are not found elsewhere. I subjoin in a note the text of Vâsishtha XXVIII, 10–15, with an asterisk to those words which contain palpable mistakes (not including blunders in point of metre), for comparison with Chapter LVI of this work in the Calcutta edition, which is exceptionally correct in this chapter and in Chapter LXXXVII, which latter corresponds to Vâsishtha XXVIII, 18–22.1 In both

---

1 सैन्येनां विन्दुर्वणां वक्त्वायांमेवः परम्।
\*येवां जपैः होमैः धूप्यन्ते नादात्संहः ||१०१॥
\*चरणमेवां धेरवकृः हुतवयः सरसमाः।
\*कृष्णाद्वानि पाठानयो हुगोसाधिनिन्दिभेस (?) च ||१११॥
\*अभिप्रेपं यद्भोमः सामानिनि भाहुतोस्लष्मा (?)।
\*भारतक्तानि सामानि गायत्रि धैवति तयोः ||१२॥
\*मुहुष्ट्रते च भासं च तया धेरवततानि च।
\*चरविर्तं (?) वाहिस्मतं वास्मुक्तं मधुरसल्लष्मा ||१३॥
\*ज्ञात्समप्यरस्तक्तिनिक्तुपणि महात्मम।
\*गोमुखं चापमुक्तं च इति (?) च सामेदी ||१४॥
\*कृष्णाद्वानि रक्षतरं च
\*सामेदीयानि भास्त्रेष्यं वृहद्।
chapters Vishnu has mainly prose Sutras and throughout
a perfectly correct text, whereas Vasishtha has bad Slokas
which, supported as they are by the Commentary or by the
metre or by both, can only be accounted for by carelessness
or clerical mistakes in some cases, and by a clumsy versifica-
tion of the original prose version preserved in this work in
others. Another chapter of the Vishnu-sutra, the forty-
eighth, nowhere meets with a parallel except in the third
Prasna of the Dharma-sutra of Baudhāyana, where it recurs
almost word for word. An examination of the various
readings in both works shows that in some of the Slokas
Baudhāyana has better readings, while in one or two others
the readings of Vishnu seem preferable, though the un-
satisfactory condition of the MS. consulted renders it unsafe
to pronounce a definitive judgment on the character of
Baudhāyana’s readings. At all events he has a few Vedic
Mantras more than Vishnu, which however seem to be very
well-known Mantras and are quoted by their Pratikas only.
But he omits the two important Sutras 9 and 10 of Vishnu,
the latter of which contains a Mantra quoted at full, which,
although corrupted (see Vāgas. Samh. IV, 12) and hardly
intelligible, is truly Vedic in point of language; and he adds
on his part a clause at the end of the whole chapter1, which
inculcates the worship of Ganesa or Siva or both, and would
be quite sufficient in itself to cast a doubt on the genuineness
and originality of his version. It is far from improbable
that both Vasishtha and Baudhāyana may have borrowed

1 गणान्तपदति गणान्तपदि पद्यति विष्णु पद्यति विष्णाधिपति पद्यति।
इमाह भगवान्विधायत:।
the sections referred to directly from an old recension of this work, as Baudhāyana has borrowed another chapter of his work from Gautama, while Vāsishṭha in his turn has borrowed the same chapter from Baudhāyana.¹ It may be added in confirmation of this view, that as far as Vāsishṭha is concerned, his work is the only Smṛiti, as far as I know, which contains a quotation from the ‘Kāṭhaka’ (in XXIX, 18). The Dharma-sūtras of Āpastamba and Gautama have nowhere a large number of consecutive Sūtras in common with the Vishnu-sūtra, but it is curious to note that the rule, which the latter (X, 45) quotes as the opinion of ‘some’ (ekte), that a non-Brahmanical finder of a treasure, who announces his find to the king, shall obtain one-sixth of the value, is found in no other law-book except in this, which states (III, 61) that a Sūdra shall divide a treasure-trove into twelve parts, two of which he may keep for himself. Of the metrical law-books, one, the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti, has been shown by Professor Max Müller² to have borrowed the whole anatomical section (III, 84–104), including the simile of the soul which dwells in the heart like a lamp (III, 109, 111, 201), from this work (XCVI, 43–96; XCVII, 9); and it has been pointed out by the same scholar, that the verse in which the author of the former work speaks of the Āranyaka and of the Yoga-sāstra as of his own works (III, 110) does not occur in the Vishnu-sūtra, and must have been added by the versificator, who brought the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti into its present metrical form. Several other Slokas in Yāgñavalkya’s description of the human body (III, 99, 105–108), and nearly the whole section on Yoga (Y, III, 111–203, excepting those Slokas, the substance of which is found in this work and in the code of Manu, viz. 131–140, 177–182, 190, 198–201) may be traced to the same source, as may be also the omission of Vishnu’s enumeration of the ‘six limbs’ (XCVI, 90) in the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti, and probably all the minor points on which it differs from this work. Generally speaking, those

¹ See Bühler, Introduction to Gautama, pp. 1–liv.
INTRODUCTION.

passages which have been justly noticed as marking the comparatively late period in which that law-book must have been composed\(^1\): such as the allusions to the astrology and astronomy of the Greeks (V. I, 80, 295), which render it necessary to refer the metrical redaction of the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti to a later time than the second century A. D.; the whole passage on the worship of Ganesa and of the planets (I, 270–307), in which, moreover, a heterodox sect is mentioned, that has been identified with the Buddhists; the philosophical doctrines propounded in I, 349, 350; the injunctions regarding the foundation and endowment of monasteries (II, 185 seq.)—all these passages have no parallel in this work, while it is not overstating the case to say that nearly all the other subjects mentioned in the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti are treated in a similar way, and very often in the same terms, in the Vishnu-sūtra as well. Some of those rules, in which the posteriority of the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti to other law-books exhibits itself, do occur in the Vishnu-sūtra, but without the same marks of modern age. Thus the former has two Slokas concerning the punishment of forgery (II, 240, 241), in which coined money is referred to by the term nānakā; the Vishnu-sūtra has the identical rule (V, 122, 123; cf. V, 9), but the word nānakā does not occur in it. Yāgñavalkya, in speaking of the number of wives which a member of the three higher castes may marry (I, 57), advocates the Puritan view, that no Sūdra wife must be among these; this work has analogous rules (XXIV, I–4), in which, however, such marriages are expressly allowed. The comparative priority of all those Sūtras of Vishnu, to which similar Slokas of Yāgñavalkya correspond, appears probable on general grounds, which are furnished by the course of development in this as in other branches of Indian literature; and to this it may be added,

---

\(^1\) See Stenzler, in the Preface to his edition of Yāgñavalkya; Jacobi, on Indian Chronology, in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, XXX, 305 seq., &c. Vishnu’s rules (III, 82) concerning the wording &c. of royal grants, which agree with the rules of Yāgñavalkya and other authors, must be allowed a considerable antiquity, as the very oldest grants found in South India conform to those rules. See Burnell, South Indian Palæography, 2nd ed., p. 95.
as far as the civil and criminal laws are concerned, that the former enumerates them quite promiscuously, just like the other Dharma-sūtras, with which he agrees besides in separating the law of inheritance from the body of the laws, whereas Yāgñavalkya enumerates all the laws in the order of the eighteen 'titles of law' of Manu and the more recent law-books, though he does not mention the titles of law by name.

However much the Vishnu-sūtra may have in common with the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti, there is no other law-book with which it agrees so closely as with the code of Manu. This fact may be established by a mere glance at the references in the foot-notes to this translation, in which Manu makes his appearance far more frequently and constantly than any other author, and the case becomes the stronger, the more the nature of these analogies is inquired into. Of Slokas alone Vishnu has upwards of 160 in common with Manu, and in a far greater number of cases still his Sūtras agree nearly word for word with the corresponding rules of Manu. The latter also, though he concurs in a very great number of points with the other law authors as well, agrees with none of them so thoroughly as with Vishnu. All the Smṛitis of Āpastamba, Baudhāyana, Vāsishtha, Yāgñavalkya, and Nārada contain, according to an approximate calculation, no more than about 130 Slokas, that are found in the code of Manu as well. The latter author and Vishnu differ of course on a great many minor points, and an exhaustive discussion of this subject would fill a treatise; I must therefore confine myself to notice some of those differences, which are particularly important for deciding the relative priority of the one work before the other. In a number of Slokas Manu's readings are decidedly older and better than Vishnu's. Thus the latter (XXX, 7) compares the three 'Atigurus' to the 'three gods,' i.e. to the post-Vedic Trimūrti of 'Brahman, Vishnu, and Siva,' as the commentator expressly states, whereas Manu in an analogous Sloka (II, 230) refers to the 'three orders' instead. At the end of the section on inheritance (XVIII, 44) Vishnu mentions among other
indivisible objects ‘a book,’ pustakam; Manu (IX, 219) has the same Sloka, but for pustakam he reads prāka-kshate. Now pustaka is a modern word, and Varāhamihira, who lived in the sixth century A.D., appears to be the first author, with a known date, by whom it is used. It occurs again, Vishnu-sūtra XXIII, 56 (prokshavtena ka pustakam), and here also Manu (V, 122) has a different reading (punaḥpākena mrinmayam). The only difference between Vishnu-sūtra XXII, 93 and Manu V, 110 consists in the use of singular forms (te, srinu) in the former work, and of plural forms (vah, srinuta) in the latter. Now there are a great many other Smritis besides the Manu-smṛiti, such as e.g. the Yāgñavalkya and Parāsara Smritis, in which the fiction is kept up, that the laws contained in them are promulgated to an assembly of Rishis; but there are very few Smritis of the least notoriety or importance besides the Vishnu-sūtra, in which they are proclaimed to a single person. Other instances in which Manu’s readings appear preferable to Vishnu’s may be found, LI, 60 (pretya keha kā nishkritic) = Manu V, 38 (pretya ganmani ganmani); LI, 64 (iti kathaṅkana) = M. V, 41 (iti abravinmanuḥ); LI, 76 (tasya) = M. V, 53 (tayoḥ); LIV, 27 (brahmancayā) = M. XI, 193 (brahmanā); LVII, 11 (purastād anukodītām) = M. IV, 248; Vāsishtha XIV, 16; Āpastamba I, 6, 19, 14 (purastād aprākodicām); LXVII, 45 (sāyamprātāya tvatitah) = M. III, 99 (samprāptāya tvatitah), &c. But these instances do not prove much, as all the passages in question may have been tampered with by the Vishnuitic editor, and as in some other cases the version of Vishnu seems preferable. Thus ‘practised by the virtuous’ (sādhu-bhīṣka nishevitam, LXXI, 90) is a very common epithet of ‘ākāra,’ and reads better than Manu’s nibaddham sveshu karmasu (IV, 155); and krikkṛatikrikkṛam (LIV, 30) seems preferable to Baudhāyana’s and Manu’s krikkṛatikrikkṛau (XI, 209). What is more important, the Vishnu-sūtra does not only contain a number of verses in the ancient Trishtubh metre, whereas Manu has none, but it shows those identical three Trishtubhs of Vāsishtha and Yāska, which Dr. Bühler

---

1 See Max Müller, Hist. Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 512.
has proved to have been converted into Anushṭubh Slokas by Manu (II, 114, 115, 144); and Manu seems to have taken the substance of his three Slokas from this work more immediately, because both he (II, 144) and Vishnu (XXX, 47) have the reading ávṛinoti for átriṇati, which truly Vedic form is employed both by Vāsishtha and Yāska. The relative antiquity of Vishnu's prose rules, as compared to the numerous corresponding Slokas of Manu, may be proved by arguments precisely similar to those which I have adduced above in speaking of the Yāgñavalkya-smṛiti. As regards those points in the code of Manu, which are usually considered as marks of the comparatively late date of its composition, it will suffice to mention, that the Vishnu-sūtra nowhere refers to South Indian nations such as the Dravidas and Andhras, or to the Yavanas; that it shows no distinct traces of an acquaintance with the tenets of any other school of philosophy except the Yoga and Śāṅkha systems; that it does not mention female ascetics disparagingly, and in particular does not contain Manu's rule (VIII, 363) regarding the comparatively light punishment to be inflicted for violation of (Buddhist and other) female ascetics; and that it does not inveigh (see XV, 3), like Manu (IX, 64–68), against the custom of Niyoja or appointment of a widow to raise offspring to her deceased husband. It is true, on the other hand, that in many cases Vishnu's rules have a less archaic character than the corresponding precepts of Manu, not only in the Slokas, but in the Sūtra part as well. Thus written documents and ordeals are barely mentioned in the code of Manu (VIII, 114, 115, 168; IX, 232); Vishnu on the other hand, besides referring in divers places to royal grants and edicts, to written receipts and other private documents, and to books, devotes to writings (lekhya) an entire chapter, in which he makes mention of the caste of Kāyasthas, 'scribes,' and he lays down elaborate rules for the performance of five species of ordeals, to which recourse should be had, according to him, in all suits of some importance. But in nearly all such cases the antiquity of Vishnu's

1 Introduction to Bombay Digest, I, p. xxvii seq.
rules is warranted to a certain extent by corresponding rules occurring in the Smritis of Yāgñavalkya and Nārada; and the evidence for the modifications and entire transformations, which the code of Manu must have undergone in a number of successive periods, is so abundant, that the archaic character of many of its rules cannot be considered to constitute a sufficient proof of the priority of the whole code before other codes which contain some rules of a comparatively modern character. To this it must be added that the Nārada-smṛiti, though taken as a whole it is decidedly posterior to the code of Manu, is designated by tradition as an epitome from another and more bulky recension of the code of Manu than the one which we now possess; and if this statement may be credited, which is indeed rather doubtful, the very particular resemblance between both works in the law of evidence and in the rules regarding property (see LVIII) can only tend to corroborate the assumption that the Vishnu-sūtra and the Manu-smṛiti must have been closely connected from the first.

This view is capable of further confirmation still by a different set of arguments. The so-called code of Manu is universally assumed now to be an improved metrical edition of the ancient Dharma-sūtra of the (Maitrāyanīya-) Mānavas, a school studying the Black Yagur-veda; and it has been shown above that the ancient stock of the Vishnu-sūtra, in which all the parts hitherto discussed may be included, represents in the main the Dharma-sūtra of the Kārāyanīya-kathas, another school studying the Black Yagur-veda. Now these two schools do not only belong both to that Veda, but to the same branch of it, as may be seen from the Karanavyūha, which work classes both the Kathas and Kārāyanīyas on the one hand, and the Mānavas

---

1 See the evidence collected in the Preface to my Institutes of Nārada (London, 1876), to which the important fact may be added that Nārada uses the word dīnāra, the Roman denarius. It occurs in a large fragment discovered by Dr. Bühler of a more bulky and apparently older recension of that work than the one which I have translated; and I may be allowed to mention, incidentally, that this discovery has caused me to abandon my design of publishing the Sanskrit text of the shorter recension, as it may be hoped that the whole text of the original work will soon come to light.
together with the six or five other sections of the Maitrāyangniyas on the other hand, as subdivisions of the Karaka Sakhā of the Black Yagur-veda. What is more, there exists a thorough-going parallelism between the literature of those two schools, as far as it is known. To begin with their respective Samhitās, it has been shown by L. Schröder¹ that the Maitrāyangni Samhitā has more in common with the Kāthaka, the Samhitā of the Kathas, than with any other Veda. As the Kathas are constantly named, in the Mahābhāshya and other old works, by the side of the Kālāpas, whereas the name of the Maitrāyangniyas does not occur in any Sanskrit work of uncontested antiquity, it has been suggested by the same scholar that the Maitrāyangniyas may be the Kālāpas of old, and may not have assumed the former name till Buddhism began to prevail in India. However this may be, the principal Sūtra works of both schools stand in a similar relation to one another as their Samhitās. Some of those Mantras, which have been stated above to be common to the Vishnu-sūtra and Kāthaka Grihya only, and to occur in no other Vedic work hitherto printed, have been traced in the Mānava Srauta-sūtra, in the chapter on Pinda-pitriyagña (I, 2 of the section on Prāksoma)², and the conclusion is, that if the Srauta-sūtra of the Kāthaka school were still in existence, it would be found to exhibit a far greater number of analogies with the Srauta-sūtra of the Mānavas. The Grihya-sūtra of this school³ agrees with the Kāthaka Grihya-sūtra even more closely than the latter agrees with the Vishnu-sūtra, as both works have not only several entire chapters in common (the chapter on the Vaisvadeva sacrifice among others, which is found in the Vishnu-sūtra also), but concur everywhere in the arrangement of the subject-matter and in the choice of expressions and Mantras. The Brāhmaṇa stage of Vedic literature is not represented by a separate work in either of the two schools, but a further argument in

² Cod. Haug 53 of the Munich Library.
³ Codd. Haug 55 and 56 of the Munich Library. For details, see my German paper above referred to.
favour of their alleged historical connection may be derived from their respective geographical position. If it has been rightly conjectured above, that the original seats of the Kāthas were in the north-west, whence they spread themselves over Hindostān, the Maitrāyaṇīyas, though now surviving nowhere except in some villages ‘near the Sātpura mountain, which is included in the Vindhyas’, must have been anciently their neighbours, as the territory occupied by them extended ‘from the Mayūra mountain into Gujārāt,’ and reached ‘as far as the north-western country’ (vāya vyadāsa). Considering all this evidence regarding the original connection between the Kāthas and Mānāvas, it may be said without exaggeration, that it would be far more surprising to find no traces of resemblance between their respective Dharma-sūtras, such as we possess them, than to find, as is actually the case, the contrary; and it may be argued, vice versa, that the supposed connection of the two works with the Vedic schools of the Kāthas and Mānāvas respectively, is confirmed by the kinship existing between these two schools.

In turning now from the ancient parts of the Vīshnusūtra to its more recent ingredients, I may again begin by quoting Professor Max Müller’s remarks on this work, which contain the statement, that it is ‘enlarged by modern additions written in Slokas’. After him, Dr. Bühler pointed out that the whole work appears to have been recast by an adherent of Vīshnu, and that the final and introductory chapters in particular are shown by their very style to have been composed by another author than the body of the

---

2 See a passage from the Mahānava, as quoted by Dr. Bühler, Introduction to Āpastamba, p. xxx seq. The same readings are found in a Munich MS. of the Karasavyūha-vyākhyā (cod. Haug 45). With the above somewhat unclear statement Manu’s definition of the limits of Brahmāvarta (II, 17) may not unreasonably be compared.
3 The code of Manu has very little in common with the Mānava Grihyasūtra, both in the Mantras and otherwise. Both Vīshnu and Manu agree with the Kāṭaka in the use of the curious term abhinirmukta or abhinirmukta; but the same term is used by Āpastamba, Vāsishṭā, and others.
5 Introduction to Bombay Digest, p. xxii.
work. If the latter remark were in need of further confirmation, it might be urged that the description of Vishnu as 'the boar of the sacrifice' (yagāvārāha) in the first chapter is bodily taken from the Harivamsa (2226–2237), while most of the epithets given to Vishnu in I, 49–61 and XC VIII, 7–100 may be found in another section of the Mahābhārata, the so-called Vishnu-sahasranāma. Along with the introductory and final chapters, all those passages generally are distinctly traceable to the activity of the Vishnuitic editor, in which Vishnu (Purusha, Bhagavat, Vāsudeva, &c.) is mentioned, or his dialogue with the goddess of the earth carried on, viz. I; V, 193; XIX, 24; XX, 16–21; XXII, 93; XXIII, 46; XXIV, 35; XLVII, 10; XLIX; LXIV, 28, 29; LXV; LXVI; LXVII, 2; XC, 3–5, 17–23; XCVI, 97, 98; XC VII, 7–21; XC VIII–C. The short invocation addressed to Vishnu in LX VII, 12 is proved to be ancient by its recurrence in the corresponding chapter of the Kâthaka Grahyâstrā, and Chapter LXV contains genuine Kâthaka Mantras transferred to a Vishnuitic ceremony. Chapter LX VI, on the other hand, though it does not refer to Vishnu by name, seems to be connected with the same Vishnuitic rite, and becomes further suspected by the recurrence of several of its rules in the genuine Chapter LXXIX. The contents of Chapter XC VII, in which it is attempted to reconcile some of the main tenets of the Sāṅkhya system, as propounded in the Sāṅkhya-kārikā, Sāṅkhya-pravakṣanabhāshya, and other works, with the Vaishāvava creed and with the Yoga; the fact that the two Slokas in XC VI (97, 98) and part of the Slokas in XC VII (15–21) have their parallel in similar Slokas of the Bhagavad-gitā and of the Bhāgavata-purāṇa; the terms Mahatpati, Kapila, and Sāṅkhya-kārya, used as epithets of Vishnu (XC VIII, 26, 85, 86); and some other passages in the Vishnuitic chapters seem to favour the supposition that the editor may have been one of those members of the Vishnuitic sect of the Bhāgavatas, who were conspicuous for their leaning towards the Sāṅkhya and Yoga systems of philosophy. The arrangement of the Vishnu-sūtra in a hundred chapters is no doubt due to the same person, as the Commentary points out that the num-
ber of the epithets given to Vishnu in XCVIII is precisely equal to the number of chapters into which the laws promulgated by him are divided (II–XCVII); though the number ninety-six is received only by including the introductory and final invocations (XCVIII, 6, 101) among the epithets of Vishnu. It seems quite possible, that some chapters were inserted mainly in order to bring up the whole figure to the round number of a hundred chapters, and it is for this reason chiefly that the majority of the following additions, which show no Vishnuitic tendencies, may also be attributed to the Vishnuitic editor.

1. Most or all of the Slokas added at the end of Chapters XX (22–53) and XLIII (32–45) cannot be genuine; the former on account of their great extent and partial recurrence in the Bhagavad-gītā, Mahābhārata, and other works of general note, and because they refer to the self-immolation of widows and to Kāla, whom the commentator is probably right in identifying with Vishnu; the latter on account of their rather extravagant character and decidedly Purānic style, though the Gāruḍa-purāṇa, in its very long description of the hells, offers no strict parallel to the details given here. The verses in which the Brāhmaṇas and cows are celebrated (XIX, 22, 23; XXIII, 57–61) are also rather extravagant; however, some of them are Trīśubhs, and the verses in XIX are closely connected with the preceding Śūtras. The two final Slokas in LXXXVI (19, 20) may also be suspected as to their genuineness, because they are wanting in the corresponding chapter of the Kāṭhaka Grīhya-sūtra; and a number of other verses in divers places, because they have no parallel in the Śāraṇa literature, or because they have been traced in comparatively modern works, such as the Bhagavad-gītā, the Pañcatantra, &c. 2. The week of the later Romans and Greeks, and of modern Europe (LXXVIII, 1–7), the self-immolation of widows (XXV, 14; cf. XX, 39), and the Buddhists and Pāṇḍūptas (LXIII, 36) are not mentioned in any ancient Sanskrit work. Besides, the passages in question may be easily removed, especially the Śūtras referring to the seven days of the week, which

1 Besides the passages quoted in the notes, 50–53 nearly = Bhag.-gītā II, 22–25.
form clearly a subsequent addition to the enumeration of the Nakshatras and Tithis immediately following (LXXVIII, 8–50), and the rule concerning the burning of widows (XXV, 14), which is in direct opposition to the law concerning the widow's right to inherit (XVII, 4) and to other precepts regarding widows. That the three terms kāshāyin, pravragita, malina in LXIII, 36 refer to members of religious orders seems clear, but it may be doubted whether malina denotes the Pāṣupatas, and even whether kāshāyin (cf. pravragitā XXXVI, 7) denotes the Buddhists, as dresses dyed with Kashāya are worn by Brahmancial sects also, and prescribed for students, and for ascetics likewise, by some of the Gṛhya- and Dharma-sūtras. Still the antiquity of the Sūtra in question can hardly be defended, because the acquaintance of the Vishnuitic editor with the Buddhistic system of faith is proved by two other Sūtras (XC VIII, 40, 41), and because the whole subject of good and evil omens is not treated in any other ancient Smṛti. On the other hand, such terms as vedanindā and nāstikatā (XXXVII, 4, 31, &c.) recur in most Smṛritis, and can hardly be referred to the Buddhists in particular. 3. The Tirthas enumerated in LXXXV, some of which are sacred to Vishnu and Siva, belong to all parts of India, and many of them are situated in the Dekhan, which was certainly not included within the limits of the 'Āryāvarta' of the ancient Dharma-sūtra (LXXXIV, 4). As no other Smṛti contains a list of this kind, the whole chapter may be viewed as a later addition. 4. The ceremonies described in XC are not mentioned in other Smṛritis, while some of them are decidedly Vishnuitic, or traceable in modern works; and as all the Sūtras in XC hang closely together, this entire chapter seems also to be spurious. 5. The repetitions in the list of articles forbidden to sell (LIV, 18–22); the addition of the two categories of atipātakāni, 'crimes in the highest degree,' and prakīrnakam, 'miscellaneous crimes' (XXXIII, 3, 5; XXXIV; XLII), to Manu's list of crimes; the frequent references to the Ganges river; and other such passages, which show a modern character, without being traceable in the Smṛritis of Yāgñavalkya and Nārada, may have been added by the Vish-
nuitic editor from modern Smṛitis, either for the sake of completeness, or in order to make up the required number of chapters. 6. All the passages hitherto mentioned are such as have no parallel in other ancient Smṛitis. But the Vishnuitic editor did evidently not confine himself to the introduction of new matter into the ancient Dharma-sūtra. That he did not refrain, occasionally, from altering the original text, has been conjectured above with regard to his readings of some of those Slokas, which are found in the code of Manu as well; and it can be proved quite clearly by comparing his version of the Vṛishotsarga ceremony (LXXXVI) with the analogous chapter of the Kāthaka Grihya-sūtra. In one case (LI, 64; cf. XXIII, 50 = M. V, 131) he has replaced the words, which refer the authorship of the Sloka in question to Manu, by an unmeaning term. The superior antiquity of Manu’s reading (V, 41) is vouchèd for by the recurrence of the same passage in the Grihya-sūtra of Sāṅkhâyana (II, 16, 1) and in the Vāsishtha-smṛiti (IV, 6), and the reference to Manu has no doubt been removed by the Vishnuitic editor, because it would have been out of place in a speech of Vishnu. References to sayings of Manu and other teachers and direct quotations from Vedic works are more or less common in all Dharma-sūtras, and their entire absence in this work is apparently due to their systematical removal by the editor. On the other hand, the lists of Vedic and other works to be studied or recited may have been enlarged in one or two cases by him or by another interpolator, namely, XXX, 37 (cf. V, 191), where the Atharva-veda is mentioned after the other Vedas by the name of ‘Ātharvana’ (not Atharvāṅgirasas, as in the code of Manu and most other ancient works), and LXXXIII, 7, where Vyākaranā, ‘Grammar,’ i.e. according to the Commentary the grammars of Pāṇini and others, is mentioned as distinct from the Vedāṅgas. The antiquity of the former passage might indeed be defended by the example of Āpastamba, who, though referring like this work to the ‘three Vedas’ both separately and collectively, mentions in another place the ‘Ātharvana-veda.’ Besides the above works,

1 See Bühler, Introduction to Āpastamba, p. xxiv.
and those referred to in LVI, the laws of Vishnu name no other work except the Purânas, Itihâsas, and Dharmasâstras. 7. As the Vishnuitic editor did not scruple to alter the import of a certain number of passages, the modernisation of the language of the whole work, which was probably as rich in archaic forms and curious old terms as the Kathaka Grîhya-sûtra and as the Dharma-sûtra of Āpastamba, may be likewise attributed to him. As it is, the Vishnu-sûtra agrees in style and expressions more closely with the Smrtis of Manu and Yâgñavalkya than with any other work, and it is at least not inferior to the former work in the preservation of archaic forms. Thus the code of Manu has seven aorist forms\(^1\), while the Vishnu-sûtra contains six, not including those occurring in Vedic Mantras which are quoted by their Pratîkas only. Of new words and meanings of words the Vishnu-sûtra contains also a certain number; they have lately been communicated by me to Dr. von Böhtlingk for insertion in his new Dictionary.

All the points noticed render it necessary to assign a comparatively recent date to the Vishnuitic editor; and if the introduction of the week of the Greeks into the ancient Dharma-sûtra has been justly attributed to him, he cannot be placed earlier than the third or fourth century A.D.\(^2\)

The lower limit must be put before the eleventh century, in which the Vishnu-sûtra is quoted in the Mitâksharâ of Vîgñânesvara. From that time downwards it is quoted in nearly every law digest, and a particularly large number of quotations occurs in Aparârka’s Commentary on Yâgñavalkya, which was composed in the twelfth century\(^3\). Nearly all those quotations, as far as they have been examined, are actually found in the Vishnu-sûtra; but the whole text is vouched for only by Nandapandita’s Commentary, called Vaigayanti, which was composed in the

\(^1\) Whitney, Indische Grammatik, § 826.

\(^2\) See Jacobi, Journal of the German Oriental Society. XXX, 306. The first author with a known date, who shows an acquaintance with the week of the Greeks, is Varahamihira (sixth century A.D.)

\(^3\) See Bühler, Kâsmîr Report, p. 52. The MSS. used are from the Dekhan College, Puna.
first quarter of the seventeenth century. The subscriptions in the London MSS. of the Vaigayantî contain the statement, which is borne out by the Introduction, that it was composed by Nandapandanîta, the son of Râmapandanîta Dharmâdhikârin, an inhabitant of Benares, at the instigation of the Mahârâga Kesavanâyaka, also called Tammasânâyaka, the son of Kodapanâyaka; and a passage added at the end of the work states, more accurately, that Nandasarman (Nandapandanîta) wrote it at Kâśî (Benares) in the year 1679 of the era of Vikramabhâsvara (=A.D. 1622), by command of Kesavanâyaka, his own king. These statements regarding the time and place of the composition of the Vaigayantî are corroborated by the fact that it refers in several cases to the opinions of Haradatta, who appears to have lived in the sixteenth century\(^1\), while Nandapandanîta is not among the numerous authors quoted in the Vîramitrodaya of Mitramisra, who lived in the beginning of the seventeenth century\(^2\), and who was consequently a contemporary of Nandapandanîta, if the above statement is correct; and that he attacks in a number of cases the views of the 'Eastern Commentators' (Prâkyas), and quotes a term from the dialect of Madhyadesa.

The subjoined translation is based upon the text handed down by Nandapandanîta nearly everywhere except in some of the Mantras, which have been rendered according to the better readings preserved in the Kâthaka Grihya-sûtra. The two Calcutta editions of the Vishnu-sûtra, the second of which is a mere reprint of the first, will be found to agree in the main with the text here translated. They are doubtless based upon the Vaigayantî, as they contain several passages in which portions of Nandapandanîta's Commentary have crept into the text of the Sûtras. But the MS. used for the first Calcutta edition must have been a very faulty one, as both Calcutta editions, besides differing from the best MSS. of the Vaigayantî on a very great number of minor points, entirely omit the greater part of Chapter LXXXI

---

\(^1\) Bühler, Introduction to Âpastamba, p. xliii.

\(^2\) Bühler loc. cit.
(3–22), the genuineness of which is proved by analogous passages in the other Smritis. An excellent copy of the Vaigayantī in possession of Dr. Bühler has, together with three London MSS. of that work and one London MS. containing the text only, enabled me to establish quite positively nearly in every case the readings sanctioned by Nandapandita. I had hoped to publish a new edition of the text prepared from those MSS., and long ready for the press, before publishing my English version. This expectation has not been fulfilled, but it is hoped that in the mean time this attempt at a translation will be welcome to the students of Indian antiquity, and will facilitate the understanding of the text printed in Gīvānanda Vidyāsāgara’s cheap edition, which is probably in the hands of most Sanskrit scholars. The precise nature of the relation in which the text of my forthcoming edition stands to the Calcutta editions may be gathered from the large specimens of the text as given in the best MSS., that have been edited by Dr. Bühler in the Bombay Digest, and by myself in two papers published in the Transactions of the Royal Bavarian Academy of Science.

Nandapandita has composed, besides the Vaigayantī, a treatise on the law of adoption, called Dattaka-mīmāṃsā, a commentary on the code of Parāśara, a work called Vīdvanmanoharā-smritisindhu, one called Srāddhakalpa-latā, and commentaries on the Mitākṣharā and on Ādityākārya’s Āsauktanirnaya. All these works belong to the province of Hindu law, and both his fertility as a writer in that branch of Indian science, and the reputation enjoyed by some of his works even nowadays, must raise a strong presumption in favour of his knowledge of the subject. The

---

1 The first edition of the ‘Vaishaśīva Dharmaśāstra’ was published in Bengali type by Bhavānīśarana; the second, in Devanāgarī type, is contained in Gīvānanda Vidyāsāgara’s Dharmaśāstrasangraha (1876).

2 This work has been published repeatedly at Calcutta and Madras, and translated into English by Sutherland (1821), which translation has been reprinted in Stokes’ Hindu Law Books. The rest of the above list is made up from an enumeration of Nandapandita’s Tīkās at the end of Dr. Bühler’s copy of the Vaigayantī, from an occasional remark in the latter work itself (XV, 9), and from Professor Weber’s Catalogue of the Berlin Sanskrit MSS.
general trustworthiness of his Commentary on the Vishnu-
sutra is further confirmed by the frequent references which
it contains to the opinions of earlier commentators of that
work; and the wide extent of his reading, though he often
makes an unnecessary display of it, has been eminently
serviceable to him in tracing the connection of certain chap-
ters and Mantras with the Kathaka literature. On the
other hand, his very learning, combined with a strict adhe-
rence to the well-known theory of Hindu commentators
regarding the absolute identity between the teaching of all
Smritis, has frequently misled him into a too extensive
method of interpretation. Even in commenting the Slokas
he assigns in many cases an important hidden meaning to
such particles as ka, vra, tatha, and others, and to unpretend-
ing epithets and the like, which have clearly been added for
metrical reasons only. This practice, besides being con-
trary to common sense, is nowhere countenanced by the
authority of Kulluka, in his remarks on the numerous iden-
tical Slokas found in the code of Manu. With the Sutras
generally speaking the case is different: many of them
would be nearly or quite unintelligible without the expla-
natory remarks added in brackets from Nandapandita's
Commentary, and in a number of those cases even, where
his method jars upon a European mind, the clauses sup-
plied by him are probably correct. The same may be said
of his interpretations of the epithets of Vishnu, excepting
those which are based on utterly fanciful etymologies.

---

1 See the notes on LXXV, 2 seq.; LXXIII, 5–9; LXXXVI, 13. In his Com-
mentary on LXVII also Nandapandita states expressly that the description
of the Vaisvadeva is according to the rites of the Katha-sakha.

2 For instances, see the notes on XX, 45; LXIV, 40.

3 See e.g. Chapter V passim.

4 Thus nearly all the 'intentionally's' and 'unintentionally's', &c., as supplied in
the section on penances might seem superfluous, or even wrong; but as in several
places involuntary crimes are expressly distinguished from those intentionally
committed (see e.g. XXVIII, 48, 51; XXXVIII, 7), and as in other cases a clause
of this kind must needs be supplied (see XXXIX, 2; LII, 3; LIII, 5, &c.),
Nandapandita is probably right in supplying it from other Smritis in most
remaining cases as well. This method has occasionally carried him too far,
when his explanations have not been given in the text.

5 See I, 51, 55; XC VIII, 40, 41, 46, &c.
as the style of the introductory and final chapters is as artificial, though in another way, as the Sūtra style. Though, however, in works composed in the latter style, every ka, và, or iti, &c., which is not absolutely required by the sense, was probably intended by their authors to convey a special meaning¹, it is a question of evidence in every single case, whether those meanings which Nandapandita assigns to these and other such particles and expletive words are the correct ones. In several cases of this or of a similar kind he is palpably wrong ², and in many others the interpretations proposed by him are at least improbable, because the authoritative passages he quotes in support of them are taken from modern works, which cannot have been known to the author of the Vishnu-sūtra. Interpretations of this class have, therefore, been given in the notes only; and they have been omitted altogether in a number of cases where they appeared quite frivolous, or became too numerous, or could not be deciphered completely, owing to clerical mistakes in the MSS. But though it is impossible to agree with some of his general principles of interpretation, or with his application of them, Nandapandita’s interpretations of difficult terms and Sūtras are invaluable, and I have never deviated from them in my translation without strong reasons to the contrary, which have in most cases been stated in the notes³. Besides the extracts given in the notes, a few other passages from the Commentary and several other additions will be given in p. 312; and I must apologize to my readers for having to note along with the Addenda a number of Corrigenda, which will be found in the same page. In compiling the Index of Sanskrit words occurring in this work, which it has been thought necessary to add to the General Index, I have not aimed at completeness except as regards

¹ For instances of this in the Dharma-sūtras of Āpastamba and Gautama, see Bühler, Āpast. I, 2, 7, 24; 8, 5; Gaut. V, 5, 14, 17; IX, 44; XIV, 45; XIX, 13–15, 20; XXI, 9, &c.; and see also Dr. Bühler’s remarks on Šabdā-śūtras, Āpast. I, 3, 11, 7; Gaut. I, 31, notes.

² See V, 117; VII, 7; XXVII, 10; LI, 26; LXXI, 88; LXXIII, 9; LXXIV, 1, 2, 7, &c.

³ See e.g. XVII, 22; XVIII, 44; XXIV, 40; XXVIII, 5, 11; LV, 20; LIX, 27, 29; LXIII, 36; LXIV, 18; LXVII, 6–8; XCII, 4; XCVII, 7.
the names of deities and of penances. My forthcoming edition of the Sanskrit text will be accompanied by a full Index of words.

In conclusion I have to express my thanks in the most cordial manner to Dr. Bühler, who has constantly assisted me with his advice in the preparing of this translation, and has kindly lent me his excellent copy of the Vaigayanti; and to Dr. von Böhtlingk and Professor Max Müller, who have favoured me with valuable hints on divers points connected with this work. My acknowledgments are due, in the second place, to K. M. Chatfield, Esq., Director of Public Instruction, Bombay, to Dr. von Halm, Chief Librarian of the Royal Library, Munich, to Professor R. Lepsius, Chief Librarian of the Royal Library of Berlin, and to Dr. R. Rost, Chief Librarian of the India Office Library, London, for the valuable aid received from these gentlemen and the great liberality with which they have placed Sanskrit MSS. under their care at my disposal.
VISHNU.
VISHNU.

I.

1. The night of Brahman being over, and the God sprung from the lotus (Brahman) having woke from his slumber, Vishnu purposing to create living beings, and perceiving the earth covered with water,

2. Assumed the shape of a boar, delighting to sport in water, as at the beginning of each former Kalpa, and raised up the earth (from the water).

3. His feet were the Vedas; his tusks the sacrificial stakes; in his teeth were the offerings; his mouth was the pyre; his tongue was the fire; his hair was the sacrificial grass; the sacred texts were his head; and he was (endowed with the miraculous power of) a great ascetic.

4. His eyes were day and night; he was of superhuman nature; his ears were the two bundles of Kusa grass (for the Ishṭis, or smaller sacrifices, and for the animal offerings); his ear-rings were the ends of those bundles of Kusa grass (used for wiping

L. 1. Regarding the duration of a night of Brahman, see XX, 14. 'Bhūtāni' means living beings of all the four kinds, born from the womb and the rest. (Nand.) The three other kinds consist of those produced from an egg, from sweat, and from a shoot or germ; see Manu I, 43-46.

2. A Kalpa = a day of Brahman; see XX, 13.
the ladle and other sacrificial implements); his nose (the vessel containing) the clarified butter; his snout was the ladle of oblations; his voice was similar in sound to the chanting of the Sâma-veda; and he was of huge size.

5. He was full of piety and veracity; beautiful; his strides and his strength were immense (like those of Vishnu); his large nostrils were penances; his knees the victim; and his figure colossal.

6. His entrails were the (three) chanter{s} of the Sâma-veda; his member was the burnt-oblation; his scrotum was the sacrificial seeds and grains; his mind was the altar (in the hut for the wives and domestic uses of the sacrificer); the hindparts (of Vishnu) in his transformation were the Mantras; his blood was the Soma juice.

7. His shoulders were the (great) altar; his smell was that of the (sacrificial cake and other) oblations; his speed was the oblations to the gods and to the manes and other oblations; his body was the hut for the wives and domestic uses of the sacrificer; he was majestic; and instructed with the initiatory ceremonies for manifold sacrifices (lasting one, or two, three, or twelve years, and others).

8. His heart was the sacrificial fee; he was possessed of the (sacrificial and other) great Mantras employed in order to effect the union of the mind with the Supreme; he was of enormous size (like the long sacrifices lasting more than one day); his lovely lips were the beginnings of the two

6. 1 'This is because the vital breaths, by which the sound of the voice is effected, pass through them, it having been said (in 4) that the sound of his voice was like the chanting of the Sâma-veda.' (Nand.)
hymns recited at the beginning of the animal sacrifice; his ornaments were the whirlpool of the milk poured into the heated vessel (at the Pravargya ceremony introductory to the Soma-sacrifice).

9. All sorts of sacred texts (the Gâyatrî and others) were his path in marching; the mysterious Upanishads (the Vedânta) were his couch; he was accompanied by his consort Kââyā (Lakshmi); he was in size like the Manisṛīṅga mountain.

10. The lord, the creator, the great Yogin, plunging into the one ocean from love of the world,

11. Raised up, with the edge of his tusks, the earth bounded by the sea together with its mountains, forests, and groves, which was immersed in the water of (the seven oceans now become) one ocean, and created the universe anew.

12. Thus the whole earth, after having sunk into (the lower region called) Rasâtalâ, was in the first place raised in the boar-incarnation by Vishnu, who took compassion upon the living beings.

13, 14. Then, after having raised the earth, the destroyer of Madhu placed and fixed it upon its own (former) seat (upon the oceans) and distributed the waters upon it according to their own (former) station, conducting the floods of the oceans into the oceans, the water of the rivers into the rivers, the water of the tanks into the tanks, and the water of the lakes into the lakes.

15. He created the seven (lower regions called) Pâtâlas and the seven worlds, the seven Dvīpas

15. ¹ The seven Pâtâlas are, Atala, Vitala, Sutala, Mahâtala, Rasâtalâ, Tâlâtalâ, and Pâtâla; the seven worlds are, Bhûr-loka, Bhuvar-loka, Svar-loka, Mahar-loka, Gânar-loka, Tapar-loka, and Satya-loka.
and the seven oceans, and fixed their several limits.

16. (He created) the rulers of the (seven) Dvīpas and the (eight) guardians of the world (Indra and the rest), the rivers, mountains, and trees, the seven Rishiśis, who know (and practise) the law, the Vedas together with their Āṅgas, the Suras, and the Asuras.

17. (He created) Piśācas (ogres), Uragas (serpents), Gandharvas (celestial singers), Yakshas (keepers of Kubera’s treasures), Rakshasas (gnoblins), and men, cattle, birds, deer and other animals, (in short) all the four kinds of living beings, and clouds, rainbows, lightnings, and other celestial phenomena or bodies (such as the planets and the asterisms), and all kinds of sacrifices.

18. Bhagavat, after having thus created, in the

loka; the seven Dvīpas or divisions of the terrestrial world are, Gambu, Plaksha, Śālmalī, Kusa, Kraunḍa, Sāka, and Pushkara; each Dvipa is encircled by one of the seven oceans, viz. the seas of Lavana (salt-water), Ikshu (syrup), Sarpiṭa (butter), Dadhi (sour milk), Dugdha (milk), Svādha (treacle), and Udaka (water), (Nand.) The enumerations contained in the Vishnupurāna and other works differ on two or three points only from that given by Nand.—

Besides the interpretation followed in the text, Nand. proposes a second explanation of the term ‘sthāṇānī,’ as denoting Bhārata-varsha (India) and the other eight plains situated between the principal mountains.

16. The eight ‘guardians of the world’ (Lokapālas) are, Indra, Agni, Yama, Sūrya, Varuna, Pavana, Kubera, and Soma (M. V, 96). The seven Rishiśis, according to the Satapatha-brāhmaṇa, are, Gotama, Bharadvāga, Visvāmitra, Gamadagni, Vasishtha, Kasyapa, and Atri. The six Vedāṅgas are, Śikṣā (pronunciation), Khaṇḍas (metre), Vyākaraṇa (grammar), Nirukta (etymology), Kalpa (ceremonial), and Gyoṭisha (astronomy). See Max Müller, Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 108, &c.

17. 1 See 1.
shape of a boar, this world together with all animate and inanimate things in it, went away into a place hidden from the world.

19. Ganârdana, the chief of the gods, having become invisible, the goddess of the earth began to consider, 'How shall I be able to sustain myself (henceforth) ?'

20. 'I will go to Kasyapa to ask: he will tell me the truth. The great Muni has my welfare under constant consideration.'

21. Having thus decided upon her course, the goddess, assuming the shape of a woman, went to see Kasyapa, and Kasyapa saw her.

22. Her eyes were similar to the leaves of the blue lotus (of which the bow of Kâma, the god of love, is made); her face was radiant like the moon in the autumn season; her locks were as dark as a swarm of black bees; she was radiant; her lip was (red) like the Bandhugîva flower; and she was lovely to behold.

23. Her eyebrows were fine; her teeth exceedingly small; her nose handsome; her brows bent; her neck shaped like a shell; her thighs were constantly touching each other; and they were fleshy thighs, which adorned her loins.

24. Her breasts were shining white, firm, plump, very close to each other, (decorated with continuous strings of pearls) like the projections on the forehead of Indra's elephant, and radiant like the gold (of the two golden jars used at the consecration of a king).

24. ¹ Or 'equal in size,' according to the second of the two explanations which Nand. proposes of the term 'samau.'
25. Her arms were as delicate as lotus fibres; her hands were similar to young shoots; her thighs were resplendent like golden pillars; and her knees were hidden (under the flesh), and closely touching each other.

26. Her legs were smooth and exquisitely proportioned; her feet exceedingly graceful; her loins fleshy; and her waist like that of a lion's cub.

27. Her reddish nails shone (like rubies); her beauty was the delight of every looker-on; and with her glances she filled at every step all the quarters of the sky as it were with lotus-flowers.

28. Radiant with divine lustre, she illuminated all the quarters of the sky with it; her clothing was most exquisite and perfectly white; and she was decorated with the most precious gems.

29. With her steps she covered the earth as it were with lotuses; she was endowed with beauty and youthful charms; and made her approach with modest bearing.

30. Having seen her come near, Kasyapa saluted her reverentially, and said, 'O handsome lady, O earth, radiant with divine lustre, I am acquainted with thy thoughts.

31. 'Go to visit Ganârdana, O large-eyed lady; he will tell thee accurately, how thou shalt henceforth sustain thyself.

32. 'For thy sake, O (goddess), whose face is lovely and whose limbs are beautiful, I have found out, by profound meditation, that his residence is in the Kshiroda (milk-ocean).'

33. The goddess of the earth answered, 'Yes, (I shall do as you bid me),' saluted Kasyapa rever-
entially, and proceeded to the Kśśtroda sea, in order to see Kesava (Vishnu).

34. She beheld (then) the ocean, from which the Amṛita arose. It was lovely, like the rays of the moon, and agitated by hundreds of waves produced by stormy blasts of wind.

35. (With its waves) towering like a hundred Himālayas it seemed another terrestrial globe, calling near as it were the earth with its hands, the rolling waves.

36. With those hands it was as it were constantly producing the radiancy of the moon; and every stain of guilt was removed from it by Hari's (Vishnu's) residence within its limits.

37. Because (it was entirely free from sin) therefore it was possessed of a pure and shining frame; its colour was white; it was inaccessible to birds; and its seat was in the lower regions.

38. It was rich in blue and tawny gems (sapphires, coral, and others), and looking therefore as if the atmosphere had descended upon the earth, and as if a number of forests adorned with a multitude of fruits had descended upon its surface.

39. Its size was immense, like that of the skin of (Vishnu's) serpent Sesha. After having seen the milk-ocean, the goddess of the earth beheld the dwelling of Kesava (Vishnu) which was in it:

40. (His dwelling), the size of which cannot be expressed in words, and the sublimity of which is also beyond the power of utterance. In it she saw the destroyer of Madhu seated upon Sesha.

41. The lotus of his face was hardly visible on

37. See 15, note.
account of the lustre of the gems decorating the neck of the snake Sesha; he was shining like a hundred moons; and his splendour was equal to the rays of a myriad of suns.

42. He was clad in a yellow robe (radiant like gold); imperturbable; decorated with all kinds of gems; and shining with the lustre of a diadem resembling the sun in colour, and with (splendid) ear-rings.

43. Lakshmi was stroking his feet with her soft palms; and his attributes (the shell, the discus, the mace, and the lotus-flower) wearing bodies were attending upon him on all sides.

44. Having espied the lotus-eyed slayer of Madhu, she knelt down upon the ground and addressed him as follows:

45. 'When formerly I was sunk into the region of Rasâtala, I was raised by thee, O God, and restored to my ancient seat, O Vishnu, thanks to thy benevolence towards living beings.

46. 'Being there, how am I to maintain myself upon it, O lord of the gods?' Having been thus addressed by the goddess, the god enunciated the following answer:

47. 'Those who practise the duties ordained for each caste and for each order, and who act up strictly to the holy law, will sustain thee, O earth; to them is thy care committed.'

48. Having received this answer, the goddess of the earth said to the chief of the gods, 'Communicate to me the eternal laws of the castes and of the orders.

47. Regarding the four castes and the four orders, see II, 1; III, 3.
49. 'I desire to learn them from thee; for thou art my chief stay. Adoration be to thee, O brilliant chief of the gods, who annihilatest the power of the (Daityas and other) enemies of the gods.

50. 'O Nârâyana (son of Nara), O Gagannâtha (sovereign of the world); thou holdest the shell, the discus, and the mace (in thy hands); thou hast a lotus (Brahman) springing from thy navel; thou art the lord of the senses; thou art most powerful and endowed with conquering strength.

51. 'Thou art beyond the cognisance of the senses; thy end is most difficult to know; thou art brilliant; thou holdest the bow Sârîga; thou art the boar; thou art terrible; thou art Govinda (the herdsman); thou art of old; thou art Purushottama (the spirit supreme).

52. 'Thy hair is golden; thy eyes are everywhere; thy body is the sacrifice; thou art free from stain; thou art the "field" (the corporeal frame); thou art the principle of life; thou art the ruler

49. 1 This is Nand.'s interpretation of the term 'deva,' but it may also be taken in its usual acception of 'god.'

51. 1 This is the third of the three interpretations of the term varâha, which Nand. proposes. According to the first, it would mean 'one who kills his worst or most prominent foes;’ according to the second, ‘one who gratifies his own desires.’ But these two interpretations are based upon a fanciful derivation of varâha from vara and â-han. Of many others among the epithets Nand. proposes equally fanciful etymologies, which I shall pass over unnoticed.—

9 This epithet, which literally means 'he who finds or wins cows,' is usually referred to Vishnu's recovering the 'cow,' i.e. the earth, when it was lost in the waters: see Mahâbh. XII, 13228, which verse is quoted both by Nand. and by Saṅkara in his Commentary on the Vishnu-sahasranâma. It originally refers, no doubt, to Vishnu or Krishna as the pastoral god.
of the world; thou art lying on the bed of the ocean.

53. 'Thou art Mantra (prayer); thou knowest the Mantras; thou surpassest all conception; thy frame is composed of the Vedas and Vedāṅgas; the creation and destruction of this whole world is effected through thee.

54. 'Thou knowest right and wrong; thy body is law; law springs from thee; desires are gratified by thee; thy powers are everywhere; thou art (imperishable like) Amṛita (ambrosia); thou art heaven; thou art the destroyer of Madhu and Kaiṭasa.

55. 'Thou causest the increase of the great; thou art inscrutable; thou art all; thou givest shelter to all; thou art the chief one; thou art free from sin; thou art Gīmūta; thou art inexhaustible; thou art the creator.

56. 'Thou increasest the welfare (of the world); the waters spring from thee; thou art the seat of intelligence; action is not found in thee; thou presidest over seven chief things; thou art the teacher of religious rites; thou art of old; thou art Purushottama.

57. 'Thou art not to be shaken; thou art unde-

55. 'The great (br̥hat) means time, space, and the like.... He is called “all” because he is capable of assuming any shape.' (Nand.) The sense of the term 'gīmūta,' as an epithet of divine beings, is uncertain. According to Nand., it would mean 'he who sprinkles living beings;' but this interpretation is based upon a fanciful derivation, from gīva and mūtryatī.

56. 'This refers either to the seven divisions of a Śāman; or to the seven species, of which each of the three kinds of sacrifices, domestic offerings, burnt-offerings, and Soma-sacrifices, consists (cf. Gaut. VIII, 18–20); or to the seven worlds (see 15, note), Bhūr and the rest. (Nand.)
caying; thou art the producer of the atoms; thou art kind to faithful attendants; thou art the purifier (of sinners); thou art the protector of all the gods; thou art the protector of the pious.

58. 'Thou art also the protector of those who know the Veda, O Purushottama. I have come, O Gagannâtha, to the immovable Vâkaspati (the lord of holy speech), the lord;

59. 'To him, who is very pious; invincible; Vasusheva (who has treasures for his armies); who bestows largesses upon his followers; who is endowed with the power of intense devotion; who is the germ of the ether; from whom the rays (of the sun and moon) proceed;

60. 'To Vâsudeva; the great soul of the universe; whose eyes are like lotuses; who is eternal; the preceptor of the Suras and of the Asuras; brilliant; omnipresent; the great lord of all creatures;

61. 'Who has one body and four faces; who is the producer of (the five grosser elements, ether, air, fire, water, and earth), the producers of the world. Teach me concisely, O Bhagavat, the eternal laws ordained for the aggregate of the four castes,

62. 'Together with the customs to be observed by each order and with the secret ordinances.' The chief of the gods, thus addressed by the goddess of the earth, replied to her as follows:

62. According to Nand., the term rahasya, 'secret ordinances or doctrines,' has to be referred either to the laws regarding the occupations lawful for each caste in times of distress (àpaddharma, see II, 15), or to the penances (XLVI seq.) The latter interpretation seems to be the more plausible one, with the limitation, however, that rahasya is only used to denote the penances for secret faults, which are termed rahasya in LV, 1.
63. 'Learn from me, in a concise form, O radiant goddess of the earth, the eternal laws for the aggregate of the four castes, together with the customs to be observed by each order, and with the secret ordinances,

64. 'Which will effect the final liberation of the virtuous persons, who will support thee. Be seated upon this splendid golden seat, O handsome-thighed goddess.

65. 'Seated at ease, listen to me proclaiming the sacred laws.' The goddess of the earth, thereupon, seated at ease, listened to the sacred precepts as they came from the mouth of Vishnu.

II.

1. Brāhmaṇas, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Sūdras are the four castes.

2. The first three of these are (called) twice-born.

3. For them the whole number of ceremonies, which begin with the impregnation and end with the ceremony of burning the dead body, have to be performed with (the recitation of) Mantras.

4. Their duties are:

5. For a Brāhmaṇa, to teach (the Veda);

6. For a Kshatriya, constant practice in arms;

7. For a Vaisya, the tending of cattle;

8. For a Śūdra, to serve the twice-born;

9. For all the twice-born, to sacrifice and to study (the Veda).
10. Again, their modes of livelihood are:
11. For a Brâhmana, to sacrifice for others and to receive alms;
12. For a Kshatriya, to protect the world (and receive due reward, in form of taxes);
13. For a Vaisya, tillage, keeping cows (and other cattle), traffic, lending money upon interest, and growing seeds;
14. For a Sûdra, all branches of art (such as painting and the other fine arts);
15. In times of distress, each caste may follow the occupation of that next (below) to it in rank.
16. Forbearance, veracity, restraint, purity, liberality, self-control, not to kill (any living being), obedience towards one's Gurus, visiting places of pilgrimage, sympathy (with the afflicted),
17. Straightforwardness, freedom from covetousness, reverence towards gods and Brâhmazas, and freedom from anger are duties common (to all castes).

III.

1. Now the duties of a king are:
2. To protect his people,

---

14. According to Nand., the use of the term sarva, 'all,' implies that Sûdras may also follow the occupations of a Vaisya, tillage and the rest, as ordained by Devala.
16. The term Guru, 'superior,' generally denotes the parents and the teacher, or Guru in the narrower sense of the term; see XXXI, 1, 2. It may also include all those who are one's elders or betters; see XXXII, 1–3.

3. And to keep the four castes and the four orders in the practice of their several duties.

4. Let the king fix his abode in a district containing open plains, fit for cattle, and abounding in grain;

5. And inhabited by many Vaisyas and Sûdras.

6. There let him reside in a stronghold (the strength of which consists) either in (its being surrounded by) a desert, or in (a throng of) armed


3. Of student, householder, hermit, and ascetic.

5. 'And there should be many virtuous men in it, as stated by Manu, VII, 69.' (Nand.)
men, or in fortifications (of stone, brick, or others),
or in water (enclosing it on all sides), or in trees, or in
mountains (sheltering it against a foreign invasion).

7. (While he resides) there, let him appoint chiefs
(or governors) in every village;
8. Also, lords of every ten villages;
9. And lords of every hundred villages;
10. And lords of a whole district.
11. If any offence has been committed in a vil-
lage, let the lord of that village suppress the evil
(and give redress to those that have been wronged).
12. If he is unable to do so, let him announce it
to the lord of ten villages;
13. If he too is unable, let him announce it to
the lord of a hundred villages;
14. If he too is unable, let him announce it to
the lord of the whole district.
15. The lord of the whole district must eradicate
the evil to the best of his power.
16. Let the king appoint able officials for the
working of his mines, for the levying of taxes and of
the fares to be paid at ferries, and for his elephants
and forests.

17. (Let him appoint) pious persons for per-
forming acts of piety (such as bestowing gifts on
the indigent, and the like);
18. Skilled men for financial business (such as
examining gold and other precious metals);

11. See 67 and Dr. Bübler’s note on Åpast. II, 10, 26, 8.
16. The term nâgavana, which has been translated as a Dvandva
compound, denoting elephants and forests, may also be taken to
mean ‘forests in which there are elephants;’ or nâga may mean
‘situated in the mountains’ or ‘a mountain fort.’ (Nand.)
18. Or, ‘he must appoint men skilled in logic as his advisers in
knotty points of argument.’ (Nand.)
20. Stern men for acts of rigour (such as beating and killing);
21. Eunuchs for his wives (as their guardians).
22. He must take from his subjects as taxes a sixth part every year of the grain;
23. And (a sixth part) of all (other) seeds;
24. Two in the hundred, of cattle, gold, and clothes;
25. A sixth part of flesh, honey, clarified butter, herbs, perfumes, flowers, roots, fruits, liquids and condiments, wood, leaves (of the Palmyra tree and others), skins, earthen pots, stone vessels, and anything made of split bamboo.
26. Let him not levy any tax upon Brâhmaṇas.
27. For they pay taxes to him in the shape of their pious acts.
28. A sixth part both of the virtuous deeds and of the iniquitous acts committed by his subjects goes to the king.
29. Let him take a tenth part of (the price of) marketable commodities (sold) in his own country;
30. And a twentieth part of (the price of) goods (sold) in another country.
31. Any (seller or buyer) who (fraudulently) avoids a toll-house (situated on his road), shall lose all his goods.

23. This rule relates to Syâmâka grain and other sorts of grain produced in the rainy season. (Nand.)
25. 'Haradatta says that “a sixth part” means “a sixtieth part.” But this is wrong, as shown by M.VII, 131.' (Nand.) Haradatta's false interpretation was most likely called forth by Gaut. X, 27.
32. Artizans (such as blacksmiths), manual labourers (such as carpenters), and Sūdras shall do work for the king for a day in each month.

33. The monarch, his council, his fortress, his treasure, his army, his realm, and his ally are the seven constituent elements of a state.

34. (The king) must punish those who try to subvert any one among them.

35. He must explore, by means of spies, both the state of his own kingdom and of his foe's.

36. Let him show honour to the righteous;

37. And let him punish the unrighteous.

38. Towards his (neighbour and natural) enemy, his ally (or the power next beyond his enemy), a neutral power (situated beyond the latter), and a power situated between (his natural enemy and an aggressive power)¹ let him adopt (alternately), as the occasion and the time require, (the four modes of obtaining success, viz.) negotiation, division, presents, and force of arms.

39. Let him have resort, as the time demands, to (the six measures of a military monarch, viz.) making alliance and waging war, marching to battle and sitting encamped, seeking the protection (of a more powerful king) and distributing his forces.

---

32. According to Nand., the particle ka, 'and,' implies that servile persons, who get their substance from their employers, are also implied. See Manu VII, 138.

35. The particle ka, according to Nand., is used in order to include the kingdoms of an ally and of a neutral prince.

38.¹ The term madhyama has been rendered according to Nand.'s and Kullūka's (on M. VII, 155) interpretation of it. Kullūka, however, adds, as a further characteristic, that it denotes a prince, who is equal in strength to one foe, but no match for two when allied.
40. Let him set out on an expedition in the months of Kāitra or Mārgasthāra;
41. Or when some calamity has befallen his foe.
42. Having conquered the country of his foe, let him not abolish (or disregard) the laws of that country.
43. And when he has been attacked by his foe, let him protect his own realm to the best of his power.
44. There is no higher duty for men of the military caste, than to risk their life in battle.
45. Those who have been killed in protecting a cow, or a Brāhmaṇa, or a king, or a friend, or their own property, or their own wedded wife, or their own life, go to heaven.
46. Likewise, those (who have been killed) in trying to prevent mixture of castes (caused by adulterous connections).
47. A king having conquered the capital of his foe, should invest there a prince of the royal race of that country with the royal dignity.
48. Let him not extirpate the royal race;
49. Unless the royal race be of ignoble descent.
50. He must not take delight in hunting, dice, women, and drinking;
51. Nor in defamation and battery.
52. And let him not injure his own property (by bootless expenses).
53. He must not demolish (whether in his own town, or in the town of his foe conquered by him,

40. The particle vâ indicates, according to Nand., that he may also set out in the month Phālguna.
or in a fort) doors which had been built there before his time (by a former king).

54. He must not bestow largesses upon unworthy persons (such as dancers, eulogists, bards, and the like).

55. Of mines let him take the whole produce.

56. Of a treasure-trove he must give one half to the Brāhmaṇas;

57. He may deposit the other half in his own treasury.

58. A Brāhmaṇa who has found a treasure may keep it entire.

59. A Kshatriya (who has found a treasure) must give one fourth of it to the king, another fourth to the Brāhmaṇas, and keep half of it to himself.

60. A Vaisya (who has found a treasure) must give a fourth part of it to the king, one half to the Brāhmaṇas, and keep the (remaining fourth) part to himself.

61. A Śūdra who has found a treasure must divide it into twelve parts, and give five parts to the king, five parts to the Brāhmaṇas, and keep two parts to himself.

62. Let the king compel him who (having found a treasure) does not announce it (to the king) and is found out afterwards, to give up the whole.

63. Of a treasure anciently hidden by themselves let (members of) all castes, excepting Brāhmaṇas, give a twelfth part to the king.

64. The man who falsely claims property hidden by another to have been hidden by himself, shall be

63. This rule refers to a treasure, which has been found by some one and announced to the king. The original owner is bound to prove his ownership. (Nand.) See M.VIII, 35.
condemned to pay a fine equal in amount to the property falsely claimed by him.

65. The king must protect the property of minors, of (blind, lame or other) helpless persons (who have no guide), and of women (without a guardian).

66. Having recovered goods stolen by thieves, let him restore them entire to their owners, to whatever caste they may belong.

67. If he has been unable to recover them, he must pay (their value) out of his own treasury.

68. Let him appease the onsets of fate by ceremonies averting evil omens and propitiatory ceremonies;

69. And the onsets of his foe (let him repel) by force of arms.

70. Let him appoint as Purohita (domestic priest) a man conversant with the Vedas, Epics, the Institutes of Sacred Law, and (the science of) what is useful in life, of a good family, not deficient in limb, and persistent in the practice of austerities.

71. And (let him appoint) ministers (to help and advise him) in all his affairs, who are pure, free from covetousness, attentive, and able.

72. Let him try causes himself, accompanied by well-instructed Brāhmaṇas.

73. Or let him entrust a Brāhmaṇa with the judicial business.

74. Let the king appoint as judges men of good

70. 'The science of what is useful in life' comprises the fine arts, except music, and all technical knowledge.

74. According to Nand, the particle ॥ indicates that the judges should be well acquainted, likewise, with the sacred revelation,
families, for whom the ceremonies (of initiation and so forth) have been performed, and who are eager in keeping religious vows, impartial towards friend and foe, and not likely to be corrupted by litigants either by (ministering to their) lustful desires or by (stimulating them to) wrath or by (exciting their) avarice or by other (such practices).

75. Let the king in all matters listen to (the advice of) his astrologers.

76. Let him constantly show reverence to the gods and to the Brâhmanas.

77. Let him honour the aged;

78. And let him offer sacrifices;

79. And he must not suffer any Brâhmana in his realm to perish with want;

80. Nor any other man leading a pious life.

81. Let him bestow landed property upon Brâhmanas.

82. To those upon whom he has bestowed (land) he must give a document, destined for the information of a future ruler, which must be written upon a piece of (cotton) cloth, or a copper-plate, and must contain the names of his (three) immediate ancestors, a declaration of the extent of the land, and an imprecation against him who should appropriate the

and intent upon performing their daily study of the Veda, as ordained by Yâgñavalkya, II, 2.

75. According to Nand., the particle ka indicates that the king’s ministers should also consult the astrologers.

76. ‘The particle ka is used here in order to imply that the king should bestow presents upon the Brâhmanas, as ordained by Manu, VII, 79.’ (Nand.) See Introduction.

82. The repeated use of the particle ka in this Sûtra signifies that the document in question should also contain the name of the
donation to himself, and should be signed with his own seal.

83. Let him not appropriate to himself landed property bestowed (upon Brāhmaṇas) by other (rulers).

84. Let him present the Brāhmaṇas with gifts of every kind.

85. Let him be on his guard, whatever he may be about.

86. Let him be splendid (in apparel and ornaments).

87. Let him be conversant with incantations dispelling the effects of poison and sickness.

88. Let him not test any aliments, that have not been tried before (by his attendants, by certain experiments).

89. Let him smile before he speaks to any one.

90. Let him not frown even upon (criminals) doomed to capital punishment.

91. Let him inflict punishments, corresponding to the nature of their offences, upon evil-doers.

donor, the date of the donation, and the words, written in the donor's own hand, 'What has been written above, by that is my own will declared.' The term dāṇkkhedaṇopavarmanam, 'containing a declaration of the punishment awaiting the robber of a grant,' may also mean, 'indicating the boundaries (such as fields and the like) of the grant.' The seal must contain the figure of a flamingo, boar, or other animal. (Nand.) Numerous grants on copper-plates, exactly corresponding to the above description, have been actually found in divers parts of India. See, particularly, Dr. Burnell's Elements of South Indian Palaeography.

83. According to Nand., the particle ka is used in order to include in this prohibition a grant made by himself.

86. Nand. proposes a second interpretation of the term sudarśana besides the one given above, 'he shall often show himself before those desirous of seeing him.'
92. Let him inflict punishments according to justice (either personally or through his attendants).
93. Let him pardon no one for having offended twice.
94. He who deviates from his duty must certainly not be left unpunished by the king.
95. Where punishment with a black hue and a red eye advances with irresistible might, the king deciding causes justly, there the people will prosper.
96. Let a king in his own domain inflict punishments according to justice, chastise foreign foes with rigour, behave without duplicity to his affectionate friends, and with lenity to Brāhmaṇas.
97. Of a king thus disposed, even though he subsist by gleaning, the fame is far spread in the world, like a drop of oil in the water.
98. That king who is pleased when his subjects are joyful, and grieved when they are in grief, will obtain fame in this world, and will be raised to a high station in heaven after his death.

IV.

1. The (very small mote of) dust which may be discerned in a sun-beam passing through a lattice is called trasarenu (trembling dust).
2. Eight of these (trasarenu) are equal to a nit.
3. Three of the latter are equal to a black mustard-seed.
4. Three of these last are equal to a white mustard-seed.
5. Six of these are equal to a barley-corn.
6. Three of these equal a Krishnala.

6. Krishnala (literally, 'seed of the Guṇgā creeper') is another
7. Five of these equal a Māsha.
8. Twelve of these are equal to half an Aksha.
9. The weight of half an Aksha, with four Māshas added to it, is called a Suvarna.
10. Four Suvarnas make a Nishka.
11. Two Krishnalas of equal weight are equal to one Māshaka of silver.
12. Sixteen of these are equal to a Dharana (of silver).
13. A Karsha (or eighty Raktikās) of copper is called Kārshāpāṇa.
14. Two hundred and fifty (copper) Panas are declared to be the first (or lowest) amercement, five hundred are considered as the middlemost, and a thousand as the highest.

V.

1. Great criminals should all be put to death.

name for Raktikā or Ratī, the lowest denomination in general use. According to Prinsep (Useful Tables, p. 97) it equals 1.875 grains = 0.122 grammes of the metrical system. According to Thomas (see Colebrooke's Essays, ed: by Cowell, I, p. 529, note) it equals 1.75 grains.

7–10. These names refer to weights of gold.

2. In the case of a Brâhmaṇa no corporal punishment must be inflicted.
3. A Brâhmaṇa must be banished from his own country, his body having been branded.


1. The crimes by the commission of which a man becomes a Mahāpataki, 'mortal sinner,' will be enumerated below, XXXV.
2. The use of the particle ka implies, according to Nand. and a passage of Yama quoted by him, that, besides branding him, the criminal should be shorn, his deed publicly proclaimed, and himself mounted upon an ass and led about the town.
4. For murdering another Brāhmaṇa, let (the figure of) a headless corpse be impressed on his forehead;

5. For drinking spirits, the flag of a seller of spirituous liquor;

6. For stealing (gold), a dog's foot;

7. For incest, (the mark of) a female part.

8. If he has committed any other capital crime, he shall be banished, taking with him all his property, and unhurt.

9. Let the king put to death those who forge royal edicts;

10. And those who forge (private) documents;

11. Likewise poisoners, incendiaries, robbers, and killers of women, children, or men;

12. And such as steal more than ten Kumbhas of grain,

13. Or more than a hundred Māshas of such things as are usually sold by weight (such as gold and silver);

14. Such also as aspire to sovereignty, though being of low birth;

15. Breakers of dikes;

10. The use of the particle ḷa indicates that this rule includes those who corrupt the king's ministers, as stated by Manu, IX, 232. (Nand.)

11. Nand. infers from the use of the particle ḷa, and from a passage of Kātyāyana, that false witnesses are also intended here.

12. Nand. here refers ḷa to women who have committed a capital offence, as mentioned by Yāgñavalkya (II, 278). A Kumbha is a measure of grain equal to twenty Dromas, or a little more than three bushels and three gallons. Nand. mentions, as the opinion of some, that 1 Kumbha = 2 Dromas. For other computations of the amount of a Kumbha, see Colebrooke's Essays, I, 533 seq.

13. Regarding the value of a Māsha, see IV, 7, 11.

15. Nand. infers from the use of the particle ḷa and from a
16. And such as give shelter and food to robbers,
17. Unless the king be unable (to protect his subjects against robbers);
18. And a woman who violates the duty which she owes to her lord, the latter being unable to restrain her.
19. With whatever limb an inferior insults or hurts his superior in caste, of that limb the king shall cause him to be deprived.
20. If he places himself on the same seat with his superior, he shall be banished with a mark on his buttocks.
21. If he spits on him, he shall lose both lips;
22. If he breaks wind against him, his hindparts;
23. If he uses abusive language, his tongue.
24. If a (low-born) man through pride give instruction (to a member of the highest caste) concerning his duty, let the king order hot oil to be dropped into his mouth.
25. If a (low-born man) mentions the name or caste of a superior revilingly, an iron pin, ten inches long, shall be thrust into his mouth (red hot).
26. He who falsely denies the sacred knowledge, the country, or the caste (of such), or who says

passage of Manu (IX, 280), that robbers who forcibly enter the king's treasury, or the arsenal, or a temple, are likewise intended here.

17. In the case to which this Sūtra refers, the villagers may satisfy the demands of the robbers with impunity, as they are obliged to do so out of regard for their own safety. (Nand.)
20. The particle ḍa indicates here that if he urines against a superior his organ shall be cut off. (Nand.) See M.VIII, 282.
26. This Sūtra has been rendered in accordance with Kullūka's gloss on M.VIII, 273, Nand.'s interpretation of it being palpably wrong.
that his religious duties have not been fulfilled by (or that the initiatory and other sacramental rites have not been performed for) him, shall be fined two hundred Panas.

27. If a man is blind with one eye, or lame, or defective in any similar way, and another calls him so, he shall be fined two Kârshâpanas, though he speaks the truth.

28. He shall be fined a hundred Kârshâpanas for defaming a Guru.

29. He shall pay the highest amercement for imputing to another (a great crime) entailing loss of caste;

30. The second amercement for (imputing to another) a minor offence (such as the slaughter of a cow);

31. The same for reviling a Brâhmaṇa versed in the three Vedas, or an old man, or a (whole) caste or corporation (of judges or others);

32. For reviling a village or district, the lowest amercement;

33. For using insulting language (such as 'I shall visit your sister,' or 'I shall visit your daughter'), a hundred Kârshâpanas;

34. For insulting a man by using bad language regarding his mother (such as 'I shall visit your mother' or the like speeches), the highest amercement.

35. For abusing a man of his own caste, he shall be fined twelve Panas.

36. For abusing a man of a lower caste, he shall be fined six (Panas).

32. Nand. infers from the use of the particle kā that 'a family' is also intended here.
37. For insulting a member of the highest caste or of his own caste (he having been insulted by him) at the same time, the same fine is ordained;

38. Or (if he only returns his insult, a fine amounting to) three Kārshāpanas.

39. The same (punishment is ordained) if he calls him bad names.

40. An adulterer shall be made to pay the highest amercement if he has had connection with a woman of his own caste;

41. For adultery with women of a lower caste, the second amercement;

42. The same (fine is ordained) for a bestial crime committed with a cow.

43. He who has had connection with a woman of one of the lowest castes, shall be put to death.

44. For a bestial crime committed with cattle (other than cows) he shall be fined a hundred Kārshāpanas.

45. (The same fine is ordained) for giving a (blemished) damsel in marriage, without indicating her blemish (whether the bride be sick, or no longer a maid, or otherwise faulty);

46. And he shall have to support her.

47. He who says of an unblemished damsel, that she has a blemish (shall pay) the highest amerce-ment.

48. For killing an elephant, or a horse, or a camel, or a cow, (the criminal) shall have one hand, or one foot, lopped off.

43. The lowest castes (antyāḥ), according to Aṅgiras, are the following seven, Kandraśa, Svapakas, Kshattris, Sūtas, Vaidehakas, Māgadhās, and Ayogavas.
49. A seller of forbidden meat (such as pork, shall be punished in the same way).
50. He who kills domestic animals, shall pay a hundred Kârshâpanas.
51. He shall make good their value to the owner of those animals.
52. He who kills wild animals, shall pay five hundred Kârshâpanas.
53. A killer of birds, or of fish, (shall pay) ten Kârshâpanas.
54. A killer of insects shall pay one Kârshâpana.
55. A feller of trees yielding fruit (shall pay) the highest amercement.
56. A feller of trees yielding blossoms only (shall pay) the second amercement.
57. He who cuts creepers, shrubs, or climbing plants (shall pay) a hundred Kârshâpanas.
58. He who cuts grass (shall pay) one Kârshâpana.
59. And all such offenders (shall make good) to the owners (of the trees or plants cut down by them) the revenue which they yield.
60. If any man raises his hand (against his equal in caste, with intent to strike him, he shall pay) ten Kârshâpanas;
61. If he raises his foot, twenty;
62. If he raises a piece of wood, the first amercement;
63. If he raises a stone, the second amercement;
64. If he raises a weapon, the highest amercement.
65. If he seizes him by his feet, by his hair, by

53. Nând. infers from a passage of Kâtyâyana that the particle ka is used here in order to include serpents.
his garment, or by his hand, he shall pay ten Panas as a fine.

66. If he causes pain to him, without fetching blood from him, (he shall pay) thirty-two Panas;

67. For fetching blood from him, sixty-four.

68. For mutilating or injuring a hand, or a foot, or a tooth, and for slitting an ear, or the nose, the second amercement (is ordained).

69. For rendering a man unable to move about, or to eat, or to speak, or for striking him (violently, the same punishment is ordained).

70. For wounding or breaking an eye, or the neck, or an arm, or a bone, or a shoulder, the highest amercement (is ordained).

71. For striking out both eyes of a man, the king shall (confine him and) not dismiss him from jail as long as he lives;

72. Or he shall order him to be mutilated in the same way (i.e. deprived of his eyes).

73. Where one is attacked by many, the punishment for each shall be the double of that which has been ordained for (attacks by) a single person.

74. (The double punishment is) likewise (ordained) for those who do not give assistance to one calling for help, though they happen to be on the spot, or (who run away) after having approached it.

75. All those who have hurt a man, shall pay the expense of his cure.

76. Those who have hurt a domestic animal (shall also pay the expense of his cure).

77. He who has stolen a cow, or a horse, or a camel, or an elephant, shall have one hand, or one foot, cut off;
78. He who has stolen a goat, or a sheep, (shall have) one hand (cut off).

79. He who steals grain (of those sorts which grow in the rainy season), shall pay eleven times its value as a fine;

80. Likewise, he who steals grain (of those sorts, which grow in winter and spring, such as rice and barley).

81. A stealer of gold, silver, or clothes, at a value of more than fifty Māshas, shall lose both hands.

82. He who steals a less amount than that, shall pay eleven times its value as a fine.

83. A stealer of thread, cotton, cow-dung, sugar, sour milk, milk, butter-milk, grass, salt, clay, ashes, birds, fish, clarified butter, oil, meat, honey, basketwork, canes of bamboo, earthenware, or iron pots, shall pay three times their value as a fine.

84. (The same fine is ordained for stealing) dressed food.

85. For stealing flowers, green (grain), shrubs, creepers, climbing plants or leaves, (he shall pay) five Krishnas.

86. For stealing pot-herbs, roots, or fruits (the same punishment is ordained).

87. He who steals gems, (shall pay) the highest amercement.

88. He who steals anything not mentioned above, (shall make good) its value (to the owner).

89. Thieves shall be compelled to restore all stolen goods to the owners.

90. After that, they shall suffer the punishment that has been ordained for them.

91. He who does not make way for one for
whom way ought to be made, shall be fined twenty-five Kārshāpanas.

92. (The same fine is ordained) for omitting to offer a seat to (a guest or others) to whom it ought to be offered.

93. For neglecting to worship such as have a claim to be worshipped, (the same fine is ordained);

94. Likewise, for neglecting to invite (at a Śrāḍḍha) a Brāhmaṇa, one’s neighbour;

95. And for offering him no food, after having invited him.

96. He who does not eat, though he has received and accepted an invitation, shall give a gold Māshaka as a fine;

97. And the double amount of food to his host.

98. He who insults a Brāhmaṇa by offering him uneatable food (such as excrements and the like, or forbidden food, such as garlic, must pay) sixteen Suvarnas (as a fine).

99. (If he insults him by offering him) such food as would cause him to be degraded (were he to taste it, he must pay) a hundred Suvarnas.

100. (If he offers him) spirituous liquor, he shall be put to death.

101. If he insults a Kshatriya (in the same way), he shall have to pay half of the above amercement;

102. If he insults a Vaisya, half of that again;

103. If he insults a Śūdra, the first amercement.

104. If one who (being a member of the Kandāla or some other low caste) must not be touched, inten-
tionally defiles by his touch one who (as a member of a twice-born caste) may be touched (by other twice-born persons only), he shall be put to death.

105. If a woman in her courses (touches such a person), she shall be lashed with a whip.

106. If one defiles the highway, or a garden, or the water (by voiding excrements) near them (or in any other way), he shall be fined a hundred Pávasas; 107. And he must remove the filth.

108. If he demolishes a house, or a piece of ground (a court-yard or the like), or a wall or the like, he shall have to pay the second amercement;

109. And he shall have it repaired (at his own cost).

110. If he throws into another man’s house (thorns, spells, or other) such things as might hurt some one, he shall pay a hundred Pávasas.

111. (The same punishment is ordained) for falsely denying the possession of common property;

112. And for not delivering what has been sent (for a god or for a Bráhmaṇa).

113. (The same punishment is) also (ordained) for father and son, teacher (and pupil), sacrificer and officiating priest, if one should forsake the other, provided that he has not been expelled from caste.

114. And he must return to them (to the parents and the rest).

115. (The same punishment is) also (ordained) for hospitably entertaining a Súdra or religious ascetic at an oblation to the gods or to the manes;

116. And for following an unlawful occupation

115. According to Nand., the particle ka indicates here, that the same punishment is ordained for him who visits a widow by his own accord, as mentioned by Yāgñavalkya (II, 234).
(such as studying the Vedas without having been initiated);

117. And for breaking open a house on which (the king's) seal is laid;

118. And for making an oath without having been asked to do so (by the king or a judge);

119. And for depriving cattle of their virility.

120. The fine for the witnesses in a dispute between father and son shall be ten Panas.

121. For him who acts as surety for either of the two parties in such a contest, the highest amercement (is ordained).

122. (The same punishment is ordained) for forging a balance, or a measure;

123. Also, for pronouncing them incorrect, although they are correct.

124. (The same punishment is) also (ordained) for selling adulterated commodities;

125. And for a company of merchants who prevent the sale of a commodity (which happens to be abroad) by selling it under its price.

126. (The same punishment is ordained) for those (members of such a company) who sell (an article belonging to the whole company for more than it is worth) on their own account.

127. He who does not deliver to the purchaser a commodity (sold), after its price has been paid to him, shall be compelled to deliver it to him with interest;

117. Nand. considers the particle ए to imply that the exchange of sealed goods for others shall be punished in the same way. But this assertion rests upon a false reading (samudraparivarta for samudgaparivarta) of Y. II, 247, which passage Nand. quotes in support of his view.
128. And he shall be fined a hundred Páras by the king.
129. If there should be a loss upon a commodity purchased, which the purchaser refuses to accept (though it has been tendered to him), the loss shall fall upon the purchaser.
130. He who sells a commodity on which the king has laid an embargo, shall have it confiscated.
131. A ferry-man who takes a toll payable (for commodities conveyed) by land shall be fined ten Páras.
132. Likewise, a ferry-man, or an official at a toll-office, who takes a fare or toll from a student, or Vánaprastha (hermit), or a Bhikshu (ascetic or religious mendicant), or a pregnant woman, or one about to visit a place of pilgrimage;
133. And he shall restore it to them.
134. Those who use false dice in gaming shall lose one hand.
135. Those who resort to (other) fraudulent practices in gaming shall lose two fingers (the thumb and the index).
136. Cutpurses shall lose one hand.
137. Cattle being attacked, during day-time, by wolves or other ferocious animals, and the keeper not going (to repel the attack), the blame shall fall upon him;
138. And he shall make good to the owner the value of the cattle that has perished.
139. If he milks a cow without permission, (he shall pay) twenty-five Kárshápanás (as a fine).

131. The toll mentioned here is the duty on marketable commodities mentioned above, III, 29, 30. (Nand.)
140. If a female buffalo damages grain, her keeper shall be fined eight Mâshas.

141. If she has been without a keeper, her owner (shall pay that fine).

142. (For mischief done by) a horse, or a camel, or an ass (the fine shall be the same).

143. (For damage done by) a cow, it shall be half.

144. (For damage done by) a goat, or a sheep, (it shall be) half of that again.

145. For cattle abiding (in the field), after having eaten (grain), the fine shall be double.

146. And in every case the owner (of the field) shall receive the value of the grain that has been destroyed.

147. There is no offence if the damage has been done near a highway, near a village, or (in a field adjacent to) the common pasture-ground for cattle;

148. Or (if it has been done) in an uninclosed field;

149. Or if the cattle did not abide long;

150. Or if the damage has been done by bulls that have been set at liberty, or by a cow shortly after her calving.

151. He who commits members of the highest (or Brâhmaṇa) caste to slavery, shall pay the highest amercement.

152. An apostate from religious mendicity shall become the king’s slave.

153. A hired workman who abandons his work before the term has expired shall pay the whole amount (of the stipulated wages) to his employer;

154. And he shall pay a hundred Panas to the king.
155. What has been destroyed through his want of care, (he must make good) to the owner;
156. Unless the damage have been caused by an accident.
157. If an employer dismisses a workman (whom he has hired) before the expiration of the term, he shall pay him his entire wages;
158. And (he shall pay) a hundred Panas to the king;
159. Unless the workman have been at fault.
160. He who, having promised his daughter to one suitor, gives her in marriage to another, shall be punished as a thief;
161. Unless the (first) suitor have a blemish.
162. The same (punishment is ordained for a suitor) who abandons a faultless girl;
163. (And for a husband who forsakes) a (blameless) wife.
164. He who buys unawares in open market the property of another man (from one not authorised to sell it) is not to blame;
165. (But) the owner shall recover his property.
166. If he has bought it in secret and under its price, the purchaser and the vendor shall be punished as thieves.
167. He who embezzles goods belonging to a corporation (of Brâhmaṇas, and which have been sent to them by the king or by private persons), shall be banished.
168. He who violates their established rule (shall) also (be banished).
169. He who retains a deposit shall restore the commodity deposited to the owner, with interest.
170. The king shall punish him as a thief.
171. (The same punishment is ordained for him) who claims as a deposit what he never deposited.

172. A destroyer of landmarks shall be compelled to pay the highest amercement and to mark the boundary anew with landmarks.

173. He who (knowingly) eats forbidden food effecting loss of caste shall be banished.

174. He who sells forbidden food (such as spirituous liquor and the like), or food which must not be sold, and he who breaks an image of a deity, shall pay the highest amercement;

175. Also, a physician who adopts a wrong method of cure in the case of a patient of high rank (such as a relative of the king’s);

176. The second amercement in the case of another patient;

177. The lowest amercement in the case of an animal.

178. He who does not give what he has promised, shall be compelled to give it and to pay the first amercement.

179. To a false witness his entire property shall be confiscated.

180. (The same punishment is ordained) for a judge who lives by bribes.

181. He who has mortgaged more than a bull’s hide of land to one creditor, and without having redeemed it mortgages it to another, shall be corporally punished (by whipping or imprisonment).

171. According to Nand., the particle $ka$ indicates that those who state the nature or amount of a deposit wrongly are also intended here.

173. Thus according to Nand., who says expressly that the causative form cannot here mean causing to eat, because the punishment for the latter offence has been mentioned in Sūtra 98.
182. If the quantity be less, he shall pay a fine of sixteen Suvarnas.

183. That land, whether little or much, on the produce of which one man can subsist for a year, is called the quantity of a bull's hide.

184. If a dispute should arise between two (creditors) concerning (a field or other immovable property) which has been mortgaged to both at the same time, that mortgagee shall enjoy its produce who holds it in his possession, without having obtained it by force.

185. What has been possessed in order and with a legitimate title (such as purchase, donation, and the like), the possessor may keep; it can never be taken from him.

186. Where (land or other) property has been held in legitimate possession by the father (or grandfather), the son's right to it, after his death, cannot be contested; for it has become his own by force of possession.

187. If possession has been held of an estate by three (successive) generations in due course, the fourth in descent shall keep it as his property, even without a written title.

188. He who kills (in his own defence a tiger or other) animal with sharp nails and claws, or a (goat or other) horned animal (excepting cows), or a (boar or other) animal with sharp teeth, or an assassin, or an elephant, or a horse, or any other (ferocious animal by whom he has been attacked), commits no crime.

189. Any one may unhesitatingly slay a man who attacks him with intent to murder him, whether his spiritual teacher, young or old, or a Bráhmana,
or even (a Brâhmaṇa) versed in many branches of sacred knowledge.

190. By killing an assassin who attempts to kill, whether in public or in private, no crime is committed by the slayer: fury recoils upon fury.

191. Assassins should be known to be of seven kinds: such as try to kill with the sword, or with poison, or with fire, such as raise their hand in order to pronounce a curse, such as recite a deadly incantation from the Atharva-veda, such as raise a false accusation which reaches the ears of the king,

192. And such as have illicit intercourse with another man’s wife. The same designation is given to other (evil-doers) who deprive others of their worldly fame or of their wealth, or who destroy religious merit (by ruining pools, or other such acts), or property (such as houses or fields).

193. Thus I have declared to thee fully, O Earth, the criminal laws, enumerating at full length the punishments ordained for all sorts of offences.

194. Let the king dictate due punishments for other offences also, after having ascertained the class and the age (of the criminal) and the amount (of the damage done or sum claimed), and after having consulted the Brâhmaṇas (his advisers).

195. That detestable judge who dismisses without punishment such as deserve it, and punishes such as deserve it not, shall incur twice as heavy a penalty as the criminal himself.

196. A king in whose dominion there exists neither thief, nor adulterer, nor calumniator, nor robber, nor murderer, attains the world of Indra.
VI.

1. A creditor shall receive his principal back from his debtor exactly as he had lent it to him.

2. (As regards the interest to be paid), he shall take in the direct order of the castes two, three, four, or five in the hundred by the month (if no pledge has been given).

3. Or let debtors of any caste pay as much interest as has been promised by themselves.

4. After the lapse of one year let them pay interest according to the above rule, even though it have not been agreed on.

5. By the use of a pledge (to be kept only) interest is forfeited.


1, 2. Colebrooke loc. cit. seems to have translated a different reading.
6. The creditor must make good the loss of a pledge, unless it was caused by fate or by the king.

7. (The pledge must) also (be restored to the debtor) when the interest has reached its maximum amount (on becoming equal to the principal, and has all been paid).

8. But he must not restore an immovable pledge without special agreement (till the principal itself has been paid).

9. That immovable property which has been delivered, restorable when the sum borrowed is made good, (the creditor) must restore when the sum borrowed has been made good.

10. Property lent bears no further interest after it has been tendered, but refused by the creditor.

11. On gold the interest shall rise no higher than to make the debt double;

12. On grain, (no higher than to make it) threefold;

13. On cloth, (no higher than to make it) fourfold;

14. On liquids, (no higher than to make it) eightfold;

15. Of female slaves and cattle, the offspring (shall be taken as interest).

16. On substances from which spirituous liquor

7. Colebrooke loc. cit. connects this Sūtra with the next. My rendering rests on Nand.'s interpretation.

8. Nand. cites as an instance of an agreement of this kind one made in the following form, 'You shall have the enjoyment of this or that mango grove as long as interest on the principal lent to me has not ceased to accrue.'
is extracted, on cotton, thread, leather, weapons, bricks, and charcoal, the interest is unlimited.

17. On such objects as have not been mentioned it may be double.

18. A creditor recovering the sum lent by any (lawful) means shall not be reproved by the king.

19. If the debtor, so forced to discharge the debt, complains to the king, he shall be fined in an equal sum.

20. If a creditor sues before the king and fully proves his demand, the debtor shall pay as a fine to the king a tenth part of the sum proved;

21. And the creditor, having received the sum due, shall pay a twentieth part of it.

22. If the whole demand has been contested by the debtor, and even a part of it only has been proved against him, he must pay the whole.

23. There are three means of proof in case of a demand having been contested, viz. a writing, witnesses, and proof by ordeal.

24. A debt contracted before witnesses should be discharged in the presence of witnesses.

25. A written contract having been fulfilled, the writing should be torn.

26. Part only being paid, and the writing not being at hand, let the creditor give an acquittance.

27. If he who contracted the debt should die, or

17. Nand. infers from a passage of Kâtyâyana that this rule refers to gems, pearls, coral, gold, silver, cotton, silk, and wool.

18. The 'lawful means' are mediation of friends and the four other modes of compelling payment of an unliquidated demand. (Nand.) See M.VIII, 49.

22. 'The particle api indicates that he must pay a fine to the king besides, as ordained by Yâgñavalkya II, 11.' (Nand.)
become a religious ascetic, or remain abroad for twenty years, that debt shall be discharged by his sons or grandsons;

28. But not by remoter descendants against their will.

29. He who takes the assets of a man, leaving or not leaving male issue, must pay the sum due (by him);

30. And (so must) he who has the care of the widow left by one who had no assets.

31. A woman (shall) not (be compelled to pay) the debt of her husband or son;

32. Nor the husband or son (to pay) the debt of a woman (who is his wife or mother);

33. Nor a father to pay the debt of his son.

34. A debt contracted by parcers shall be paid by any one of them who is present.

35. And so shall the debt of the father (be paid) by (any one of) the brothers (or of their sons) before partition.

36. But after partition they shall severally pay according to their shares of the inheritance.

37. A debt contracted by the wife of a herdsman, distiller of spirits, public dancer, washer, or hunter shall be discharged by the husband (because he is supported by his wife).

38. (A debt of which payment has been previously) promised must be paid by the householder;

39. And (so must he pay that debt) which was

38, 39. Regarding these two Sūtras see Jolly, Indisches Schuldrecht, in the Transactions of the Royal Bavarian Academy of Sciences, 1877, p. 309, note.
contracted by any person for the behoof of the family.

40. He who on receiving the whole amount of a loan, promises to repay the principal on the following day (or some other date near at hand), but from covetousness does not repay it, shall give interest for it.

41. Suretiship is ordained for appearance, for honesty, and for payment; the first two (sureties, and not their sons), must pay the debt on failure of their engagements, but even the sons of the last (may be, compelled to pay it).

42. When there are several sureties (jointly bound), they shall pay their proportionate shares of the debt; but when they are bound severally, the payment shall be made (by any of them), as the creditor pleases.

43. If the surety, being harassed by the creditor, discharges the debt, the debtor shall pay twice as much to the surety.

VII.

1. Documents are of three kinds:

2. Attested by the king, or by (other) witnesses, or unattested.

3. A document is (said to be) attested by the king when it has been executed (in a court of judicature), on the king ordering it, by a scribe, his

42. In the first case the agreement is made in the following form, 'I shall pay so and so much to you, in the way agreed on.' In the second case the sum is not divided between the sureties, and each of them liable for the whole debt therefore. (Nand.)

servant, and has been signed by his chief judge, with his own hand.

4. It is (said to be) attested by witnesses when, having been written anywhere, and by any one, it is signed by witnesses in their own hands.

5. It is (said to be) unattested when it has been written (by the party himself) with his own hand.

6. Such a document, if it has been caused to be written by force, makes no evidence.

7. Neither does any fraudulent document (make evidence);

8. Nor a document (which), though attested, (is vitiated) by the signature of a witness bribed (by one party) or of bad character;

9. Nor one written by a scribe of the same description;

10. Nor one executed by a woman, or a child, or a dependant person, or one intoxicated or insane, or one in danger or in bodily fear.

11. (That instrument is termed) proof which is not adverse to peculiar local usages, which defines clearly the nature of the pledge given, and is free from confusion in the arrangement of the subject matter and (in the succession of) the syllables.

12. If the authenticity of a document is contested, it should be ascertained by (comparing with it other)

7. According to Nand., the particle ka is used here in order to include documents that have been executed by a person intoxicated, by one under duress, by a female, by a child, by force, and by intimidation (see Nārada IV, 61). Most of these categories are, however, mentioned in Sūtra 10.

11. I have translated the reading vyaktādhividhilakṣanām, which, though not occurring in the text of any MS., is mentioned by Nand., and is found in an identical passage of the Institutes of Nārada (see Nārada IV, 60, and Appendix, p. 123).
letters or sighs (such as the flourish denoting the word Śrī and the like) or documents executed by the same man, by (enquiring into) the probabilities of the case, and by (finding out such writings as show) a mode of writing similar (to that contained in the disputed document).

13. Should the debtor, or creditor, or witness, or scribe be dead, the authenticity of the document has to be ascertained by (comparing with it other) specimens of their handwriting.

VIII.

1. Now follow (the laws regarding) witnesses.

2. The king cannot be (made a witness); nor a learned Brāhmaṇa; nor an ascetic; nor a gamester; nor a thief; nor a person not his own master; nor a woman; nor a child; nor a perpetrator of the acts called sāhasa (violence); nor one over-aged (or more than eighty years old); nor one intoxicated or insane; nor a man of bad fame; nor an outcast;


2. 1 There are three kinds of sāhasa. (Nand.) They are, in the enumeration of Nārada, 1. spoiling fruits or the like; 2. injuring more valuable articles; 3. offences directed against the life of a human being, and approaching another man's wife. See Nārada XIV, 4–6.
nor one tormented by hunger or thirst; nor one oppressed by a (sudden) calamity (such as the death of his father or the like), or wholly absorbed in evil passions;

3. Nor an enemy or a friend; nor one interested in the subject matter; nor one who does forbidden acts; nor one formerly perjured; nor an attendant;

4. Nor one who, without having been appointed, comes and offers his evidence;

5. Nor can one man alone be made a witness.

6. In cases of theft, of violence, of abuse and assault, and of adultery the competence of witnesses must not be examined too strictly.

7. Now (those who are fit to be) witnesses (shall be enumerated):

8. Descendants of a noble race, who are virtuous and wealthy, sacrificers, zealous in the practice of religious austerities, having male issue, well versed in the holy law, studious, veracious, acquainted with the three Vedas, and aged (shall be witnesses).

9. If he is endowed with the qualities just mentioned, one man alone can also be made a witness.

10. In a dispute between two litigants, the witnesses of that party have to be examined from which the plaint has proceeded.

11. Where the claim has been refuted as not agreeing with the facts (as e.g. the sum claimed

---

5. According to Nand., who argues from a passage of Nârada (5, 37), the use of the particle ḍa implies here, that two witnesses are also not sufficient. But the MSS. of Nârada exhibit a different reading of the passage in question, which reading is supported by the Viramitrodaya.

8. The particle ḍa is used here, according to Nand., who argues from a passage of Yâgñavalkya (II, 68), in order to include liberality among the qualities required in a witness.
having been repaid by the debtor), there the witnesses of the defendant have to be examined as well.

12. An appointed witness having died or gone abroad, those who have heard his deposition may give evidence.

13. (The evidence of) witnesses is (of two kinds): either of what was seen, or of what was heard.

14. Witnesses are free from blame if they give true evidence.

15. Whenever the death of a member of any of the four castes (would be occasioned by true evidence, they are free from blame) if they give false evidence.

16. In order to expiate the sin thus committed, (such a witness), if he belongs to a twice-born caste, must pour an oblation in the fire, consecrating it with the texts called Kūshmāndī.

17. If he is a Sūdra, he must feed ten cows for one day.

18. A false witness may be known by his altered looks, by his countenance changing colour, and by his talk wandering from the subject.

19. Let the judge summon the witnesses, at the time of sunrise, and examine them after having bound them by an oath.

20. A Brāhmaṇa he must address thus, 'Declare.'

21. A Kshatriya he must address thus, 'Declare the truth.'

16. Vāgасаn. Samh. XX, 14–16, or Taitt. Ārany. X, 3–5. Nand. considers the term Kūshmāndī to be used in a general sense here, so as to include all the other texts mentioned in an analogous passage of Manu (VIII, 106).
22. A Vaisya he must address thus, 'Thy kine, grain, and gold (shall yield thee no fruit, if thou wert to give false evidence).'

23. A Sūdra he must address thus, 'Thou shalt have to atone for all (possible) heavy crimes (if thou wert to give false evidence).'

24. Let him exhort the witnesses (with the following speeches):

25. 'Whatever places (of torture) await (the killer of a Brāhmaṇa and other) great criminals and (the killer of a cow and other) minor offenders, those places of abode are ordained for a witness who gives false evidence;

26. 'And the fruit of every virtuous act he has done, from the day of his birth to his dying day, shall be lost to him.

27. 'Truth makes the sun spread his rays.

28. 'Truth makes the moon shine.

29. 'Truth makes the wind blow.

30. 'Truth makes the earth bear (all that is upon it).

31. 'Truth makes waters flow.

32. 'Truth makes the fire burn.

33. 'The atmosphere exists through truth.

34. 'So do the gods.

35. 'And so do the offerings.

36. 'If veracity and a thousand horse-sacrifices

---

22, 23. Nand.'s interpretation of these two Sūtras, which has been followed above, does not agree with Kullūka's, of M. VIII, 88. But in another passage of Manu (VIII, 113), where the same terms recur, he interprets them like Nand.

36. This Sloka is also found in the Mahābhārata I, 3095 &c., in the Mārkandeya-purāṇa VIII, 42, in the Hitopadesa IV, 129, and, in a somewhat modified form, in the Rāmāyana II, 61, 10. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 731 &c.
are weighed against each other, (it is found that) truth ranks even higher than a thousand horse-sacrifices.

37. 'Those who, though acquainted with the facts, and appointed to give evidence, stand mute, are equally criminal with, and deserve the same punishment as, false witnesses.' (After having addressed them) thus, let the king examine the witnesses in the order of their castes.

38. That plaintiff whose statement the witnesses declare to be true, shall win his suit; but he whose statement they declare to be wrong, shall certainly lose it.

39. If there is contradictory evidence, let the king decide by the plurality of witnesses; if equality in number, by superiority in virtue; if parity in virtue, by the evidence of the best among the twice-born.

40. Whenever a perjured witness has given false evidence in a suit, (the king) must reverse the judgment; and whatever has been done, must be considered as undone.

IX.

1. Now follows (the rule regarding) the performance of ordeals.

39. Nand. takes the term dvīgottama, 'the best among the twice-born,' as an equivalent for 'Brāhmaṇas.' Kullūka (on M. VIII, 73) refers it to 'twice-born men, who are particularly active in the discharge of their religious duties.'

2. In cases of a criminal action directed against the king, or of violence\(^1\) (they may be administered) indiscriminately.

3. In cases of (denial of) a deposit or of (alleged) theft or robbery they must be administered each according to the value (of the property claimed).

4. In all such cases the value (of the object claimed) must be estimated in gold.

5. Now if its value amounts to less than one Krishnala, a Súdra must be made to swear by a blade of Dúrvá grass, (which he must hold in his hand);

6. If it amounts to less than two Krishnalas, by a blade of Tila;

7. If it amounts to less than three Krishnalas, by a blade of silver;

8. If it amounts to less than four Krishnalas, by a blade of gold;

9. If it amounts to less than five Krishnalas, by a lump of earth taken from a furrow;

10. If it amounts to less than half a Suvarna, a Súdra must be made to undergo the ordeal by sacred libation;

11. If it exceeds that amount, (the judge must administer to him) any one of the (other) ordeals, viz. the ordeal by the balance, by fire, by water, or by poison, considering duly (the season, &c.)

12. If the amount (of the matter in contest) is twice as high (as in each of the last-mentioned cases), a Vaisya must (in each case) undergo that ordeal which has (just) been ordained (for a Súdra);

13. A Kshatriya (must undergo the same ordeals), if the amount is thrice as high;

---

\(^{1}\) See VIII, 2, note.
14. A Brâhmana, if it is four times as high. He is, however, not subject to the ordeal by sacred libation.

15. No judge must administer the (ordeal by) sacred libation to a Brâhmana;

16. Except if it be done as a preliminary proof of his dealing fairly in some future transaction.

17. Instead of (administering the ordeal by) sacred libation to a Brâhmana (in suits regarding an object, the value of which amounts to less than two Suvarnás), let the judge cause him to swear by a lump of earth taken from a furrow.

18. To one formerly convicted of a crime (or of perjury) he must administer one of the ordeals, even though the matter in contest be ever so trifling.

19. But to one who is known (and esteemed) among honest men and virtuous, he must not (administer any ordeal), even though the matter in contest be ever so important.

20. The claimant must declare his willingness to pay the fine (which is due in case of his being defeated);

21. And the defendant must go through the ordeal.

22. In cases of a criminal action directed against the king, or of violence (an ordeal may be administered) even without (the claimant) promising to pay the fine (due in case of defeat in ordinary suits).

23. To women, Brâhmanás, persons deficient in an organ of sense, infirm (old) men, and sick persons, the (ordeal by the) balance must be administered.

24. But it must not be administered to them while a wind is blowing.
25. The (ordeal by) fire must not be administered to lepers, to infirm persons, or to blacksmiths;
26. Nor must it ever be administered in autumn or summer.
27. The (ordeal by) poison must not be administered to lepers, bilious persons, or Brâhmanas;
28. Nor during the rainy season.
29. The (ordeal by) water must not be administered to persons afflicted with phlegm or (another) illness, to the timid, to the asthmatic, nor to those who gain their subsistence from water (such as fishermen and the like);
30. Nor during (the two cold seasons) Hemanta and Sisirâ (or from middle of November to middle of March);
31. The (ordeal by) sacred libation must not be administered to atheists;
32. Nor when the country is afflicted with disease or pestilence.
33. Let the judge summon the defendant at the time of sunrise, after having fasted on the previous day and bathed in his clothes, and make him go through all the ordeals in the presence of (images of) the gods and of the (assessors and other) Brâhmanas.

X.

1. Now follows the (rule regarding the ordeal by) balance.

29. Nand. infers from a text of Nârada (not found in his Institutes), that the plural is made use of in this Sûtra in order to include women, children, sickly, old, and feeble persons.
32. According to Nand., the particle ka is used here in order to include fire, wind, grasshoppers, and other plagues.
X. 5, 6. Y. II, 100.
2. The transverse beam, by which the balance is to be suspended, should be fastened upon two posts, four Hastas above the ground (each), and should be made two Hastas long.

3. The beam of the balance should be made of strong wood (such as that of the Khadira or Tinduka trees), five Hastas long, and the two scales must be suspended on both sides of it, (and the whole suspended upon the transverse beam by means of an iron hook).

4. A man out of the guild of goldsmiths, or of braziers, should make it equal on both sides.

5. Into the one scale the person (who is to be tried by this ordeal) should be placed, and a stone (or earth or bricks) or some other (equivalent) of the same weight into the other.

6. The equivalent and the man having been made equal in weight and (the position of the scales) well marked, the man should be caused to descend from the balance.

2. One Hasta, 'cubit,' the modern 'hath,' equals two Vitasti, 'spans,' and 24 Aṅgulas, 'digits,' the modern Aṅgul. See Prinsep, Useful Tables, p. 122.

3. See the plate of balance, according to the statements of Indian legislators, in Professor Stenzler's Essay, 'Über die ind. Gottesurtheile,' Journal of the German Oriental Society, IX.

4. Nand. infers from the use of the plural number and from a passage of Pitāmaha and Nārada (see the Institutes of the latter, 5, 122), that merchants may also be appointed for this purpose.

6. Nand. refers the term svāhṇitaṁ kṛtvā to the man and to the equivalent, both having to be marked 'with the king's seal or in some other way, in order that no one may suspect the weight of the equivalent or of the man to have been increased or lessened by the addition or removal of other objects, or of clothes, ornaments, and the like.' 'Others' explain the term in the way in which it has been rendered above.
7. Next (the judge) should adjure by (the following) imprecactions the balance.
8. And the person appointed to look after the weighing:
9. ‘Those places of torture which have been prepared for the murderer of a Brâhmaṇa, or for a false witness, the same places are ordained for a person appointed to look after the weighing, who acts fraudulently in his office.
10. ‘Thou, O balance (dhāta), art called by the same name as holy law (dharma); thou, O balance, knowest what mortals do not comprehend.
11. ‘This man, being arraigned in a cause, is weighed upon thee. Therefore mayest thou deliver him lawfully from this perplexity.’
12. Thereupon the judge should have him placed into the one scale again. If he rises in it, he is freed from the charge according to law.
13. In case of the strings bursting, or of the splitting of the transverse beam, the man should be placed in the scale once more. Thus the facts will be ascertained positively, and a just sentence be the result.

XI.
1. Now follows the (rule regarding the ordeal by) fire.
2. He must make seven circles, sixteen Aṅgulas¹ in breadth each, the intervals being of the same breadth.
3. Thereupon he must place seven leaves of the

---

2. ¹See X, 2, note.
3. Nand. takes the term tataḥ, ‘thereupon,’ to imply that he
holy fig-tree into the hands of the person (about to perform the ordeal), who must turn his face towards the east and stretch out both arms.

4. Those (leaves) and his hands he must bind together with a thread.

5. Then he must place into his hands a ball made of iron, red-hot, fifty Palas in weight, and smooth.

6. Having received this, the person must proceed through the (seven) circles, without either walking at a very hurried pace, or lingering on his way.

7. Finally, after having passed the seventh circle, he must put down the ball upon the ground.

8. That man whose hands are burnt ever so little, shall be deemed guilty; but if he remains wholly unburnt, he is freed from the charge.

9. If he lets the ball drop from fear, or if there exists a doubt as to whether he is burnt or not, let him take the ball once more, because the proof has not been decided.

10. At the beginning (of the whole ceremony) the judge shall cause the person to rub some rice in his hands, and shall mark (with red sap, or the like, the already existing scars, eruptions of the skin, &c., which will thus have become visible). Then the judge, after having addressed the iron ball (with the following prayer), shall place it in his hands:

must previously examine the hands of the person about to perform the ordeal and mark existing scars or eruptions of the skin, as prescribed in Sūtra 10.

4. The particle अ implies, according to Nand., that he must further place seven सम्फ leaves, unbroken grains, Dūrvā leaves, and grain smeared with sour milk upon his hands, as ordained in a passage of Pitāmaha.
11. 'Thou, O fire, dwellest in the interior of all creatures, like a witness. O fire, thou knowest what mortals do not comprehend.

12. 'This man being arraigned in a cause, desires to be cleared from guilt. Therefore mayest thou deliver him lawfully from this perplexity.'

XII.

1. Now follows the (rule regarding the ordeal by) water.

2. (The defendant must enter) water which is free from mud, aquatic plants, (crabs and other) vicious animals, (porpoises or other) large rapacious animals living in water, fish, leeches, and other (animals or plants).

3. The water having been addressed with the Mantras (mentioned hereafter), he must enter it, seizing the knees of another man, who must be free from friendship or hatred, and must dive into the water up to his navel.

4. At the same time another man must discharge an arrow from a bow, which must neither be too strong nor too weak.

5. That arrow must be fetched quickly by another man.

6. He who is not seen above the water in the mean time is proclaimed innocent. But in the contrary case he is (declared) guilty, even though one limb of his only has become visible.

7. 'Thou, O water, dwellest in the interior of all creatures, like a witness. O water, thou knowest what mortals do not comprehend.'

8. 'This man being arraigned in a cause, desires to be cleared from guilt. Therefore mayest thou deliver him lawfully from this perplexity.'

XIII.

1. Now follows the (rule regarding the ordeal by) poison.

2. All (other) sorts of poison must be avoided (in administering this ordeal),

3. Except poison from the Śrīṅga tree, which grows on the Himālayas.

4. (Of that) the judge must give seven grains, mixed with clarified butter, to the defendant (while reciting the prayer hereafter mentioned).

5. If the poison is digested easily, without violent symptoms, he shall recognise him as innocent, and dismiss him at the end of the day.

6. 'On account of thy venomous and dangerous nature thou art destruction to all living creatures; thou, O poison, knowest what mortals do not comprehend.

7. 'This man being arraigned in a cause, desires to be cleared from guilt. Therefore mayest thou deliver him lawfully from this perplexity.'

XIV.

1. Now follows the (rule regarding the ordeal by) sacred libation.

2. Having invoked terrible deities (such as Durgā, the Ādityas or others, the defendant) must drink three handfuls of water in which (images of) those deities have been bathed,

XIII. 3, 5-7. Y. II, 110, 111.
3. Uttering at the same time the words, 'I have not done this,' with his face turned towards the deity (in question).

4. He to whom (any calamity) happens within a fortnight or three weeks (such as an illness, or fire, or the death of a relative, or a heavy visitation by the king),

5. Should be known to be guilty; otherwise (if nothing adverse happens to him), he is freed from the charge. A just king should honour (with presents of clothes, ornaments, &c.) one who has cleared himself from guilt by an ordeal.

XV 1.

1. Now there are twelve kinds of sons.

2. The first is the son of the body, viz. he who is begotten (by the husband) himself on his own lawfully wedded wife.

3. The second is the son begotten on a wife, viz. one begotten by a kinsman allied by funeral oblations, or 1 by a member of the highest caste, on an appointed (wife or widow).


3. 1 I have translated the reading vopâditaḥ, which was no doubt
4. The third is the son of an appointed daughter.
5. She is called an appointed daughter, who is given away by her father with the words, 'The son whom she bears be mine.'
6. A damsel who has no brother is also (in every case considered) an appointed daughter, though she has not been given away according to the rule of an appointed daughter.
7. The son of a twice-married woman is the fourth.
8. She who, being still a virgin, is married for the second time is called twice married (punarbhû).
9. She also is called twice married (punarbhû) who, though not legally married more than once, has lived with another man before her lawful marriage.

the reading of Nandapandita, as he paraphrases the whole clause as follows, 'begotten by an elder or younger brother of the husband; on failure of such, by a kinsman allied by funeral oblations; on failure of him, by one belonging to the same gotra (race) as the husband; on failure of him, by one descended from the same Rishi ancestors as he; on failure of him, by a member of the highest caste, i.e. a Brähmana.' The above reading is also found in the London MS. of the text and in the two Calcutta editions. Dr. Bühler's MS., in which Nand.'s Commentary on this chapter is wanting, has āotpâditaḥ, and he translates accordingly, 'begotten by a kinsman . . . , who belongs to the highest caste.' The same reading is found in a quotation contained in Gagannātha and Colebrooke's Dig. loc. cit. (I quote from a very good though fragmentary Bengali MS. in my possession), where, however, this clause runs as follows, niyuktāyām savarnena āotpâditaḥ, 'begotten by a man of equal class on a widow duly appointed,' Colebrooke. The other Smrtis do not speak of the appointment of others than kinsmen to beget a son on a widow, or wife of a eunuch, &c., unless Yā滚滚valkya's words (II, 128) sagotrenatarena vā, 'by a Sagotra or by another,' may be rendered, contrary to Vignāneśvara's interpretation, by 'a kinsman or one who is no kinsman.'
10. The son of an unmarried damsel is the fifth.

11. (He is called so who is) born by an unmarried daughter in the house of her father.

12. And he belongs to the man who (afterwards) marries the mother.

13. The son who is secretly born in the house is the sixth.

14. He belongs to him in whose bed he is born.

15. The son received with a bride is the seventh.

16. He (is called so who) is the son of a woman married while she was pregnant.

17. And he belongs to the husband (of the pregnant bride).

18. The adopted son (dattaka) is the eighth.

19. And he belongs to him to whom he is given by his mother or father.

20. The son bought is the ninth.

21. And he belongs to him by whom he is bought.

22. The son self-given is the tenth.

23. And he belongs to him to whom he gave himself.

24. The son cast away is the eleventh.

25. (He is called so) who was forsaken by his father or mother (or by both).

26. And he belongs to him by whom he is received.

27. The son born by any woman whomsoever is the twelfth.

27. 'Yatra kva\#anotp\#dita, 'born wherever,' means, according to Nand., 'begotten anyhow, but otherwise than the above-mentioned sons, upon a woman, whether one's own wife, or another man's wife, whether equal in caste or not, whether legally married to the
28. Amongst these (sons) each preceding one is preferable (to the one next in order).
29. And he takes the inheritance (before the next in order).
30. And let him maintain the rest.
31. He should marry unmarried (sisters) in a manner correspondent with the amount of his property.
32. Outcasts, eunuchs, persons incurably diseased, or deficient (in organs of sense or actions, such as blind, deaf, dumb, or insane persons, or lepers) do not receive a share.
33. They should be maintained by those who take the inheritance.
34. And their legitimate sons receive a share.
35. But not the children of an outcast;
36. Provided they were born after (the commission of) the act on account of which the parents were outcasted.
37. Neither do children begotten (by husbands of begetter or not, whether still a virgin or not,' &c. But he adds a very lengthy discussion, the upshot of which is, that the term yatra kvaṣanotpādita is applicable to adopted sons only, who, although they are considered as the sons of the adopter, or of the legitimate husband of the woman, upon whom they were begotten by another, may also become heirs to the begetter, in case he has no other son. 'Or this term refers to the son of a Sūdra concubine, whom Manu calls Pārśava' (M. IX, 178). The latter interpretation agrees with the one proposed by Dr. Bühler, who identifies the yatra kvaṣanotpādita with the 'Nishāda and Pārśava of other lawyers,' especially of Baudhāyana (II, 2, 22), and with the view taken by Gagannātha, who thinks that the Saudra (son of a Sūdra woman) is meant.
32. 'The particle tu, "but," indicates that those who have entered the order of ascetics must also be understood here.' (Nand.)
34. 'The particle ạa indicates that sons begotten on their wives (Kshetragas) shall also receive a share.' (Nand.)
an inferior caste) on women of a higher caste receive a share.

38. Their sons do not even receive a share of the wealth of their paternal grandfathers.

39. They should be supported by the heirs.

40. And he who inherits the wealth, presents the funeral oblation (to the deceased).

41. Amongst wives of one husband also the son of one is the son of all (and must present funeral oblations to them after their death).

42. Likewise, amongst brothers begotten by one (father, the son of one is the son of all, and must present funeral oblations to them all).

43. Let a son present the funeral oblations to his father, even though he inherit no property.

44. Because he saves (trāyate) his father from the hell called Put, therefore (a male child) is called put-tra (protector from Put, son) by Svayambhū himself.

45. He (the father) throws his debt on him (the son); and the father obtains immortality, if he sees the face of a living son.

46. Through a son he conquers the worlds, through a grandson he obtains immortality, and through the son’s grandson he gains the world of the sun.

47. No difference is made in this world between the son of a son and the son of a daughter; for even a daughter’s son works the salvation of a childless man, just like a son’s son.

44. ‘Svayambhū means the Veda.’ (Nand.)
XVI.

1. On women equal in caste (to their husbands) sons are begotten, who are equal in caste (to their fathers).

2. On women of lower caste than their husbands sons are begotten, who follow the caste of their mothers.

3. On women of higher caste than their husbands sons are begotten, who are despised by the twice-born.

4. Among these, the son of a Sūdra with a Vaisya woman is called Æyogava.

5. The Pukkasa and Māgadha are sons of a Vaisya and Sūdra respectively with a Kshatriya woman.

6. The Kandāla, Vaidehaka, and Sūta are the sons of a Sūdra, Vaisya, and Kshatriya respectively with a Brāhmaṇa woman.

7. Besides these, there are innumerable other mixed castes produced by further intermixture between those that have been mentioned.

8. Æyogavas must live by artistic performances (such as public wrestling, dancing, and the like).


10. Māgadhas must live by calling out in public the good qualities (of saleable commodities).

11. Kandālas must live by executing criminals sentenced to death.


10. According to Manu (X, 47) the Māgadhas are to live by traffic.
12. Vaidehakas must live by keeping (dancing girls and other public) women and profiting by what they earn.


14. Kandālas must live out of the town, and their clothes must be the mantles of the deceased. In this their condition is different (from, and lower than, that of the other mixed castes).

15. All (members of mixed castes) should have intercourse (of marriage, and other community) only between themselves.

16. (In the lower castes also) the son inherits the property of his father.

17. All members of those mixed castes, whether their descent has been kept secret or is generally known, may be found out by their acts.

18. Desertion of life, regardless of reward, in order to save a Brāhmaṇa, or a cow, or for the sake of a woman or child, may confer heavenly bliss even upon (members of those) base castes.

XVII.

1. If a father makes a partition with his sons, he may dispose of his self-acquired property as he thinks best.

2. But in regard to wealth inherited of the paternal grandfather, the ownership of father and son is equal.

3. (Sons), who have separated from their father, should give a share to (a brother) who is born after partition.

4. The wealth of a man who dies without male issue goes to his wife;

5. On failure of her, to his daughter;

6. On failure of her, to his father;

7. On failure of him, to his mother;

8. On failure of her, to his brother;

9. On failure of him, to his brother's son;

10. On failure of him, to the relations called Bandhu;

11. On failure of them, to the relations called Sakulya;

12. On failure of them, to a fellow-student;

13. On failure of him, it goes to the king, with the exception of a Brāhmaṇa's property.

14. The property of a Brāhmaṇa goes to (other) Brāhmaṇas.

8. 'On failure of brothers the sister inherits.' (Nand.)

9. 'On failure of a brother's son the sister's son inherits.' (Nand.)

10. Bandhu means Sapinda (allied by funeral oblations). The inheritance goes first to the Sapindas on the father's side in the following order: (the brother's son), the brother's grandson, the grandfather, his son, grandson, and great-grandson, the great-grandfather, his son, grandson, and great-grandson. Then follow the mother's Sapindas in the same order. (Nand.)

11. Sakulya means distant kinsmen, beginning with the fifth in descent and ascent. On failure of such, the inheritance goes to the spiritual teacher; on failure of him, to a pupil of the deceased, as ordained by Āpastamba (II, 6, 14, 3); and on failure of him, to a fellow-student, as stated in Sūtra 12. (Nand.)
15. The wealth of a (deceased) hermit shall be taken by his spiritual teacher;

16. Or his pupil (may take it).

17. But let a reunited coparcener take the share of his reunited coparcener who has died (without issue), and a uterine brother that of his uterine brother, and let them give (the shares of their deceased coparceners and uterine brothers) to the sons of the latter.

18. What has been given to a woman by her father, mother, sons, or brothers, what she has received before the sacrificial fire (at the marriage ceremony), what she receives on supersession, what has been given to her by her relatives, her fee (Sulka), and a gift subsequent, are called 'woman's property' (Strîdhana).

19. If a woman married according to (one of the first) four rites, beginning with the Brâhma rite, dies without issue, that (Strîdhana) belongs to her husband.

20. (If she has been married) according to (one of) the other (four reprehensible rites), her father shall take it.

18. 'Sulka, "fee," denotes the price or value of a house or other valuable object presented to the bride by her father; or it means the fee paid for her by the bridegroom.' (Nand.) The latter interpretation is evidently the correct one. The bride's 'fee' (see Gaut. XXVIII, 25), from being originally the price due to the parents or guardian of the bride for surrendering her to the bridegroom, became in after times a wedding present, which the bride received from the bridegroom either directly or through her parents. This is the only way to account for the Sulka being enumerated among the constituent parts of Strîdhana in this place. See also I. D. Mayne, Hindu Law and Usage, §§ 77, 566; Mayr, Indisches Erbrecht, 170 seq.; Jolly, Stellung der Frauen, 23, note.

19, 20. See XXIV, 17-27.
21. If she dies leaving children, her wealth goes in every case to her daughter.

22. Ornaments worn by women when their husbands were alive, the heirs shall not divide among themselves; if they divide them, they become outcasts.

23. (Coparceners) descended from different fathers must adjust their shares according to the fathers. Let each take the wealth due to his father, no other (has a right to it).

XVIII.

1. If there are four sons of a Brāhmaṇa (springing from four different wives) of the four castes, they shall divide the whole estate of their father into ten parts.

2. Of these, let the son of the Brāhmaṇa wife take four parts;

3. The son of the Kṣhariya wife, three parts;

4. The son of the Vaiśya wife, two parts;

5. The son of the Śūdra wife, a single part.

22. My rendering of this Sloka is based upon Kullūka’s interpretation of the identical passage of Manu (IX, 200), which is supported by Vignāneshvara (Mitāksharā I, 4, 19 in Colebrooke’s version), Mādhava (Burnell, Dāya-Vibhāga 51), Varadarāga (Burnell, Varadarāga’s Vyavahāranirnaya 49), and others. Nand proposes a different interpretation, on which rests Dr. Bühler’s rendering, ‘Those ornaments, which the wives usually wear, should not be divided by the heirs whilst the husbands are alive.’

6. Again, if there are three sons of a Brāhmaṇa (by wives of different castes), but no son by a Sūdra (wife) among them, they shall divide the estate into nine parts.

7. (Of these) let them take, each in the order of his caste, shares amounting to four, three, and two parts of the whole respectively.

8. (If there are three sons by wives of different castes, but) no Vaisya among them, they shall divide the estate into eight parts, and take four parts, three parts, and one part respectively.

9. (If there are three sons, but) no Kshatriya among them, they shall divide it into seven parts, and take four parts, two parts, and a single part respectively.

10. If there is no Brāhmaṇa among them, they shall divide it into six parts, and take three parts, two parts, and a single part respectively.

11. If there are sons of a Kshatriya by a Kshatriya, a Vaisya, and a Sūdra wife, the mode of division shall be the same (i.e. the estate shall be divided into six parts, &c.)

12. Again, if there are two sons of a Brāhmaṇa, the one belonging to the Brāhmaṇa and the other to the Kshatriya caste, they shall divide the estate into seven parts; and of these the Brāhmaṇa son shall take four parts;

13. The Kshatriya son, three parts.

14. Again, if there are two sons of a Brāhmaṇa, and the one belongs to the Brāhmaṇa and the other to the Vaisya caste, the estate shall be divided into six parts; and of these, the Brāhmaṇa shall take four parts;

15. The Vaisya, two parts.
16. Again, if there are two sons of a Brâhmaṇa, and the one belongs to the Brâhmaṇa and the other to the Sūdra caste, they shall divide the estate into five parts;
17. And of these, the Brâhmaṇa shall take four parts;
18. The Sūdra, a single part.
19. Again, if there are two sons of a Brâhmaṇa or a Kshatriya, and the one belongs to the Kshatriya and the other to the Sūdra caste, they shall divide the estate into five parts;
20. And of these, the Kshatriya shall take three parts;
21. The Sūdra, one part.
22. Again, if there are two sons of a Brâhmaṇa or a Kshatriya, and the one belongs to the Kshatriya, the other to the Sūdra caste, they shall divide the estate into four parts;
23. And of these, the Kshatriya shall take three parts;
24. The Sūdra, a single part.
25. Again, if there are two sons of a Brâhmaṇa or a Vaisya or a Sūdra, and the one belongs to the Vaisya, the other to the Sūdra caste, they shall divide the estate into three parts;
26. And of these, the Vaisya shall take two parts;
27. The Sūdra, a single part.
28. If a Brâhmaṇa has an only son, he shall take the whole estate, provided he be a Brâhmaṇa, Kshatriya, or Vaisya.
29. If a Kshatriya has (an only son who is) either a Kshatriya or a Vaisya, (the rule shall be the same.)
30. If a Vaisya has (an only son who is) a Vaisya, (the rule shall also be the same);

31. (And so shall the only) son of a Sūdra (be sole heir) to his Sūdra (father).

32. A Sūdra, who is the only son of a father belonging to a twice-born caste, shall inherit one half of his property;

33. The other half shall devolve in the same way as the property of one who died without leaving issue.

34. Mothers shall receive shares proportionate to their sons' shares;

35. And so shall unmarried daughters.

36. Sons, who are equal in caste (to their father), shall receive equal shares.

37. A best part (the twentieth part of the inheritance, &c.) shall be given to the eldest, as his additional share.

38. If there are two sons by a Brāhmaṇa wife, and one son by a Sūdra wife, the estate shall be divided into nine parts; and of these, the two sons of the Brāhmaṇa wife shall take two parts, the one son of the Sūdra wife, a single part.

39. If there are two sons by a Sūdra, and one son by a Brāhmaṇa wife, the estate shall be divided into six parts; and of these, the son of the Brāhmaṇa wife shall take four parts, and the two sons of the Sūdra wife together shall take two parts.

40. Upon the same principles the shares have to be adjusted in other cases also.

33. See XVII, 4 seq.

34. 'That is to say, a Brāhmaṇa wife shall take four parts, a Kshatriya wife, three parts,' &c. (Nand.)

37. See Gaut. XXVIII, 5.
41. If (brothers), who after a previous division of the estate live again together as parcellers, should make a second partition, the shares must be equal in that case, and the eldest has no right to an additional share.

42. What a brother has acquired by his own efforts, without using the patrimony, he must not give up (to his brothers or other co-heirs), unless by his own free will; for it was gained by his own exertion.

43. And if a man recovers (a debt or other property), which could not before be recovered by his father, he shall not, unless by his own free will, divide it with his sons; for it is an acquisition made by himself.

44. Apparel, vehicles (carriages or riding-horses), and ornaments (such as are usually worn according to the custom of the caste), prepared food, water (in a well or pool), females (slaves or mistresses of the deceased), property destined for pious uses or sacrifices, a common pasture-ground, and a book, are indivisible.

42. The term svayamśhitalabdham has been translated according to Kullūka (on M. IX, 208). Nand. interprets this Sloka thus, 'What a brother has acquired by his own efforts, and what has been given to him, at his desire (by friends or others), he must not give up,' &c.

43. Here again I have followed Kullūka (on M. IX, 209), and deviated from Nand.'s interpretation, who renders this Sloka as follows, 'If a man recovers property, &c., or if he gains property by himself (by his learning or valour, &c.) ...'

44. "The term pattra has been rendered above in accordance with the first interpretation proposed by Nand., and with Kullūka's interpretation (on M. IX, 219). Vīgāññesvara (in his comment upon the same passage of Manu) refers it to written documents, such especially as relate to a debt to be paid to the deceased; and
XIX.

1. He must not cause a member of a twice-born caste to be carried out by a Sūdra (even though he be a kinsman of the deceased);

2. Nor a Sūdra by a member of a twice-born caste.

3. A father and a mother shall be carried out by their sons (who are equal in caste to their parents).

4. But Sūdras must never carry out a member of a twice-born caste, even though he be their father.

5. Those Brāhmaṇas who carry out (or follow the corpse of) a (deceased) Brāhmaṇa who has no relatives shall attain a mansion in heaven.

6. Those who have carried out a dead relative and burnt his corpse, shall walk round the pile from left to right, and then plunge into water, dressed in their clothes.

7. After having offered a libation of water to the deceased, they must place one ball of rice on blades of Kusa grass, (and this ceremony has to be repeated on each subsequent day, while the period of impurity lasts.)

8. Then, having changed their dress, they must

this interpretation is mentioned by Nand. also. But there is no reason why an unliquidated demand should not be divided; and written documents are only twice referred to in the code of Manu (VIII, 168, and IX, 232).—In translating the term prākāra I have again followed Kullūka loc. cit.; see also Petersburg Dictionary s. v. Nand. interprets this term as denoting ‘a path leading to or from the house.’

bite Nimba leaves between their teeth, and having stepped upon the stone threshold, they must enter the house.

9. Then they must throw unbroken grains into the fire.

10. On the fourth day they must collect the bones that have been left.

11. And they must throw them into water from the Ganges.

12. As many bones of a man are contained in the water of the Ganges, so many thousands of years will he reside in heaven.

13. While the term of impurity lasts, they must continually offer a libation of water and a ball of rice to the deceased.

14. And they must eat food which has been bought, or which they have received unsolicited.

15. And they must eat no meat.

16. And they must sleep on the ground.

17. And they must sleep apart.

18. When the impurity is over, they must walk forth from the village, have their beards shaved, and having cleansed themselves with a paste of sesamum, or with a paste of mustard-seed, they must change their dress and re-enter the house.

19. There, after reciting a propitiatory prayer, they must honour the Brāhmanas.

13. The duration of the impurity varies according to the caste &c. of the deceased. See XXII.

14. The particle ka, according to Nand., indicates that factitious salt must also not be used by them, as stated in a Smrīti.

15. Nand. refers the particle ka to an implied prohibition to eat fish, which he quotes from a text of Gautama (not found in his Institutes).
20. The gods are invisible deities, the Brâhmanas are visible deities.

21. The Brâhmanas sustain the world.

22. It is by the favour of the Brâhmanas that the gods reside in heaven; a speech uttered by Brâhmanas (whether a curse or a benediction) never fails to come true.

23. What the Brâhmanas pronounce, when highly pleased (as, if they promise sons, cattle, wealth, or some other boon to a man), the gods will ratify; when the visible gods are pleased, the invisible gods are surely pleased as well.

24. The mourners, who lament the loss of a relative, shall be addressed by men gifted with a tranquil frame of mind with such consolatory speeches as I shall now recite to thee, O Earth, who art cherished to my mind.

XX.

1. The northern progress of the sun is a day with the gods.

2. The southern progress of the sun is (with them) a night.

3. A year is (with them) a day and a night;

4. Thirty such are a month;

5. Twelve such months are a year.

6. Twelve hundred years of the gods are a Kaliyuga.


6. The Kaliyuga itself consists of a thousand years only; but it is both preceded and followed by a twilight lasting a hundred years. It is similar with the three other Yugas. (Nand.)
7. Twice as many (or two thousand four hundred) are a Dvâpara (Yuga).
8. Thrice as many (or three thousand six hundred) are a Tretâ (Yuga).
9. Four times as many (or four thousand eight hundred) are a Krîta Yuga.
10. (Thus) twelve thousand years make a Katuryuga (or period of four Yugas).
11. Seventy-one Katuryugas make a Manvantara (or period of a Manu).
12. A thousand Katuryugas make a Kalpa.
13. And that is a day of the forefather (Brahman).
14. His night also has an equal duration.
15. If so many such nights and days are put together that, reckoned by the month and by the year, they make up a period of a hundred years (of Brahman) it is called the age of one Brahman.
16. A day of Purusha (Vishnu) is equal in duration to the age of one Brahman.
17. When it ends, a Mahâkalpa is over.
18. The night following upon it is as long.
19. The days and nights of Purusha that have gone by are innumerable;
20. And so are those that will follow.
21. For Kâla (time) is without either beginning or end.
22. Thus it is, that in this Kâla (time), in whom there is nothing to rest upon, and who is everlasting, I can espy nothing created in which there is the least stability.
23. The sands in the Ganges and (the waters pouring down from the sky) when Indra sends rain

21. 'Kâla means Vishnu in this place.' (Nand.)
can be counted, but not the number of 'Forefathers' (Brahmans) who have passed away.

24. In each Kalpa, fourteen chiefs of the gods (Indras) go to destruction, as many rulers of the world (kings), and fourteen Manus.

25. And so have many thousands of Indras and hundred thousands of princes of the Daityas (such as Hiranyakaśipu, Hiranyāksha, and others) been destroyed by Kāla (time). What should one say of human beings then?

26. Many royal Rishis too (such as Sagara), all of them renowned for their virtues, gods and Brahmans, Rishis (such as Kasyapas) have perished by the action of Kāla.

27. Those even who have the power of creating and annihilating in this world (the sun, moon, and other heavenly bodies) continually perish by the act of Kāla; for Kāla (time) is hard to overcome.

28. Every creature is seized upon by Kāla and carried into the other world. It is the slave of its actions (in a former existence). Wherefore then should you wail (on its death)?

29. Those who are born are sure to die, and those who have died are sure to be born again. This is inevitable, and no associate can follow a man (in his passage through mundane existence).

30. As mourners will not help the dead in this world, therefore (the relatives) should not weep, but perform the obsequies to the best of their power.

31. As both his good and bad actions will follow

---

27. Here also Kāla, the god of time, is another name for Vishnu. (Nand.)

29. The same proverb occurs in the Rāmāyana II, 84, 21, and in the Bhagavadgītā II, 27. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 2383.
him (after death) like associates, what does it matter to a man whether his relatives mourn over him or no?

32. But as long as his relatives remain impure, the departed spirit finds no rest, and returns to visit (his relatives), whose duty it is to offer up to him the funeral ball of rice and the water libation.

33. Till the Sapindâkarana¹ has been performed, the dead man remains a disembodied spirit (and is afflicted with hunger and thirst). Give rice and a jar with water to the man who has passed into the abode of disembodied spirits.

34. Having passed into the abode of the manes (after the performance of the Sapindâkarana) he enjoys in the shape of celestial food his portion of the Srâddha (funeral oblation); offer the Srâddha, therefore, to him who has passed into the abode of the manes.

35. Whether he has become a god, or stays in hell, or has entered the body of an animal, or of a human being, he will receive the Srâddha offered to him by his relatives.

36. The dead person and the performer of the Srâddha are sure to be benefitted by its performance. Perform the Srâddha always, therefore, abandoning bootless grief.

37. This is the duty which should be constantly discharged towards a dead person by his kinsmen; by mourning a man will neither benefit the dead nor himself.

38. Having seen that no help is to be had from this world, and that his relations are dying (one after

---

¹ See XXI, 12.
the other), you must choose virtue for your only associate, O ye men.

39. Even were he to die with him, a kinsman is unable to follow his dead relative: all excepting his wife are forbidden to follow him on the path of Yama.

40. Virtue alone will follow him, wherever he may go; therefore do your duty unflinchingly in this wretched world.

41. To-morrow's business should be done to-day, and the afternoon's business in the forenoon; for death will not wait, whether a person has done it or not.

42. While his mind is fixed upon his field, or traffic, or his house, or while his thoughts are engrossed by some other (beloved) object, death suddenly carries him away as his prey, as a she-wolf catches a lamb.

43. Kâla (time) is no one's friend and no one's enemy: when the effect of his acts in a former existence, by which his present existence is caused, has expired, he snatches a man away forcibly.

44. He will not die before his time has come, even though he has been pierced by a thousand shafts; he will not live after his time is out, even though he has only been touched by the point of a blade of Kusa grass.

45. Neither drugs, nor magical formulas, nor

39. This is an allusion to the custom of Sattee. (Nand.) See XXV, 14.

41. This proverb is found in the Mahâbhârata also (XII, 6536, &c.) See Böhlinigk, Ind. Sprüche, 6595.

43. This proverb is also found in the Mahâbhârata XI, 68, and Râmâyana IV, 18, 28, and other works. See Böhlingk, 3194.

45. 'Neither will presents of gold (to Brâhmanas) or other such
burnt-offerings, nor prayers will save a man who is in the bonds of death or old age.

46. An impending evil cannot be averted even by a hundred precautions; what reason then for you to complain?

47. Even as a calf finds his mother among a thousand cows, an act formerly done is sure to find the perpetrator.

48. Of existing beings the beginning is unknown, the middle (of their career) is known, and the end again unknown; what reason then for you to complain?

49. As the body of mortals undergoes (successively the vicissitudes of) infancy, youth, and old age, even so will it be transformed into another body (hereafter); a sensible man is not mistaken about that.

50. As a man puts on new clothes in this world, throwing aside those which he formerly wore, even so the self of man puts on new bodies, which are in accordance with his acts (in a former life).

51. No weapons will hurt the self of man, no fire burn it, no waters moisten it, and no wind dry it up.

52. It is not to be hurt, not to be burnt, not to be moistened, and not to be dried up; it is imperishable, perpetual, unchanging, immovable, without beginning.

acts of liberality save him, as the use of the particle &a implies.' (Nand.)

47. This proverb is also found in the Mahâbhârata XII, 6760, Paññâtantra II, 134, and other works. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 5114.

48. This proverb is also found in the Bhagavadgîtâ II, 28. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 704.

50. Regarding transmigration, see below, XLIV, XLV.
53. It is (further) said to be immaterial, passing all thought, and immutable. Knowing the self of man to be such, you must not grieve (for the destruction of his body).

XXI.

1. Now then, (on the day) after the impurity is over, let him bathe duly (during the recitation of Mantras), wash his hands and feet duly, and sip water duly, (and having invited some Brāhmaṇas), as many as possible, who must cleanse themselves in the same way and turn their faces towards the north, let him bestow presents of perfumes, garlands, clothes and other things (a lamp, frankincense, and the like) upon them, and hospitably entertain them.

2. At the Ekoddhāra (or Srāddha for one recently deceased) let him alter the Mantras so as to refer to (the) one person (deceased).

XXI. 1–11. Âśv. IV, 7; Pâr. III, 10, 48–53; Sâṅkh. IV, 2; M. III, 247; Y. III, 250, 251, 255. — 12–23. Sâṅkh. IV, 3; V, 9; Y. I, 252–254. Regarding the parallel passages of the Kâśyapa Gṛhya-sūtra, see the Introduction.

1. Having said, in the previous Chapter (XX, 30), that “the obsequies should be performed,” he now goes on to describe that part of the obsequies which has not yet been expounded, viz. the “first Srāddha.” (Nand.)

2. The Mantras here referred to are those contained in the description of the Pârvana and other ordinary Srāddhas in Chapter LXXXIII. Thus, the Mantra, ‘This is your (share), ye manes’ (LXXXIII, 12, 13), has to be altered into, ‘This is thy (share), father;’ and so on. Devapāla, in his Commentary on the Kâśyapa Gṛhya-sūtra, gives an accurate statement of all the modifications which the ordinary Mantras have to undergo at the Ekoddhāra.—Nand. states that not only the Mantras, but the whole ritual should be modified. The nature of the latter modifications is stated by Yāg-ñāvalkya loc. cit. and by Sâṅkhâyana loc. cit.
3. Close to the food left (by the Brāhmaṇas) let him offer a ball of rice, at the same time calling out his name and (that of) his race.

4. The Brāhmaṇas having taken food and having been honoured with a gift, let him offer, as imperishable food, water to the Brāhmaṇas, after having called out the name and Gotra of the deceased; and let him dig three trenches, each four Āṅgulas in breadth, their distance from one another and their depth also measuring (four Āṅgulas), and their length amounting to one Vitasti (or twelve Āṅgulas).

5. Close by the trenches let him light three fires, and having added fuel to them, let him make three oblations (of boiled rice) in each (fire, saying),

6. 'Svadhā and reverence to Soma, accompanied by the manes.

7. 'Svadhā and reverence to Agni, who conveys the oblations addressed to the manes.

8. 'Svadhā and reverence to Yama Āṅgiras.'

9. Then let him offer balls of rice as (ordained) before (in Sūtra 3) on the three mounds of earth (adjacent to the three trenches).

10. After having filled the three trenches with

3. This must be done with the Mantra, 'This is for you.' (Nand.) Regarding this Mantra, see note on Sūtra 10.

4. The 'imperishable water,' akshayyodakam, derives its name from the Mantra, with which it is delivered, expressing the wish that the meal 'may give imperishable satisfaction' (akshayyam astu). This is the explanation which Nand. gives of the term akshayyodakam in his gloss on LXXXIII, 27. In his comment on the present Sūtra he says that the 'imperishable water' must be presented with the (further?) Mantras, 'Let arrive' and 'Be satisfied.' See Y. I, 251; Sāṅkh. IV, 2, 5, 6.

10. The whole Mantra runs as follows, 'This is for you, father,
rice, sour milk, clarified butter, honey, and meat, let him mutter (the Mantra), ‘This is for you.’

11. This ceremony he must repeat monthly, on the day of his death.

12. At the close of the year let him give food to the Brāhmaṇas, after having fed the gods first, in honour of the deceased and of his father, grandfather, and great-grandfather.

13. At (the Ekoddhīa belonging to) this ceremony let him perform the burnt-offering, the invitation, and (the offering of) water for washing the feet.

14. Then he must pour the water for washing the feet and the Arghya (water libation) destined for the deceased person into the three vessels containing the water for washing the feet, and the three other vessels containing the Arghya of his three ancestors. At the same time he must mutter and for those after you.’ But in the present case (at a ‘first Śrāddha’) the name of the deceased has to be substituted for the word ‘father.’ (Nand.) Although Nand. quotes this Mantra from Āśvalāyana’s Śrauta-sūtra, it seems probable that the author of the Vishnu-sūtra took it from the Kāthaka (IX, 6 of the Berlin MS.)

11. The Sūtras following next refer to the Sapindikarana or ‘ceremony of investing a dead person with the rights of a Sapinda.’

12. ‘He must invite six Brāhmaṇas altogether, four as representatives of the deceased person and of his three ancestors, two for the offering to be addressed to the Viśvedevās. The Brāhmaṇa, who represents the deceased person, must be fed according to the rule of the Ekoddhīa, and the three Brāhmaṇas, who represent the three ancestors, must be fed according to the rule of the Pārvana Śrāddha, as laid down in Chapter LXXXIII.’ (Nand.)

13. The import of this Sūtra is, that those three ceremonies must not be omitted in the present case, as is otherwise the case at an Ekoddhīa. (Nand.)

14. ‘The following is a translation of the whole of this Mantra,
(the two Mantras), 'May earth unite thee', and 'United your minds.'

15. Near the leavings he must make (and put) four balls of rice.

16. Let him show out the Brähmanas, after they have sipped water duly and have been presented by him with their sacrificial fee.

17. Then let him knead together the ball of the deceased person with the three balls (of the three ancestors), as (he has mixed up) his water for washing the feet and his Arghya (with theirs).

18. Let him do the same (with the balls placed) near the three trenches.

19. Or (see Sûtra 12) the Sapinda-karana must be performed on the thirteenth, after the monthly Srâddha has been performed on the twelfth day.

20. For Sûdras it should be performed on the twelfth day, without Mantras.

21. If there be an intercalary month in that year, he must add one day to the (regular days of the) monthly Srâddha.

22. The ceremony of investing women with the relationship of Sapinda has to be performed in the same manner. Later, he must perform a Srâddha every year, while he lives, (on the anniversary of the deceased relative's death).

which is quoted at full in the Kâthaka Grîhya-sûtra, 'May Pri-thivi (the earth), Vâyu (air), Agni (fire), and Pragâpati (the lord of creatures) unite thee with thy ancestors, and may you ancestors unite with him.' Regarding the particular ancestors implied here, see below, LXXV. — ² Rig-veda X, 191, 4.

19. ¹ I.e. on that day on which the period of impurity expires. (Nand.)

22. ¹ The meaning is, that he must give him food and water, as prescribed in 23. (Nand.)
23. He, for whom the ceremony of investing him with the relationship of Sapinda is performed after the lapse of a year, shall be honoured by the gift, (on each day) of that year, of food and a jar with water to a Brâhmaṇa.

XXII.

1. The impurity of a Brâhmaṇa caused by the birth or death of Sapindas lasts ten days.
2. In the case of a Kshatriya (it lasts) twelve days.
3. In the case of a Vaisya (it lasts) fifteen days.
4. In the case of a Śudra (it lasts) a month.
5. The relationship of Sapinda ceases with the seventh man (in descent or ascent).
6. During the period of impurity oblations (to the Visvedevās), gifts and receiving of alms, and study have to be interrupted.

7. No one must eat the food of one impure (unless he be a Sāparνa of his).

8. He who eats but once the food of Brāhmaṇas or others, while they are impure, will remain impure as long as they.

9. When the (period of) impurity is over, he must perform a penance (as follows):

10. If a twice-born man has eaten (the food) of a member of his own caste, while the latter was impure, he must approach a river and plunge into it, mutter the (hymn of) Aghamarāṣṭha ¹ three times, and, after having emerged from the water, must mutter the Gāyatrī ² one thousand and eight times.

11. If a Brāhmaṇa has eaten the food of a Kṣatriya, while the latter was impure, he is purified by performing the same penance and by fasting (on the previous day).

12. (The same penance is ordained for) a Kṣatriya who has eaten the food of a Vaiśya, while the latter was impure.

13. (The same penance is ordained for) a Brāhmaṇa (who has eaten the food) of an impure Vaiśya; but he must fast besides during the three (previous) days.

14. If a Kṣatriya or a Vaiśya (have eaten the food) of a Brāhmaṇa or a Kṣatriya respectively, who were impure, they must approach a river and mutter the Gāyatrī five hundred times.

15. A Vaiśya, who has eaten the food of a Brāhmaṇa, while the latter was impure, must (go to a river and) mutter the Gāyatrī one hundred and eight times.

¹ Rig-veda X, 190. — ² Rig-veda III, 62, 10.
16. A twice-born man (who has eaten the food) of a Sūdra, while the latter was impure, must (go to a river and) perform the Prāgāpatya (penance).

17. A Sūdra (who has eaten the food) of an impure man of a twice-born caste must bathe (in a river).

18. A Sūdra (who has eaten the food) of another Sūdra, while the latter was impure, must bathe (in a river) and drink Pañkagavya.

19. Wives and slaves in the direct order of the castes (i.e. who do not belong to a higher caste than their lord) remain impure as long as their lord.

20. If their lord is dead (or if they live apart from him, they remain impure) as long as (members of) their own caste.

21. If Sapindas of a higher caste (are born or have died) the period of impurity has for their lower caste relations the same duration as for members of the higher caste.

22. A Brāhmaṇa (to whom) Sapindas of the Kshatriya, Vaisya, or Sūdra castes (have been born or have died) becomes pure within six nights, or three nights, or one night, respectively.

23. A Kshatriya (to whom Sapindas of the) Vaisya or Sūdra castes (have been born or have died) is purified within six and three nights, respectively.

24. A Vaisya (to whom Sapindas of the) Sūdra caste (have been born or have died) becomes pure within six nights.

16. Regarding the Prāgāpatya penance, see below, XLVI, 10.

18. The Pañkagavya, or five productions of a cow, consist of milk, sour milk, butter, urine, and cow-dung.
25. In a number of nights equal to the number of months after conception, a woman is purified from an abortion.

26. The relatives of children that have died immediately after birth (before the cutting of the navel-string), and of still-born children, are purified at once.

27. (The relatives) of a child that has died before having teethed (are also purified) at once.

28. For him no ceremony with fire is performed, nor offering of water.

29. For a child that has teethed but has not yet been shorn, purity is obtained in one day and night;

30. For a child that has been shorn but not initiated, in three nights;

31. From that time forward (i.e. for initiated persons) in the time that has been mentioned above (in Śūtra 1 seq.)

32. In regard to women, the marriage ceremony is (considered as their) initiation.

33. For married women there is no impurity for the relatives on the father's side.

34. If they happen to stay at their father's house during childbirth or if they die there, (their distant relatives are purified) in one night, and their parents (in three nights).

35. If, while the impurity caused by a birth lasts,

26. 'The meaning is, that the relatives of such children do not become impure.' (Nand.)

28. 'The meaning is, that he must not be burnt.' (Nand.)

32. The import of this Śūtra is this, that the full period of impurity is ordained on the death of women also, in case they were married, as the marriage ceremony takes with them the place of the initiation of males.
another impurity caused by childbirth intervenes, it ends when the former impurity terminates.

36. If it intervenes when one night (only of the period of impurity remains, the fresh impurity terminates) two days later.

37. If it intervenes when one watch (only of the last night remains, the impurity ends) three days later.

38. The same rule is observed if a relative dies during a period of impurity caused by the death (of another relative).

39. If a man, while staying in another country, hears of the birth or death (of a relative), he becomes purified after the lapse of the period still wanting (to the ten days).

40. If the period of impurity, but not a whole year, has elapsed, (he is purified in one night.)

41. After that time (he is purified) by a bath.

42. If his teacher or maternal grandfather has died, (he is purified) in three nights.

43. Likewise, if sons other than a son of the body have been born or have died, and if wives who had another husband before have been delivered of a child or have died.

40. 'Although the general term impurity is used in this Sūtra, it refers to impurity caused by a death only.' (Nand.)

42. 'The use of the particle ḫa implies, that this rule extends to the death of a maternal grandmother, as ordained in the Shadāsitismṛiti.' (Nand.)

43. The twelve kinds of sons have been enumerated above, XV, 2–27. Of these, the three species of adopted sons, the son bought, and the son cast off cannot cause impurity, because their sonship dates from a period subsequent to their birth; but their offspring may cause impurity. (Nand.) Parapūrvās, or 'wives who had another husband before,' are either of the punarbhū or of the svairinī kind. (Nand.) See XV, 8, 9, and Nārada XII, 46–54.
44. (He becomes pure) in one day, if the wife or son of his teacher, or his Upádhyâya (sub-teacher ¹), or his maternal uncle, or his father-in-law, or a brother-in-law, or a fellow-student, or a pupil has died.

45. The impurity has the same duration (as in the cases last mentioned), if the king of that country in which he lives has died.

46. Likewise, if a man not his Sapinda has died at his house.

47. The relatives of those who have been killed by (falling from) a precipice, or by fire, or (have killed themselves by) fasting, or (have been killed by) water, in battle, by lightning, or by the king (on account of a crime committed by them), do not become impure;

48. Nor do kings (become impure) while engaged in the discharge of their duties (such as the protection of their subjects, the trial of lawsuits, &c.)

49. Devotees fulfilling a vow (also do not become impure);

50. Nor do sacrificers engaged in a sacrificial ceremony;

51. Nor workmen (such as carpenters or others) while engaged in their work;

52. Nor those who perform the king’s orders, if the king wishes them to be pure.

53. Nor (can impurity arise) during the installation of the monument of a deity, nor during

---

¹ See XXIX, 2.

49. The term vratin, ‘a devotee fulfilling a vow,’ may be referred to students as well, who, however, become impure by the death of their parents. (Nand.)

53. A marriage ceremony is said to have actually begun when the Nândimukha, or Srâddha preliminary to marriage, has taken place. (Nand.)
a marriage ceremony, if those ceremonies have actually begun;

54. Nor when the whole country is afflicted with a calamity;

55. Nor in times of great public distress (such as an epidemic or a famine).

56. Suicides and outcasts do not cause impurity or receive offerings of water.

57. On the death-day of an outcast a female slave of his must upset a pot with water with her feet, (saying, 'Drink thou this."

58. He who cuts the rope by which (a suicide) has hung himself, becomes pure by performing the Taptakriktha ('hot penance').

59. So does he who has been (in any way) concerned with the funeral of a suicide;

60. And he who sheds tears for such.

61. He who sheds tears for any deceased person together with the relations of the latter (becomes pure) by a bath.

62. If he has done so, before the bones (of the deceased) had been collected, (he becomes pure) by bathing with his apparel.

63. If a member of a twice-born caste has followed the corpse of a dead Sûdra, he must go to a river, and having plunged into it, mutter the Aghamarshana three times, and then, after having emerged from it, mutter the Gâyatrim one thousand and eight times.

64. (If he has followed) the corpse of a dead member of a twice-born caste, (the same expiation

55. Giving or taking alms does not effect impurity in such cases. (Nand.)
is ordained, but he must mutter the Gāyatrī one hundred and eight times only.

65. If a Sūdra has followed the corpse of a member of a twice-born caste, he must bathe.

66. Members of any caste, who have come near to the smoke of a funeral pile, must bathe.

67. (Bathing is also ordained) after sexual intercourse, bad dreams (of having been mounted upon an ass, or the like), when blood has issued from the throat, and after having vomited or been purged;

68. Also, after tonsure of the head;

69. And after having touched one who has touched a corpse (a carrier of a corpse), or a woman in her courses, or a Kāndāla (or other low-caste persons, such as Svapakas), or a sacrificial post;

70. And (after having touched) the corpse of a five-toed animal, except of those kinds that may be eaten, or their bones still moist with fat.

71. In all such ablutions he must not wear his (defiled) apparel without having washed it before.

72. A woman in her courses becomes pure after four days by bathing.

73. A woman in her courses having touched another woman in her courses, who belongs to a lower caste than she does, must not eat again till she is purified.

74. If she has (unawares) touched a woman of her own caste, or of a higher caste than her own, she becomes pure at once, after having taken a bath.

75. Having sneezed, having slept, having eaten,

---

70. *See LI, 6.*

75. Nand. argues from a passage of Yāgñavalkya (I, 196) and from texts of Āpastamba (not found in his Dharma-sūtra) and of Praētas, that the particle ka refers to repeated sipping of water.
going to eat or to study, having drunk (water), having bathed, having spat, having put on his garment, having walked on the high road, having discharged urine or voided excrements, and having touched the bones no longer moist with fat of a five-toed animal, he must sip water;

76. Likewise, if he has talked to a Kândâla or to a Mlekha (barbarian).

77. If the lower part of his body, below the navel, or one of his fore-arms, has been defiled by one of the impure excretions of the body, or by one of the spirituous liquors or of the intoxicating drinks (hereafter mentioned), he is purified by cleansing the limb in question with earth and water.

78. If another part of his body (above the navel) has been defiled, (he becomes pure by cleansing it) with earth and water, and by bathing.

79. If his mouth has been defiled (he becomes pure) by fasting, bathing, and drinking Pañkagavya;

80. Likewise, if his lip has been defiled.

81. Adeps, semen, blood, dandruff, urine, sâces, ear-wax, nail-parings, phlegm, tears, rheum, and sweat are the twelve impure excretions of the body.

82. Distilled from sugar, or from the blossoms of the Madhûka (Mâdhvi wine), or from flour: these three kinds of spirituous liquor have to be discerned; as one, so are all: none of them must be tasted by the twice-born.

83. Again, distilled from the blossoms of the

---

76. Regarding the meaning of Mlekha, see LXXXIV, 4.
82, 83. ¹ How the Mâdhvi, Mâdhûka, and Mâdhvika wines differ from one another, does not become clear. Nand. explains the term Mâdhûka as denoting an extract from Madhûka blossoms (bassia latifolia), and Mâdhvi and Mâdhvika as two different preparations from Madhu. Now Madhu might be rendered by 'honey';
Madhûka tree (Mâdhûka wine), from molasses, from the fruits of the Taṅka (or Kapittha tree), of the jujube tree, of the Khargûra tree, or of the breadfruit tree, from wine-grapes, from Madhûka blossoms (Mâdhvîka wine), Maireya, and the sap of the coconut tree:

84. These ten intoxicating drinks are unclean for a Brâhmaṇa; but a Kshatriya and a Vaisya commit no wrong in touching (or drinking) them.

85. A pupil having performed (on failure of other mourners) the funeral of his dead Guru, becomes pure after ten nights, like those (kinsmen) who carry out the dead.

86. A student does not infringe the rules of his order by carrying out, when dead, his teacher, or his sub-teacher, or his father, or his mother, or his Guru.

87. A student must not offer a libation of water to a deceased relative (excepting his parents) till the term of his studentship has expired; but if, after its expiration, he offers a libation of water, he becomes pure after three nights.

88. Sacred knowledge (see 92), religious austerities (see 90), fire (see XXIII, 33), holy food (Pañkagavya), earth (see 91), the mind, water (see 91), smearing (with cow-dung and the like, see XXIII, 56), air (see XXIII, 41), (the morning and evening prayers and other) religious acts, the sun

but Kullûka, in his comment on the term Mâdhvî (M. XI, 95), states expressly that it means 'Madhûka blossom,' and Hârîta (as quoted by Nand.) says that Mâdhûka, Mâdhvî and Mâdhvîka are all preparations from Madhu, i.e. Madhûka blossoms. Maireya, according to the lexicographer Vâkaspati, as quoted by Nand., is an intoxicating drink prepared from the flowers of the grislea tormentosa, mixed with sugar, grain, and water, or, according to the reading of the Sabdakalpadruma (see the Petersburg Dictionary), with sorrel.
(see XXIII, 40), and time (by the lapse of the ten
days of impurity and the like) are purifiers of
animate objects.

89. Of all pure things, pure food is pronounced
the most excellent; for he who eats pure food only,
is truly pure, not he who is only purified with earth
and water.

90. By forgiveness of injuries the learned are
purified; by liberality, those who have done for-
bidden acts; by muttering of prayers, those who
have sinned in secret; by religious austerities, those
who best know the Veda.

91. By water and earth is purified what should
be purified (because it has been defiled); a river is
purified by its current (carrying away all slime and
mud); a woman, whose thoughts have been impure,
by her menses; and the chief among the twice-born
(the Brāhmaṇas), by renouncing the world.

92. Bodies (when defiled) are purified by water;
the mind is purified (from evil thoughts) by truth;
the soul (is purified or freed from worldly vanity) by
sacred learning and austerities; the understanding
(when unable to resolve some doubt), by knowledge.

93. Thus the directions for purifying animate
bodies have been declared to thee; hear now the
rules for cleaning all sorts of inanimate objects.

XXIII.

1. What has been defiled by the impure excre-
tions of the body, by spirits, or by intoxicating
drinks, is impure in the highest degree.

XXIII. 2. Āpast. I, 5, 17, 10; Gaut. I, 29. — 4. Y. I, 185;
[7]
2. All vessels made of iron (or of other metals or of composition metals such as bell-metal and the like), which are impure in the highest degree, become pure by exposure to the fire.

3. Things made of gems or stones or water-shells, (such as conch-shells or mother-of-pearl, become pure) by digging them into the earth for seven days.

4. Things made of horns (of rhinoceroses or other animals), or of teeth (of elephants or other animals), or of bone (of tortoises or other animals, become pure) by planing them.

5. Vessels made of wood or earthenware must be thrown away.

6. Of a garment, which has been defiled in the highest degree, let him cut off that part which, having been washed, is changed in colour.

7. Objects made of gold, silver, water-shells, or gems, when (they are only defiled by leavings of food and the like, and) not smeared (with greasy substances), are cleansed with water.

8. So are stone cups and vessels used at Soma-sacrifices (when not smeared).


7. The defilement in the highest degree having been treated of in the six preceding Sūtras, he now goes on to discuss the various cases of lesser defilement. (Nand.)

8–11. Regarding the shape of the sacrificial implements men-
9. Sacrificial pots, ordinary wooden ladles, and wooden ladles with two collateral excavations (used for pouring clarified butter on a sacrificial fire) are cleansed with hot water (when not smeared).

10. Vessels used for oblations (of butter, fruits, and the like are cleansed) by rubbing them with the hand (with blades of Kusa grass) at the time of the sacrifice.

11. Sword-shaped pieces of wood for stirring the boiled rice, winnowing baskets, implements used for preparing grain, pestles and mortars (are cleansed) by sprinkling water over them.

12. So are beds, vehicles, and seats (when defiled even by the touch of a Sūdra) ¹.

13. Likewise, a large quantity (of anything).

14. Grain, skins (of antelopes, &c.), ropes, woven cloth, (fans and the like) made of bamboo, thread, cotton, and clothes (which have only just come from the manufactory, or which are dyed with saffron and will not admit of washing for that reason, are cleansed in the same way, when there is a large quantity of them);

15. Also, pot-herbs, roots, fruits, and flowers;

16. Likewise, grass, firewood, dry cow-dung (used as fuel), and leaves (of the Madhûka, Palâsa, or other trees).

¹ This Sūtra and the following ones relate to defilement caused by touch. (Nand.)

¹ This Sūtra and the following ones relate to defilement caused by touch. (Nand.)

¹ This Sūtra and the following ones relate to defilement caused by touch. (Nand.)

¹ This Sūtra and the following ones relate to defilement caused by touch. (Nand.)
17. The same (when smeared with excrements and the like, are cleansed) by washing.

18. And so (have the objects mentioned in Sūtra 14, if defiled without being smeared, to be cleansed by washing), when there is only a small quantity of them;

19. Silk and wool, with saline earths;

20. (Blankets or plaids) made of the hair of the mountain-goat, with the fruits of the soap plant;

21. Clothes made of the bark of trees, with Bēl fruit;

22. Linen cloth, with white sesameum;

23. Likewise, things made of horns, bone, or teeth;

24. (Rugs or covers) made of deer’s hair, with lotus-seeds;

25. Vessels of copper, bell-metal, tin, and lead, with acidulated water;

26. Vessels of white copper and iron, with ashes;

27. Wooden articles, by planing;

28. Vessels made of fruits (such as cocoa-nuts, bottle-gourds, and Bēl fruits), by (rubbing them with) cows’ hair.

29. Many things in a heap, by sprinkling water over them;

30. Liquids (such as clarified butter, milk, &c.), by straining them;

17. 'All the objects mentioned in Sūtras 12–16 must be washed, but so as to avoid injuring them, in case they have been defiled by excrements or other such impure substances.' (Nand.)

21. The term amsupatta has been rendered in accordance with Nand.’s interpretation, which agrees with Vignānervāra’s (on Y. I. 186). Kullūka (on M. V. 120; see the Peters burg Dictionary) appears to refer it to two different sorts of clothes.

30–37. These Sūtras relate to defilement caused by insects, &c. (Nand.)
31. Lumps of sugar and other preparations from the sugar-cane, stored up in large quantities (exceeding a Drona) and kept in one's own house, by water and fire;
32. All sorts of salt, in the same manner;
33. Earthen vessels (if smeared with excrements and the like), by a second burning;
34. Images of gods (if smeared), by cleansing them in the same way as the material (of which they are made is generally cleansed), and then installing them anew (in their former place).
35. Of undressed grain let him remove so much only as has been defiled, and the remainder let him pound in a mortar and wash.
36. A quantity of prepared grain not exceeding a Drona is not spoiled by being defiled (by dogs, crows, and other unclean animals).
37. He must throw away thus much of it only as has been defiled, and must sprinkle over the remainder water, into which a piece of gold has been dropped, and over which the Gāyatrī has been pronounced, and must hold it up before a goat (or before a horse) and before the fire.

31. Such as raw sugar, candied sugar, &c.—
32. If there is no large quantity of them, they require to be sprinkled with water only; and if they are kept elsewhere than in the house, as if they are exposed for sale in a fair, they require no purification at all.—
33. They must be encircled with fire, and sprinkled with water afterwards. (Nand.)

32. Nand. mentions as the main species of salt, rock-salt, sea-salt, sochal-salt, and Sāmbhala-salt. The last term refers perhaps to salt coming from the famous salt-lake of Sākambhārī or Shambar in Rāgputana.

37. A quantity less than a Drona having been defiled must be thrown away, as stated by Parāśara.' (Nand.) One Drona = 4 Ādhakas = 1024 Mushās or handfuls. The meaning of Ādhaka,
38. That (food) which has been nibbled by a bird (except a crow or other such birds that must not be eaten or touched), smelt at by a cow, sneezed on, or defiled by (human) hair, or by insects or worms, is purified by earth scattered over it.

39. As long as the scent or moisture, caused by any unclean substance, remains on the defiled object, so long must earth and water be constantly applied in all purifications of inanimate objects.

40. A goat and a horse are pure, as regards their mouths, but not a cow, nor the impure excretions of a man's body; roads are purified by the rays of the moon and of the sun, and by the winds.

41. Mire and water upon the high road, that has been touched by low-caste people, by dogs, or by crows, as well as buildings constructed with burnt bricks, are purified by the wind.

42. For everybody let him (the Ākārya or spiritual guide) carefully direct the performance of purificatory ceremonies, with earth and water, when he has been defiled in the highest degree.

43. Stagnant water, even if a single cow only has quenched her thirst with it, is pure, unless it is quite filled with (hair or other) unclean objects; it is the same with water upon a rock (or upon the top of a mountain).

44. From a well, in which a five-toed animal (whether man or beast, but not one of the five-toed

however, according to Nand.'s observation, varies in different countries. See Colebrooke’s Essays, I, 533 seq.

38. In explanation of the term amedhya, 'unclean substance,' Nand. quotes the following passage of Devala, 'Human bones, a corpse, excrements, semen, urine, the menstrual discharge, adeps, sweat, the rheum of the eyes, phlegm, and spirituous liquors are called unclean substances.'
animals whose flesh may be eaten)\textsuperscript{1} has died, or which has been defiled in the highest degree, he must take out all the waters and dry up the remainder with a cloth.

45. If it is a well constructed with burnt bricks (or stones,) he must light a fire and afterwards throw Pañkagavya into it, when fresh water is coming forth.

46. For small reservoirs of water and for ponds the same mode of purification has been prescribed as for wells, O Earth; but large tanks (excepting Tirthas) are not defiled (by dead animals, &c.)

47. The gods have declared, as peculiar to Brāhmānas, three causes effecting purity: if an (existing) impurity has not been perceived by them; if they sprinkle the object (supposed to be impure) with water; and if they commend it, in doubtful cases, with their speech, (saying, 'This or that shall be pure.')</p>

48. The hand of a (cook or other) artizan, things exposed for sale in a shop (though they may have passed through the hands of many customers), food given to a Brāhmana (by other Brāhmanas, or by Kshatriyas, &c., but not by Sūdras), and all manufactories or mines (of sugar, salt, and the like, but not distilleries of spirituous liquor), are always pure.

49. The mouth of a woman is always pure (for the purpose of a kiss); a bird is pure on the fall of fruit (which he has pecked); a sucking calf (or child), on the flowing of the milk; a dog, on his catching the deer.

50. Flesh of an animal which has been killed by dogs is pronounced pure; and so is that of an

\textsuperscript{1} See LI, 6.
animal slain by other carnivorous creatures (such as tigers) or by huntsmen such as Kāndālas (Svapakas, Kshattrīs, or other low-caste men).

51. The cavities above the navel must be considered as pure; those below it are impure; and so are all excretions that fall from the body.

52. Flies, saliva dropping from the mouth, a shadow, a cow, an elephant, a horse, sun-beams, dust, the earth, air, fire, and a cat are always pure.

53. Such drops as fall from the mouth of a man upon any part of his body do not render it impure, nor do hairs of the beard that enter his mouth, nor remnants of his food adhering to his teeth.

54. Drops which trickle on the feet of a man holding water for others to sip it, are considered as equal to waters springing from the earth: by them he is not soiled.

55. He who is anyhow touched by anything impure, while holding things in his hands, is purified by sipping water, without laying the things on the ground.

51. There are, according to Indian views, nine cavities or apertures of the body: the mouth, the two ears, the two nostrils, the two eyes, and the organs of excretion and generation. The two last are impure, the rest are pure.

55. Nand. and Kullāka (on M. V. i 43) explain that hasta, 'hand,' here means 'arm,' as it would be impossible to sip water without using the hand. The former adds that, if the things are being carried with the hand, they must be placed in the cavity formed by the fore-arm. He refutes the opinion of the 'Eastern Commentators,' who, arguing from another Smṛti, contend that the things have to be placed on the ground and to be sprinkled with water; and he further tries to account for the seemingly contradictory rules propounded by Vāsishṭha (Benares ed., III, 43) and Gautama (I, 28) by explaining that a large quantity of things should be laid on the ground, and a small quantity placed upon
56. A house is purified by scouring it with a broom and plastering the ground with cow-dung, and a manuscript or book by sprinkling water over it. Land is cleansed by scouring, by plastering it with cow-dung,

57. By sprinkling, by scraping, by burning, or by letting cows (or goats) pass (a day and a night) on it. Cows are auspicious purifiers, upon cows depend the worlds,

58. Cows alone make sacrificial oblations possible (by producing sacrificial butter), cows take away every sin. The urine of cows, their dung, clarified butter, milk, sour milk, and Gorośanā:

59. Those six excellent (productions) of a cow are always propitious. Drops of water falling from the horns of a cow are productive of religious merit, and have the power to expiate all sins (of those who bathe in, or rub themselves with, them).

60. Scratching the back of a cow destroys all guilt, and giving her to eat procures exaltation in heaven.

some other limb, and further, that food should always be placed on the ground, but that a garment, a stick, and the like should be kept in the hand. Compare Dr. Bühler's note on Gaut. loc. cit. It may be remarked, incidentally, that Nand. quotes the reading ukkhishyo 'nīdhāya in the passage of Gautama referred to.

56. 'The term pustaka refers to MSS. or books, whether made of palm leaves, or of prepared hemp, or of prepared reeds (sara).' (Nand.) It may be that Nand. means by the last term a sort of paper, though paper is usually called by its Arabian name (kāgad) in Indian works. See regarding the materials used for writing in ancient India, Burnell's Palæography, p. 84 seq. (2nd ed.)

57. 1 The term seka, 'sprinkling,' either refers to the earth being sprinkled by rain, or to Paśčagavya being poured over it. (Nand.)

58. Gorośanā is a bright yellow pigment which is said to be prepared from the urine or bile of a cow.
61. In the urine of cows dwells the Ganges, prosperity (dwell) in the dust (rising from their couch), good fortune in cow-dung, and virtue in saluting them. Therefore should they be constantly saluted.

XXIV.

1. Now a Brāhmaṇa may take four wives in the direct order of the (four) castes;
2. A Kśatriya, three;
3. A Vaisya, two;
4. A Sūdra, one only.
5. Among these (wives), if a man marries one of his own caste, their hands shall be joined.
6. In marriages with women of a different class, a Kśatriya bride must hold an arrow in her hand;
7. A Vaisya bride, a whip;
8. A Sūdra bride, the skirt of a mantle.
9. No one should marry a woman belonging to the same Gotra, or descended from the same Rishi ancestors, or from the same Pravaras.


1. This chapter opens the section on Samskāras or sacraments, i.e. the ceremonies on conception and so forth. (Nand.) This section forms the second part of the division treating of Ākāra. See above, XIX.

9. According to Nand., the term Gotra refers to descent from one of the seven Rishis, or from Agastyā as the eighth; the term Ārsha (Rishi ancestors), to descent from the Ārshīśhēnas or Mudgalas,
10. Nor (should he marry) one descended from his maternal ancestors within the fifth, or from his paternal ancestors within the seventh degree;

11. Nor one of a low family (such as an agriculturer's, or an attendant of the king's family);

12. Nor one diseased;

13. Nor one with a limb too much (as e.g. having six fingers);

14. Nor one with a limb too little;

15. Nor one whose hair is decidedly red;

16. Nor one talking idly.

17. There are eight forms of marriage:

18. The Brâhma, Daiva, Ársha, Prâgâpatya, Gândharva, Ásura, Râkshasa, and Paisâka forms.

19. The gift of a damsel to a fit bridegroom, who has been invited, is called a Brâhma marriage.

20. If she is given to a Râtvig (priest), while he is officiating at a sacrifice, it is called a Daiva marriage.

21. If (the giver of the bride) receives a pair of kine in return, it is called an Ársha marriage.

22. (If she is given to a suitor) by his demand, it is called a Prâgâpatya marriage.

or from some other subdivision of the Bhrigus or Ângirasas, excepting the Gámadagnas, Gautamas, and Bhâradvâgas; and the term Pravara, to the Mantrakrîts of one's own race, i.e. the ancestors invoked by a Brâhma at the commencement of a sacrifice. Nand.'s interpretation of the last term is no doubt correct; but it seems preferable to take Gotra in the sense of 'family name' (laukika gotra), and to refer the term samânârsha to descent from the same Rîshi (vaidika gotra). See Dr. Bühler's notes on Ápast. II, 5, 11, 15, and Gaut. XVIII, 6; Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, pp. 379–388; Weber, Ind. Stud. X, 69–81. If ârsha were connected with pravara, the whole compound samânârshapravarâ would denote 'a woman descended from the same Rîshi' = samanârshâ, Y. I, 53, and samânapravarâ, Gaut. XVIII, 6.
23. A union between two lovers, without the consent of mother and father, is called a Gândharva marriage.

24. If the damsel is sold (to the bridegroom), it is called an Åsura marriage.

25. If he seizes her forcibly, it is called a Râkshasa marriage.

26. If he embraces her in her sleep, or while she is unconscious, it is called a Paisâka marriage.

27. Among those (eight forms of marriage), the four first forms are legitimate (for a Brâhmaṇa);

28. And so is the Gândharva form for a Kshatriya.

29. A son procreated in a Brâhma marriage redeems (or sends into the heavenly abodes hereafter mentioned) twenty-one men (viz. ten ancestors, ten descendants, and him who gave the damsel in marriage).

30. A son procreated in a Daiva marriage, fourteen;

31. A son procreated in an Årsha marriage, seven;

32. A son procreated in a Prâgâpatya marriage, four.

33. He who gives a damsel in marriage according to the Brâhma rite, brings her into the world of Brahman (after her death, and enters that world himself).

34. (He who gives her in marriage) according to the Daiva rite, (brings her) into Svarga (or heaven, and enters Svarga himself).

35. (He who gives her in marriage) according to the Årsha rite, (brings her) into the world of Vishnu (and enters that world himself).
36. (He who gives her in marriage) according to the Prāgāpatya rite, (brings her) into the world of the gods (and enters that world himself).

37. (He who gives her in marriage) according to the Gândharva rite, will go to the world of Gandharvas.

38. A father, a paternal grandfather, a brother, a kinsman, a maternal grandfather, and the mother (are the persons) by whom a girl may be given in marriage.

39. On failure of the preceding one (it devolves upon) the next in order (to give her in marriage), in case he is able.

40. When she has allowed three monthly periods to pass (without being married), let her choose a husband for herself; three monthly periods having passed, she has in every case full power to dispose of herself (as she thinks best).

41. A damsel whose menses begin to appear (while she is living) at her father's house, before she has been betrothed to a man, has to be considered as a degraded woman: by taking her (without the consent of her kinsmen) a man commits no wrong.

39. Regarding the causes effecting legal disability, such as love, anger, &c., see Nârada 3, 43.

40. Nand., arguing from a passage of Baudhâyana (see also M. IX, 90), takes rītu, 'monthly period,' as synonymous with varsha, 'year.' But rītu, which occurs in two other analogous passages also (Gaut. XVIII, 20, and Nârada XII, 24), never has that meaning.

41. Nand. observes, that the rules laid down in this and the preceding Sloka refer to young women of the lower castes only. Nowadays the custom of outcasting young women, who have not been married in the proper time, appears to be in vogue in Brahmanical families particularly. Smṛiti passages regarding the illegality of marriages concluded with such women have been collected by me, Über die rechtl. Stellung der Frauen, p. 9, note 17.
XXV.

1. Now the duties of a woman (are as follows):
2. To live in harmony with her husband;
3. To show reverence (by embracing their feet and such-like attentions) to her mother-in-law, father-in-law, to Gurus (such as elders), to divinities, and to guests;
4. To keep household articles (such as the winnowing basket and the rest) in good array;
5. To maintain saving habits;
6. To be careful with her (pestle and mortar and other) domestic utensils;
7. Not to practise incantations with roots (or other kinds of witchcraft);
8. To observe auspicious customs;
9. Not to decorate herself with ornaments (or to partake of amusements) while her husband is absent from home;
10. Not to resort to the houses of strangers (during the absence of her husband);

Custom of Svayamvara or 'self-choice,' judging from the epics, was confined to females of the kingly caste, and in reality was no doubt of very rare occurrence.


10. 'Strangers' means any other persons than her parents-in-law, her brother, maternal uncle, and other near relatives. (Nand.)
11. Not to stand near the doorway or by the windows (of her house);

12. Not to act by herself in any matter;

13. To remain subject, in her infancy, to her father; in her youth, to her husband; and in her old age, to her sons.

14. After the death of her husband, to preserve her chastity, or to ascend the pile after him.

15. No sacrifice, no penance, and no fasting is allowed to women apart from their husbands; to pay obedience to her lord is the only means for a woman to obtain bliss in heaven.

16. A woman who keeps a fast or performs a penance in the lifetime of her lord, deprives her husband of his life, and will go to hell.

17. A good wife, who perseveres in a chaste life after the death of her lord, will go to heaven like (perpetual) students, even though she has no son.

XXVI.

1. If a man has several wives of his own caste,
he shall perform his religious duties together with the eldest (or first-married) wife.

2. (If he has several) wives of divers castes (he shall perform them) even with the youngest wife if she is of the same caste as himself.

3. On failure of a wife of his own caste (he shall perform them) with one belonging to the caste next below his own; so also in cases of distress (i.e. when the wife who is equal in caste to him happens to be absent, or when she has met with a calamity);

4. But no twice-born man ever with a Sūdra wife.

5. A union of a twice-born man with a Sūdra wife can never produce religious merit; it is from carnal desire only that he marries her, being blinded by lust.

6. Men of the three first castes, who through folly marry a woman of the lowest caste, quickly degrade their families and progeny to the state of Sūdras.

7. If his oblations to the gods and manes and (his hospitable attentions) to guests are offered principally through her hands, the gods and manes (and the guests) will not eat such offerings, and he will not go to heaven.

XXVII.

1. The Nishekakarman (ceremony of impregnation)
tion) must be performed when the season fit for procreating children\(^1\) distinctly appears (for the first time).

2. The Pumsavana (ceremony to cause the birth of a male) must be performed before the embryo begins to move.

3. The Sīmantonnayana (ceremony of parting the hair) should take place in the sixth or eighth month (of pregnancy).

4. The Gātakarman (birth-ceremony) should take place on the birth of the child.

5. The Nāmadheya (naming-rite) must be performed as soon as the term of impurity (caused by the birth of the child) is over.

6. (The name to be chosen should be) auspicious in the case of a Brāhmaṇa;

7. Indicating power in the case of a Kshatriya;

8. Indicating wealth in the case of a Vaisya;

9. Indicating contempt in the case of a Śūdra.

\(^{1}\) 'Garba' here means 'ṛitu,' i.e. the time favourable for procreation, following immediately upon the menstrual evacuation, and the above ceremony should be performed once only, in order to consecrate the mother once for all. (Nand.)

2, 3. The embryo begins to move in the fourth month of pregnancy, and the Pumsavana must be performed in the second or third month of every pregnancy. Thus Nand., who combats expressly the opinion that this ceremony has the consecration of the mother, and not the consecration of the foetus, for its object. Regarding the Sīmantonnayana he seems to consider both views as admissible. According to the former view it would have to be performed only once, like the Nishekakarman.

6–9. Nand. quotes as instances of such names: 1. Lakshmīdhara; 2. Yudhishṭhīra; 3. Arthropati; 4. Lokadāsa; or (observing,
10. The Ādityadārsana (ceremony of taking the child out to see the sun) should take place in the fourth month (after birth).

11. The Annaprāṣana (ceremony of first feeding) should take place in the sixth month.

12. The Kūḍākaraṇa (tonsure rite) should take place in the third year.

13. For female children the same ceremonies, (beginning with the birth ceremony, should be performed, but) without Mantras.

14. The marriage ceremony only has to be performed with Mantras for them.

15. The initiation of Brāhmaṇas (should take place) in the eighth year after conception;

16. Of Kshatriyas, in the eleventh year after conception;

17. Of Vaisyas, in the twelfth year after conception;

18. Their girdles should be made of Muṅga grass, a bow-string, and Balbaga (coarse grass) respectively.

19. Their sacrificial strings and their garments should be made of cotton, hemp, and wool respectively.

at the same time, another rule regarding the second part of a compound name), 1. Viṣṇuśarman; 2. Bhīmavarmaṇ; 3. Devagupta; 4. Dharmadāsa.

10. According to Nand., who quotes a passage of Yama in support of his opinion, this Sūtra has to be divided into two, which would, however, require several words to complete their sense, the import of the first being, that the child should be taken out to see the sun in the third month, and to see the moon in the fourth month. See the Introduction.

12. 'The third year;' i.e. either after conception, or after birth. (Nand.)

15–17. 'Nand., 'or after birth.' See Pār. and Āsv. loc. cit.
20. The skins (which they wear) should be those of a black antelope, of a tiger, and of a he-goat respectively.

21. Their staves should be made of Palâsa, Khâdira, and Udumbara wood respectively.

22. Their staves should be of such a length as to reach the hair, the forehead, and the nose respectively.

23. Or all (kinds of staves may be used for all castes indiscriminately).

24. And they should not be crooked, nor should the bark be stripped off.

25. In begging alms, they should put in the word ‘Lady’ at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of their request (according to their caste).

26. The ceremony of initiation must not be delayed beyond the sixteenth year in the case of a Brâhmana; beyond the twenty-second, in the case of a Kshatriya; and beyond the twenty-fourth, in the case of a Vaisya.

27. After that, the youths belonging to any of those three castes, who have not been initiated at the proper time, are excluded from initiation, and contemned by the twice-born, and are called Vrâtyas.

28. That skin, that cord, that girdle, that staff, and that garment which has been given to any one (on his initiation), that he must for ever wear when performing any religious observance.

29. His girdle, his skin, his staff, his string, and his ewer he must throw into the water when broken (or spoiled by use), and receive others consecrated with Mantras.
XXVIII.

1. Now¹ students shall dwell at their Guru's (spiritual teacher's) house.

2. They shall recite their morning and evening prayers.

3. (A student) shall mutter the morning prayer standing, and the evening prayer sitting.

4. He shall perform twice a day (in the mornings and evenings) the religious acts of sprinkling the ground (round the altar) and of putting fuel on the fire.

5. He must plunge into the waters like a stick.


1. 'I.e. after the performance of the initiation ceremony.' (Nand.)

5. The sense of this injunction, according to Nand., is, that he must not pronounce any bathing Mantras. But more probably it
6. Let him study when called (by his teacher).
7. He shall act so as to please his Guru (spiritual teacher) and to be serviceable to him.
8. He shall wear his girdle, his staff, his skin, and his sacrificial string.
9. He shall go begging at the houses of virtuous persons, excepting those of his Guru’s (and of his own) relatives.
10. He may eat (every morning and evening) some of the food collected by begging, after having received permission to do so from his Guru.
11. He must avoid Sråddhas, factitious salt, food turned sour, stale food, dancing, singing, women, honey, meat, ointments, remnants of the food (of other persons than his teacher), the killing of living beings, and rude speeches.
12. He must occupy a low couch.
13. He must rise before his Guru and go to rest after him.
14. He must salute his Guru, after having performed his morning devotion.
15. Let him embrace his feet with crossed hands,

is meant, that he shall swim motionless like a stick (see Āpast. I, 1, 2, 30, with Dr. Bühler’s note). According to a third explanation, which is mentioned both by Haradatta and by Devapâla in his Commentary on the Kâśyapa Grâhya-sûtra, the sense would be, that he is not allowed, while bathing, to rub his skin, in order to clean himself, with bathing powder and the like.

II. 1 Nand. interprets sukta, ‘food turned sour,’ by ‘rude speeches,’ because if taken in its other meaning, it would be included in the next term, paryushita, ‘stale food.’ However, if Nand.’s interpretation were followed, it would coincide with the last term of this enumeration, aśīla, ‘rude speeches;,’ and its position between two articles of food renders the above interpretation more plausible.
16. The right foot with his right hand, and the left foot with his left.

17. After the salutation (abhivādaye, 'I salute') he must mention his own name and add the word 'bhos' (Venerable Sir) at the end of his address.

18. He must not speak to his Guru while he is himself standing, or sitting, or lying, or eating, or averting his face.

19. And let him speak, if his teacher sits, standing up; if he walks, advancing towards him; if he is coming near, meeting him; if he runs, running after him;

20. If his face is averted, turning round so as to face him;

21. If he is at some distance, approaching him;

22. If he is in a reclining position, bending to him;

23. Let him not sit in a careless attitude (such as e.g. having a cloth tied round his legs and knees, while sitting on his hams) before the eyes of his teacher.

24. Neither must he pronounce his mere name (without adding to it the word Sṛi or a similar term at the beginning).

25. He must not mimic his gait, his manner, his speech, and so on.

26. Where his Guru is censured or foully belied, there let him not stay.

27. Nor must he sit on the same seat with him,

28. Unless it be on a rock ¹, on a wooden bench, in a boat, or in a carriage.

28. ¹ Thus according to Kullūka (on M. II, 204). Nand. takes the term silaphalaka as a compound denoting 'a stone seat.'
29. If his teacher's teacher is near, let him behave towards him as if he were his own teacher.

30. He must not salute his own Gurus without his teacher's leave.

31. Let him behave towards the son of his teacher, who teaches him the Veda, as towards his teacher, even though he be younger or of an equal age with himself;

32. But he must not wash his feet,
33. Nor eat the leavings of his food.
34. Thus let him acquire by heart one Veda, or two Vedas, or (all) the Vedas.
35. Thereupon, the Vedângas (that treating of phonetics and the rest) ¹.

36. He who, not having studied the Veda, applies himself to another study, will degrade himself, and his progeny with him, to the state of a Sûdra.

37. From the mother is the first birth; the second, from the girding with the sacrificial string.

38. In the latter, the Sâvitri hymn¹ is his mother, and the teacher his father.

39. It is this which entitles members of the three higher castes to the designation of 'the twice-born.'

40. Previous to his being girded with the sacrificial string, a member of these castes is similar to a Sûdra (and not allowed to study the Veda).

30. Nand. here interprets Guru by 'a paternal uncle and the rest.'

31. This rule refers to a son of his spiritual teacher, who teaches him one or two chapters of the Veda, while the teacher himself is gone out for bathing or some such reason. Vâ, 'or,' is added in order to include a son of the teacher, who is himself a pupil, as Manu (II, 208) says. (Nand.)

35. ¹ See Max Müller, Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 108 seq.
38. ¹ Rig-veda III, 62, 10.
41. A student shall shave all his hair, or wear it tied in one lock.

42. After having mastered the Veda, let him take leave of his teacher and bathe, after having presented him with a gift.

43. Or let him spend the remainder of his life at his teacher’s house.

44. If, while he is living there, his teacher should die, let him behave to his teacher’s son as towards his teacher himself;

45. Or towards one of his wives, who is equal to him in caste.

46. On failure of such, let him pay homage to the fire, and live as a perpetual student.

47. A Brāhmaṇa who passes thus without tiring (of the discharge of his duties) the time of his studentship will attain to the most exalted heavenly abode (that of Brahman) after his death, and will not be born again in this world.

48. A voluntary effusion of the semen by a twice-born youth (in sexual intercourse with a woman), during the period of his studentship, has been pronounced a transgression of the rule prescribed for students by expounders of the Vedas well acquainted with the system of duties.

49. Having loaded himself with that crime, he must go begging to seven houses, clothed only with the skin of an ass, and proclaiming his deed.

42. After the solemn bath (see Ārv. III, 8, 9; Gobh. III, 4; Pār. II, 6; Sāūkh. III, 1), which terminates the period of studentship, the student, who is henceforth called Snātaka, ‘one who has bathed,’ is allowed to return home.

45. * According to Nand., the particle vâ, ‘or,’ is used in order to include another alternative, that of living with an old fellow-student, as directed by Gautama, III, 8.
50. Eating once a day only a meal consisting of the alms obtained at those (houses), and bathing at the three Savanas (dawn, noon, and evening), he will be absolved from guilt at the end of the year.

51. After an involuntary effusion of the semen during sleep, a twice-born student must bathe (on the next morning), worship the sun (by offerings of perfumes and the like), and mutter three times the Mantra, 'Again shall my strength return to me.'

52. He who for seven days omits to collect alms and to kindle the sacred fire, must perform the penance of an Avaktrin (breaker of his vow), provided that he has not been prevented from the discharge of his duties by an illness.

53. If the sun should rise or set while a student is purposely indulging in sleep, ignoring (the precepts of law), he must fast for a day, muttering (the Gâyatrî one thousand and eight times).

XXIX.

1. He who having initiated a youth and instructed him in the Vratas, teaches him (one branch of) the Veda (together with its Ângas, such as that relating to phonetics, and the rest) is called Âkârya (teacher).

51. 1 Taitt. Ârany. I, 30.


1. The Vratas of a student are certain observances to be kept by him before he is admitted to the regular course of study of the Veda, and again before he is allowed to proceed to the study of the Mahânâmâni verses and to the other higher stages of Vedic learning. See, particularly, Sânkh. I, 11, 12, with Dr. Oldenberg's note (Ind. Stud. XV, 139).
2. He who teaches him (after he has been initiated by another) either (an entire branch of the Veda) in consideration of a fee, or part of a Veda (without taking a fee), is called Upâdhyâya (sub-teacher).

3. He who performs sacrifices (whether based upon Sruti or upon Smrîti) is called Ritvîg (officiating priest).

4. He must not engage a priest for the performance of sacrifices without having ascertained (his descent, character, and conduct).

5. Neither must he admit to his teaching (one whom he does not know).

6. And he must not initiate such a one.

7. If one answers improperly, or the other asks improperly, that one (or both) will perish or incur hatred.

8. If by instructing a pupil neither religious merit nor wealth are acquired, and if no sufficient attention is to be obtained from him (for his teacher's words), in such soil divine knowledge must not be sown: it would perish like fine seed in barren soil.

9. The deity of sacred knowledge approached a Brâhmana (and said to him), 'Preserve me, I am thy treasure, reveal me not to a scorners, nor to a wicked man, nor to one of uncontrolled passions: thus I shall be strong.

10. 'Reveal me to him, as to a keeper of thy gem, O Brâhmana, whom thou shalt know to be pure, attentive, possessed of a good memory, and chaste, who will not grieve thee, nor revile thee.'

7. ¹A proper question is, e.g. if the pupil modestly says, 'I don't know about this, therefore I want to be instructed.' An improper question is, e.g. if he says, 'Why do you pronounce this thus wrongly?' An improper answer is an answer to an improper question. (Nand.)
XXX.

1. After having performed the Upâkarman ceremony on the full moon of the month Srâvana, or of the month Bhâdra, the student must (pass over the two next days without studying, and then) study for four months and a half.

2. After that, the teacher must perform out of town the ceremony of Utsarga for those students (that have acted up to this injunction); but not for those who have failed to perform the ceremony of Upâkarman.

3. During the period (subsequent upon the ceremony of Upâkarman and) intermediate between it and the ceremony of Utsarga, the student must read the Vedângas.

4. He must interrupt his study for a day and a night on the fourteenth and eighth days of a month.

5. (He must interrupt his study for the next day

---


1–3. The annual course of Vedic studies opens with a ceremony called Upâkarman, and closes with a ceremony called Utsarga. The latter, according to the rule laid down in Sûtra 1, would fall upon the first day of the moon’s increase, either in Pausha or in Mâgha. Nand. states that those students who have not performed the Upâkarman ceremony in due time must perform a penance before they can be admitted to the Utsarga; nor must those be admitted to it who have failed to go on to the study of another branch of the Veda at the ordinary time, after having absolved one.

4. 1 Nand., with reference to a passage of Hârîta, considers the use of the plural and of the particle ã to imply that the study must also be interrupted on the first and fifteenth days.

5. 1 This refers to the second days of the months Phâlguna, Âshâdha, and Kârttika. (Nand.)
and night) after a season of the year has begun, (and for three nights) after an eclipse of the moon.

6. (He must not study for a day and a night) when Indra's flag is hoisted or taken down.

7. (He must not study) when a strong wind is going.

8. (He must not study for three days) when rain, lightning, and thunder happen out of season.

9. (He must not study till the same hour next day) in the case of an earthquake, of the fall of a meteor, and when the horizon is preternaturally red, as if on fire.

10. (He must not study) in a village in which a corpse lies;

11. Nor during a battle;

12. Nor while dogs are barking, jackals yelping, or asses braying;

13. Nor while the sound of a musical instrument is being heard;

14. Nor while Sudras or outcasts are near;

15. Nor in the vicinity of a temple, of a burial-ground, of a place where four ways meet, or of a high road;

16. Nor while immersed in water;

17. Nor with his foot placed upon a bench;

18. Nor while riding upon an elephant, a horse, or a camel, (or in a carriage drawn by any of those animals), or being borne in a boat, or in a carriage drawn by oxen;

19. Nor after having vomited;

8. 'I.e. not during the rains.' (Nand.)

12. Nand. considers the term sva, 'dog,' to include all the other animals mentioned by Âpastamba, I, 3, 10, 17.

19–21. After having vomited or been purged, he shall interrupt
20. Nor after having been purged;
21. Nor during an indigestion.
22. When a five-toed animal has passed between the teacher and the pupil (the latter must interrupt his study for a day and a night).
23. When a king or a learned Brāhmaṇa (who has mastered one Veda), or a cow, or a Brāhmaṇa (in general) has met with an accident (he must not study).
24. After the Upākaranam (he must not study for three days).
25. And after the Utsarga (he must interrupt his study for as many days).
26. And (he must avoid to study) the hymns of the Rīg-veda, or those of the Yaγur-veda, while the Sāman melodies are being chanted.
27. Let him not lie down to sleep again when he has begun to study in the second half of the night.
28. Let him avoid studying at times when there ought to be an intermission of study, even though a question has been put to him (by his teacher);

his study for a day and a night; when suffering from indigestion, till he has digested his food. (Nand.)

22. According to Nand., the interruption of study is to last for two days, when a crow, or an owl, or a wild cock, or a mouse, or a frog, and the like animals have passed; and for three days, when a dog, or an ichneumon, or a snake, or a frog (sic), or a cat has passed. He quotes Gaut. I, 59 in support of his interpretation. I have translated according to M. IV, 126; Y. I, 147.

23. In these cases the study shall not be taken up again till the accident has been appeased by propitiatory rites. If any of the persons in question has died, the interruption is to last for a day and a night, in case they were persons of little merit; but in case they should have been very virtuous, it is to last for three days. (Nand.)

28. Every lesson consists of questions put by the teacher and the pupil's answers to them.
29. Since to study on forbidden days neither benefits him in this nor in the other world.

30. To study on such days destroys the life of both teacher and pupil.

31. Therefore should a teacher, who wishes to obtain the world of Brahman, avoid improper days, and sow (on proper days) the seed of sacred knowledge on soil consisting of virtuous pupils.

32. At the beginning and at the end of the lecture let the pupil embrace his teacher's feet;

33. And let him pronounce the sacred syllable Om.

34. Now he who studies the hymns of the Rigveda (regularly), feeds the manes with clarified butter.

35. He who studies the Yagus texts, (feeds them) with honey.

36. He who studies the Sâman melodies, (feeds them) with milk.

37. He who studies the Atharva-veda, (feeds them) with meat.

38. He who studies the Purânas, Itihásas, Vedângas, and the Institutes of Sacred Law, feeds them with rice.

39. He who having collected sacred knowledge, gains his substance by it in this world, will derive no benefit from it in the world to come.

33. Nand., quoting a passage of Yama, states the particle ā to imply that the pupil must touch the ground, after having pronounced the syllable Om.

38. Nand. considers the use of a Dvandva compound to imply that logic (Nyâya) and the Mimbamsâ system of philosophy are also intended in this Sûtra. Regarding the meaning of the terms Purâna and Itihâsa, see Max Muller, Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 40 seq.

39. This rule cannot refer to teaching for a reward, because
40. Neither will he (derive such benefit from it), who uses his knowledge in order to destroy the reputation of others (by defeating them in argument).

41. Let no one acquire sacred knowledge, without his teacher’s permission, from another who is studying divine science.

42. Acquiring it in that way constitutes theft of the Veda, and will bring him into hell.

43. Let (a student) never grieve that man from whom he has obtained worldly knowledge (relating to poetry, rhetoric, and the like subjects), sacred knowledge (relating to the Vedas and Vedâṅgas), or knowledge of the Supreme Spirit.

44. Of the natural progenitor and the teacher who imparts the Veda to him, the giver of the Veda is the more venerable father; for it is the new existence acquired by his initiation in the Veda, which will last him both in this life and the next.

45. Let him consider as a merely human existence that which he owes to his father and mother uniting from carnal desire and to his being born from his mother’s womb.

46. That existence which his teacher, who knows all the Vedas, effects for him through the prescribed rites of initiation with (his divine mother) the Gâyatrî, is a true existence; that existence is exempt from age and death.

47. He who fills his ears with holy truths, who

that is a minor offence (upapâtaka; see below, XXXVII, 20); nor can it refer to teaching in general, because it is lawful to gain one’s substance by it; but it refers to those who recite the Veda in behalf of another, and live by doing so. (Nand.)

41. See XXVIII, 6, and the preceding note.
frees him from all pain (in this world and the next), and confers immortality (or final liberation) upon him, that man let the student consider as his (true) father and mother: gratefully acknowledging the debt he owes him, he must never grieve him.

XXXI.

1. A man has three Atigurus (or specially venerable superiors):
   2. His father, his mother, and his spiritual teacher.
   3. To them he must always pay obedience.
   4. What they say, that he must do.
   5. And he must do what is agreeable and serviceable to them.
   7. Those three are equal to the three Vedas (Rig-veda, Sâma-veda, and Yagur-veda), they are equal to the three gods (Brahman, Vishnu, and Siva), they are equal to the three worlds (of men, of gods, and of Brahman), they are equal to the three fires.
   8. The father is the Gârhapatya (or household) fire, the mother is the Dakshina (or ceremonial) fire, and the spiritual teacher is the Âhavanîya (or sacrificial) fire.

9. He pays regard to all his duties, who pays regard to those three; he who shows no regard to


9. ‘The father is said to be of the same nature as the Gârhapatya fire, because the Âhavanîya is produced from it; the mother is said to be of the same nature as the Dakshina fire, because it
them, derives no benefit from any religious observance.

10. By honouring his mother, he gains the present world; by honouring his father, the world of gods; and by paying strict obedience to his spiritual teacher, the world of Brahman.

XXXII.

1. A king, a priest, a learned Brâhmaṇa, one who stops wicked proceedings, an Upâdhyâya, a paternal uncle, a maternal grandfather, a maternal uncle, a father-in-law, an eldest brother, and 1 the parents-in-law of a son or a daughter are equal to a teacher;

2. And so are their wives, who are equal in caste to them.

3. And their mother's sister, their father's sister, and 1 their eldest sister.

4. A father-in-law, a paternal uncle, a maternal

has a separate origin, or because she has the sacrificial implements, such as the pestle and mortar and the like, in her charge; and the spiritual teacher is said to be of the same nature as the Âhavanîya fire, because all oblations fall to his share, as the Smrâti says (Y. I, 27), "Let him (the pupil) deliver to him (the teacher) the collected alms." (Nand.)


1. 1 The particle ksa is used here, according to Nand., in order to include a paternal grandfather and other persons mentioned in a Smrâti.

3. 1 The particle ksa here refers, according to Nand., to the paternal grandmother and others mentioned in a Smrâti.

uncle, and a priest he must honour by rising to meet and saluting them, even though they be younger than himself.

5. The wives of Gurus (superiors), who are of a lower class than their husbands (such as Kshatriya or Vaisya or Mûrdhâvasikta wives), shall be honoured by (rising to meet and) saluting them from far; but he must not embrace their feet.

6. He should avoid to rub and anoint the limbs of Guru’s wives, or to anoint their eyes, or to arrange their hair, or to wash their feet, or to do other such services for them.

7. To the wife of another, even though he does not know her, he must either say ‘sister’ (if she is of equal age with himself), or ‘daughter’ (if she is younger than himself), or ‘mother’ (if she is older than himself).

8. Let him not say ‘thou’ to his Gurus (superiors).

9. If he has offended one of them (by saying ‘thou’ to him, or in some other manner), he must keep a fast and not eat again till the end of the day, after having obtained his forgiveness.

10. He must avoid to quarrel with his spiritual teacher and to argue with him (from emulation).

11. And he must not censure him;

5. Sûdra wives are exempt from this rule; he should rise to meet, but not salute them. (Nand.)

8. ‘Other insulting language, as e.g. if he says hush or pish to them, is also included in this term. The use of the particle ka indicates that other persons entitled to respect are also intended in this Sûtra. (Nand.)

10. ‘The particle ka is used in order to include Brâhmanas in general in this prohibition.’ (Nand.)

11. ‘The use of the particle ka shows that defamatory speeches are also intended.’ (Nand.)
12. Nor act so as to displease him.

13. (A pupil) must not embrace the feet of a Guru's young wife, if he has completed his twentieth year, or can distinguish virtue from vice.

14. But a young student may at pleasure prostrate himself before a young wife of his Guru, (stretching out both hands) as ordained (see XXVIII, 15), saying, 'I, N. N. (ho! salute thee).'

15. On returning from a journey he shall (once) embrace the feet of the wives of his Gurus (superiors), and daily salute them, remembering the practice of the virtuous.

16. Wealth, kindred, age, the performance of religious observances, and, fifthly, sacred knowledge are titles to respect; each subsequent one is superior to the one preceding in order.

17. A Brâhmaṇa, though only ten years old, and a member of the kingly caste, though a hundred years old, must be considered as father and son; and of these two, the Brâhmaṇa is the father.

18. The seniority of Brâhmaṇas is founded upon sacred knowledge; of Kshatriyas, upon valour in arms; of Vaisyas, upon grain and (other) wealth; of Sûdras, upon (priority of) birth.

XXXIII.

1. Now man has three most dangerous enemies, called carnal desire, wrath, and greed.

---

17. ¹ I. e. a Brâhmaṇa for whom the ceremony of initiation has been performed. (Nand.) This proverb is also found in the Nrisâstra 155, in the Mahâbhârata II, 1385 seq., &c., and in other works. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 6163, 2456, &c.

XXXIII. 1. Äpast. I, 8, 23, 4, 5.

1. The mention which has been made in the preceding section, that on Âkâra or rules of conduct, of the breach of the vow of
2. They are specially dangerous to the order of householders, because they have (houses, wives, and other) property.

3. Man, being overcome by those (three enemies), commits crimes in the highest degree, high crimes, minor crimes, and crimes in the fourth degree;

4. Also crimes effecting loss of caste, crimes degrading to a mixed caste, and crimes rendering the perpetrator unworthy (to receive alms and the like);

5. And crimes causing defilement, and miscellaneous offences.

6. This is the threefold path to hell, destructive of self: carnal desire, wrath, and greed: therefore must a man shun those three vices.

XXXIV.

1. Sexual connection with one's mother, or daughter, or daughter-in-law are crimes in the highest degree.

2. Such criminals in the highest degree should proceed into the flames; for there is not any other way to atone for their crime.

XXXV.

1. Killing a Brāhmaṇa, drinking spirituous liquor,

chastity and the penance for it (see XXVIII, 48, 49), causes him (Vishnu) to discuss the law of penance (Prāyaskītta). This is done in the following section, to which Chapter XXXIV serves as Introduction. (Nand.) The section on Prāyaskītta extends as far as Chapter LVII.

6. This proverb is also found in the Bhagavad-gītā, XVI, 21, and in the Mahābhārata, V, 1036. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 2645.

stealing the gold of a Brâhmaṇa, and sexual connection with a Guru’s wife are high crimes.

2. And social intercourse with such (criminals is also a high crime).

3. He who associates with an outcast is outcasted himself after a year;

4. And so is he who rides in the same carriage with him, or who eats in his company, or who sits on the same bench, or who lies on the same couch with him.

5. Sexual intercourse, intercourse in sacrificing, and intercourse by the mouth (with an outcast) entails immediate loss of caste.

6. Such mortal sinners are purified by a horse-sacrifice and by visiting all Tirthas (places of pilgrimage) on earth.

XXXVI.

1. Killing a Kshatriya or Vaisya engaged in a sacrifice, or a woman in her courses, or a pregnant woman, or a woman (of the Brâhmaṇa caste) who has bathed after temporary uncleanness¹, or an embryo

5. ‘Intercourse of marriage’ means sexual connection with an outcasted man or woman, or giving a damsel in marriage to an outcasted man. ‘Intercourse in sacrificing’ means sacrificing for, or with, an outcast. ‘Mouthly intercourse’ means teaching, or being taught by, or studying together with, an outcast. The present rule holds good in cases of voluntary intercourse only; if the intercourse was involuntary, the loss of caste does not follow till after a year. Others assert that the immediate loss of caste is entailed by particularly intimate intercourse only. (Nand.)


¹ The term ātreya (atigotrâ) has been translated here and in
of unknown sex, or one come for protection, are crimes equal to the crime of killing a Brâhmaṇa.

2. Giving false evidence and killing a friend: these two crimes are equal to the drinking of spirituous liquor.

3. Appropriating to one’s self land belonging to a Brâhmaṇa or a deposit (belonging to a Brâhmaṇa and not consisting of gold) are crimes equal to a theft of gold (belonging to a Brâhmaṇa).

4. Sexual connection with the wife of a paternal uncle, of a maternal grandfather, of a maternal uncle, of a father-in-law, or of the king, are crimes equal to sexual connection with a Guru’s wife;

5. And so is sexual intercourse with the father’s or mother’s sister and with one’s own sister;

6. And sexual connection with the wife of a learned Brâhmaṇa, or a priest, or an Upâdhyâya, or a friend;

7. And with a sister’s female friend (or with one’s own female friend), with a woman of one’s own race, with a woman belonging to the Brâhmaṇa caste, with a (Brâhmaṇa) maiden (who is not yet betrothed to a man), with a low-caste woman, with a woman in her courses, with a woman come for protection,

other places in accordance with that interpretation which is sanctioned by the majority among the commentators of law works. Nand., on the other hand, gives the preference to the opinion of those who render it by ‘a woman descended from or married to a man of the race of Atri.’

2. ‘The term etau, “these,” is used in order to include the forgetting of Veda texts and other crimes, which are mentioned as equal to drinking spirituous liquor by Manu (XI, 57) and Yâgna-valkya (III, 229).’ (Nand.)

5. ‘The particle â in this Sûtra refers to little girls, as ordained by Manu, XI, 59.’ (Nand.)
with a female ascetic, and with a woman entrusted to one's own care.

8. Such minor offenders become pure, like mortal sinners, by a horse-sacrifice and by visiting Tirthas.

XXXVII.

1. Setting one's self up by false statements (as by saying, 'I have done this,' or the like).

2. Making statements, which will reach the ears of the king, regarding a (minor) offence committed by some one;

3. Unjustly upbraiding a Guru (as by saying, 'You have neglected such a household duty');

4. Reviling the Veda;

5. Forgetting the Veda texts, which one has studied;

6. (Abandoning) one's holy fire, or one's father, mother, son, or wife;


1. 'But if a man who does not know all the four Vedas says, in order to procure a valuable present or some other advantage, 'I know the four Vedas,' or if he says of another, his superior in caste or sacred knowledge, in order to prevent his receiving a valuable present, 'This man is no Brâhmaṇa,' or 'He does not know anything,' in all such cases his crime is equal to the killing of a Brâhmaṇa.' (Nand.)

2. 'But giving information of a heavy crime constitutes a crime equal to the killing of a Brâhmaṇa.' (Nand.)

3. Guru means 'father' here. Heavy reproaches, as e.g. if a son says to his father, 'You have made unequal shares in dividing the patrimony,' are equal to killing a Brâhmaṇa. (Nand.)

4. 'But atheistical detracting from the authority of the Veda constitutes a crime equal to the drinking of spirituous liquor.' (Nand.)

5. 'The use of the particle āa indicates that distant relatives are also intended here, as Yāgñavalkya, III, 239, states.' (Nand.)
7. Eating the food of those whose food may not be eaten, or forbidden food;
8. Appropriating to one's self (grain, copper, or other) goods of another man (but not his gold);
9. Sexual intercourse with another man's wife;
10. Sacrificing for persons for whom it is forbidden to sacrifice (such as Śūdras, persons for whom the initiation has not been performed, and the like);
11. To live by a forbidden occupation (as, if a Brāhmana lives by the occupation of a Kshatriya, or of a Vaisya);
12. Receiving unlawful presents;
13. Killing a Kshatriya, or a Vaisya, or a Śūdra, or a cow;
14. Selling articles that ought not to be sold (such as salt, lac, or others);
15. For an elder brother to suffer his younger brother to marry before him;
16. For a younger brother to marry, though his elder brother is not yet married;
17. To give a girl in marriage to either of those two (categories of offenders);
18. Or to perform the nuptial ceremony for them;
19. To allow the proper time for the ceremony of initiation to pass without being initiated;

10. 'But sacrificing for an outcast is a high crime.' (Nand.)
12. This rule refers to receiving presents from an outcast or other person, whose gifts must not be accepted, to receiving improper gifts, such as a ram, or a black antelope, and to receiving presents at an improper place, such as Kurukshetra, or at an improper time, such as during an eclipse of the sun. The particle ka further refers to giving instruction to those who are not entitled to receive it, as Yama mentions. (Nand.)
20. To teach the Veda for a reward (unless it be in an emergency);

21. To be taught by one who teaches the Veda for a reward (unless it be in an emergency);

22. To be employed (by the king's order) in the working of mines of any sort (whether gold mines, or silver mines, or others, or manufactories);

23. To make large (sharp) instruments (such as instruments for piercing an elephant's ear);

24. Cutting trees, shrubs, creepers, long climbing plants (such as vines), or herbs;

25. Living by (prostituting) one's own wife;

26. Trying to overcome another by incantations (tending to kill him), or by forcible means;

27. Performing the act (of cooking) for one's own sole benefit;

28. Not to have kindled one's own sacred fire;

29. Omitting to pay one's debts to the gods, Rishis, and manes (or sacrificing, study of the Veda, and propagation of one's race);

30. Studying irreligious books;

31. Atheism;

32. Subsisting by a reprehensible art (such as dancing);

33. Intercourse with women who drink spirits;

34. Thus have the crimes in the fourth degree been enumerated.

20. It is true that the above definition of an Upadhyaya (XXIX, 2) implies that teaching the Veda for a fee is no reprehensible act; but that permission has reference to cases of distress only. (Nand.)

26. Nand. asserts that the particle â is used here in order to include the performance of an Añâna sacrifice and of the other sinful acts mentioned by Manu, XI, 198.

31. Atheism (nâstikatâ) consists in denying the existence of another life. (Nand.)
35. Such criminals in the fourth degree shall perform the Kândráyana or Parâka penances, or shall sacrifice a cow (as the case may require).

XXXVIII.

1. Causing (bodily) pain to a Brâhmaṇa;
2. Smelling at things which ought not to be smelt (such as excrements), or at spirituous liquor;
3. Dishonest dealing;
4. Sexual connection with cattle;
5. And (sexual connection) with a man (or unnatural intercourse with a woman):
6. Such are the crimes effecting loss of caste.
7. He who has knowingly committed one of the acts effecting loss of caste shall perform the Sântapana¹ penance; he who has done so unawares shall perform the Prâgâpatya¹ penance.

XXXIX.

1. Killing domestic or wild animals are crimes degrading to a mixed caste.
2. He who has committed a crime degrading to a mixed caste shall eat barley-gruel for a month (if he has committed it knowingly), or perform the penance Krikkhrâtikrikkhra (if he has committed it unawares).

35. Regarding the penances called Kândráyana and Parâka, see below, XLVIII and XLVII, 18.
XXXVIII. 1–6. M. XI, 68.
7. ¹See XLVI, 19, 10.
2. Regarding the penance Krikkhrâtikrikkhra, see XLVI, 13.
  'The use of the causative form kârayet indicates that he may
XL.

1. Receiving anything from a (Mlekha or other) despicable person (even though not as a present, but in the form of interest, &c.), traffic (even with articles that are not forbidden to sell), subsisting by money-lending (even without exceeding the legitimate rate of interest), telling lies (even though not in giving evidence), and serving a Sudra (even though without doing servile acts for him) are crimes rendering unworthy to receive alms.

2. He who has committed a crime rendering unworthy to receive alms, is purified by the penance Taptakrikhra (in case he committed it knowingly), or by the penance Sitakrikhra (in case he did it unawares), or by the penance Mahasantapana (in case it was committed) repeatedly.

XLI.

1. Killing birds, amphibious animals, and aquatic animals (such as fish);
2. And worms or insects;
3. Eating (nutmegs or other) plants similar to intoxicating drinks (in their effect upon the system):

perform the penance mentioned here through a substitute, if unable to perform it himself.’ (Nand.)

XL. i. M. XI, 70.
2. Regarding the penances mentioned here, see XLVI, 11, 12, 20.

XLI. i-4. M. XI, 71.
3. ‘Or the term madyanugata means hemp and the like.’ (Nand.) Kulluka (on M. XI, 71) interprets it by ‘what has been brought in the same basket or vessel with spirituous liquor;’ Medatithi, quoted by the same, by ‘what has been defiled by spirituous liquor.’ The rendering given in the text agrees with the first interpretation proposed by Nand.
4. Such are the crimes causing defilement.
5. The penance ordained for crimes causing defilement is the Taptakrikhra penance (if they were committed unintentionally), or they shall be atoned for by the Krikhratikrikhra penance (if they were committed intentionally).

XLII.

1. Miscellaneous crimes are those which have not been mentioned before.
2. Having committed one out of the number of miscellaneous crimes, a prudent man should always perform a penance, by the advice of a Brähmana, after the higher or less degree of his guilt has been ascertained.

XLIII.

1. Now follow the hells. (They are called:)
2. Tāmisra (darkness);
3. Andhatāmisra (complete darkness);
4. Raurava (place of howling);
5. Mahāraurava (place of much howling);
6. Kālasūtra (thread of time or death);
7. Mahānaraka (great hell);
8. Saṅgivana (restoring to life);
9. Avīki (waveless);

4. Nand. derives the term Raurava from ‘ruru, a kind of serpent.’ But it seems preferable to connect it with the root ru, ‘to howl.’
6. This hell is defined by Nand. as a kind of threshing-place, made of copper, burning hot, and measuring ten thousand Yoganas.
8. In this hell those who have perished in consequence of the tortures which they had to undergo are restored to life and tortured anew. (Nand.)
10. Tâpana (burning);
11. Sampratâpana (parching);
12. Samghâtaka (pressing together);
13. Kâkola (ravens);
14. Kudmala (bud);
15. PâtimruTTika (stinking clay);
16. Lohasaṅku (iron-spiked);
17. Rikisha (frying-pan);
18. Vishamapantâna (rough or uneven roads);
19. Kantakasâlmali (thorny Sâlmali trees);
20. Dípanadî (flame river);
21. Asipattravana (sword-leaved forest);
22. Lohakâraka (iron fetters);
23. In each of those (hells) successively criminals in the highest degree, who have not performed the penance (prescribed for their crime), are tormented for the time of a Kalpa.
24. Mortal sinners (who have not done penance) for a Manvantara;
25. Minor offenders, for the same period;

12. In this hell a large number of individuals is packed up closely in a very narrow space. (Nand.)
13. In this hell the sinners are devoured by ravens. (Nand.)
14. In this hell the sinners are put in sacks, which are tied up at the end. (Nand.)
17. In this hell the sinners are roasted. (Nand.)
20. This river, which contains hot water, is called Vaitaranî, as it is said, 'The river called Vaitaranî has a stinking odour, is full of blood, and is moving on swiftly a torrent of hot water, carrying bones and hair in its course.' (Nand.) A detailed description of the river Vaitaranî may be found in the Gâruḍa-purâṇa, p. 8 (Bombay ed., 1863).
22. 'The particle iti is added here, in order to include in the above enumeration the hells called Savishâ, Mahâpatha, Kumbhî-pâka, Taptabâluka, and the rest.' (Nand.) See Y. III, 223, 224; M. XII, 76.
26. Criminals in the fourth degree, for the period of a Katuryuga;
27. Those who have committed a crime effecting loss of caste, for a thousand years;
28. Those who have committed a crime degrading to a mixed caste, for the same period;
29. Those likewise who have committed a crime rendering unworthy to receive alms and the like.
30. And those who have committed a crime causing defilement;
31. Those who have committed one of the miscellaneous crimes, for a great number of years;
32. All sinners who have committed (one of those nine kinds of) crimes have to suffer terrible pangs, when they have departed life and entered upon the path of Yama.
33. Being dragged hither and thither (upon even and uneven roads), by the dire ministers of Yama, they are conducted (to hell by them), with menacing gestures.
34. (There) they are devoured by dogs and jackals, by hawks, crows, herons, cranes, and other (carnivorous animals), by (bears and other) animals having fire in their mouth, and by serpents and scorpions.
35. They are scorched by blazing fire, pierced by thorns, divided into parts by saws, and tormented by thirst.
36. They are agitated by hunger and by fearful troops of tigers, and faint away at every step on account of the foul stenches proceeding from pus and from blood.

31. 'A great number of years' means three hundred years. (Nand.)
37. Casting wistful glances upon the food and drink of others, they receive blows from ministers (of Yama), whose faces are similar to those of crows, herons, cranes, and other horrid animals.

38. Here they are boiled in oil, and there pounded with pestles, or ground in iron or stone vessels.

39. In one place they (are made to) eat what has been vomited, or pus, or blood, or excrements, and in another place, meat of a hideous kind, smelling like pus.

40. Here, enveloped in terrible darkness, they are devoured by worms and (jackals and other) horrible animals having flames in their mouth.

41. There again they are tormented by frost, or have to step through unclean things (such as excrements), or the departed spirits eat one another, driven to distraction (by hunger).

42. In one place they are beaten with their deeds in a former existence, in another they are suspended (by trees and the like, with a rope), or shot with heaps of arrows, or cut in pieces.

43. In another place again, walking upon thorns, and their bodies being encircled by snakes, they are tormented with (grinding) machines, and dragged on by their knees.

44. Their backs, heads, and shoulders are fractured, the necks of these poor beings are not stouter than a needle, and their bodies, of a size fit for a hut only, are unable to bear torments.

45. Having thus been tormented (in the hells) and suffered most acute pain, the sinners have to

43. The Gāruḍa-purāṇa (p. 17) also mentions that in one hell the sinners are thrown into machines like the sugar-cane.
endure further pangs in their migration through animal bodies.

XLIV.

1. Now after having suffered the torments inflicted in the hells, the evil-doers pass into animal bodies.

2. Criminals in the highest degree enter the bodies of all plants successively.

3. Mortal sinners enter the bodies of worms or insects.

4. Minor offenders enter the bodies of birds.

5. Criminals in the fourth degree enter the bodies of aquatic animals.

6. Those who have committed a crime effecting loss of caste, enter the bodies of amphibious animals.

7. Those who have committed a crime degrading to a mixed caste, enter the bodies of deer.

8. Those who have committed a crime rendering them unworthy to receive alms, enter the bodies of cattle.

9. Those who have committed a crime causing defilement, enter the bodies of (low-caste) men (such as Kandālas), who may not be touched.

10. Those who have committed one of the miscellaneous crimes, enter the bodies of miscellaneous wild carnivorous animals (such as tigers).

11. One who has eaten the food of one whose food may not be eaten, or forbidden food, becomes a worm or insect.


11. See LI, 3 seq.
12. A thief (of other property than gold), becomes a falcon.
13. One who has appropriated a broad passage, becomes a (serpent or other) animal living in holes.
14. One who has stolen grain, becomes a rat.
15. One who has stolen white copper, becomes a Hamsa.
16. One who has stolen water, becomes a water-fowl.
17. One who has stolen honey, becomes a gad-fly.
18. One who has stolen milk, becomes a crow.
19. One who has stolen juice (of the sugar-cane or other plants), becomes a dog.
20. One who has stolen clarified butter, becomes an ichneumon.
21. One who has stolen meat, becomes a vulture.
22. One who has stolen fat, becomes a cormorant.
23. One who has stolen oil, becomes a cockroach.
24. One who has stolen salt, becomes a cricket.
25. One who has stolen sour milk, becomes a crane.
26. One who has stolen silk, becomes a partridge.
27. One who has stolen linen, becomes a frog.
28. One who has stolen cotton cloth, becomes a curlew.
29. One who has stolen a cow, becomes an iguana.
30. One who has stolen sugar, becomes a Vâlguda.

30. 'The Vâlguda is a kind of bat.' (Nand.) The name Vâlguda is evidently related to valgulr, 'a kind of bat,' and identical with Vâgguda (M. XII, 64) and Vâgyvada (Haradatta on Gaut. XVII, 34), which, according to Dr. Bühler's plausible suggestion,
31. One who has stolen perfumes, becomes a musk-rat.
32. One who has stolen vegetables, consisting of leaves, becomes a peacock.
33. One who has stolen prepared grain, becomes a (boar called) Svâvidh (or Sedhâ).
34. One who has stolen undressed grain, becomes a porcupine.
35. One who has stolen fire, becomes a crane.
36. One who has stolen household utensils, becomes a wasp (usually called Karâta).
37. One who has stolen dyed cloth, becomes a Kakor partridge.
38. One who has stolen an elephant, becomes a tortoise.
39. One who has stolen a horse, becomes a tiger.
40. One who has stolen fruits or blossoms, becomes an ape.
41. One who has stolen a woman, becomes a bear.
42. One who has stolen a vehicle, becomes a camel.
43. One who has stolen cattle, becomes a vulture.
44. He who has taken by force any property belonging to another, or eaten food not first presented to the gods (at the Vaisvadeva offering), inevitably enters the body of some beast.
45. Women, who have committed similar thefts, receive the same ignominious punishment: they become females to those male animals.

are names of ‘a large herbivorous bat, usually called the flying fox (in Gujarati vågud or vågul).’ See Dr. Bühler’s note on Gaut. loc. cit.
XLV.

1. Now after having undergone the torments inflicted in the hells, and having passed through the animal bodies, the sinners are born as human beings with (the following) marks (indicating their crime):

2. A criminal in the highest degree shall have leprosy;

3. A killer of a Brāhmaṇa, pulmonary consumption;

4. A drinker of spirits, black teeth;

5. A stealer of gold (belonging to a Brāhmaṇa), deformed nails;

6. A violator of his spiritual teacher’s bed, a disease of the skin;

7. A calumniator, a stinking nose;

8. A malignant informer, stinking breath;

9. A stealer of grain, a limb too little;

10. One who steals by mixing (i.e. by taking good grain and replacing the same amount of bad grain in its stead), a limb too much;

11. A stealer of food, dyspepsia;

12. A stealer of words, 1 dumbness;


2. According to a text of Sūtrāpāṇa, which Nand. quotes in explanation of this Sūtra, connection with the mother is punished with ‘falling or incurable epilepsy,’ when the organ falls of; connection with a daughter is punished with red epilepsy; connection with a daughter-in-law, with black leprosy; and connection with a sister, with yellow leprosy.

12. 1 I.e. according to Kullāka and Nand., ‘one who studies the Veda without permission to do so;’ or it may denote, according to Nand., ‘a stealer of a book,’ or ‘one who fails to communicate information which he is able to give.’

L 2
13. A stealer of clothes, white leprosy;
14. A stealer of horses, lameness;
15. One who pronounces an execration against a god or a Brâhmaṇa, dumbness;
16. A poisoner, a stammering tongue;
17. An incendiary, madness;
18. One disobedient to a Guru (father), the falling sickness;
19. The killer of a cow, blindness;
20. The stealer of a lamp, the same;
21. One who has extinguished a lamp, blindness with one eye;
22. A seller of tin, chowries, or lead, is born a dyer of cloth;
23. A seller of (horses or other) animals whose foot is not cloven, is born a hunter;
24. One who eats the food of a person born from adulterous intercourse, is born as a man who suffers his mouth to be abused;
25. A thief (of other property than gold), is born a bard;
26. A usurer becomes epileptic;
27. One who eats dainties alone, shall have rheumatics;
28. The breaker of a convention, a bald head;

19. Nand. quotes a text of Sâtâtapa, from which he infers the use of the particle tu to indicate here, that a killer of his mother shall also be born blind.
21. The particle ka, according to Nand., indicates here, that such persons shall also be afflicted with the morbid affection of the eyes called Timira, as stated by Sâtâtapa.
24. 1 Nand. says that kundârin may also mean 'one who eats food to the amount of a kunda.' See also Dr. Bühler’s note on Gaut. XV, 18.
29. The breaker of a vow of chastity, swelled legs;
30. One who deprives another of his subsistence, shall be poor;
31. One who injures another (without provocation), shall have an incurable illness.
32. Thus, according to their particular acts, are men born, marked by evil signs, sick, blind, hump-backed, halting, one-eyed;
33. Others as dwarfs, or deaf, or dumb, feeble-bodied (eunuchs, whitlows, and others). Therefore must penances be performed by all means.

XLVI.
1. Now follow the penances.
2. Let a man fast for three days;
3. And let him perform each day the three ablutions (at dawn, noon, and sunset);
4. And let him, at every ablution, plunge into the water three times;
5. And let him mutter the Aghamarshana three times, after having plunged into the water;
6. During day-time let him be standing;
7. At night let him continue in a sitting position;
8. At the close of the ceremony let him give a milch cow (to a Brâhmaṇa).
9. Thus¹ has the penance Aghamarshana been described.


¹ Nand. thinks that the word iti, 'thus,' has a double meaning
10. Let a man for three days eat in the evening only; for other three days, in the morning only; for further three days, food (given to him) unsolicited; (and let him fast entirely for three days): that is the Prâgâpatya (the penance invented by Pragâpati).

11. Let him drink for three days hot water; for other three days, hot clarified butter; and for further three days, hot milk; and let him fast for three days: that is the Taptakrikhra (hot penance).

12. Taking the same (liquids) cold is called the Stakrikhra (cold penance).

13. The Krikhrâtikrikhra (the most difficult penance) consists in subsisting on milk only for twenty-one days.

14. Eating (nothing but) ground barley mixed with water for a whole month is called the Udakrikhra (water penance).

15. Eating nothing but lotus-fibres (for a whole month) is called the Mûlakrikhra (root penance).

16. Eating nothing but Bêl fruit (for a whole month) is called the Srîphalakrikhra (Bêl fruit penance).

17. Or¹ (this penance is performed) by (eating) lotus-seeds.

18. A total fast for twelve days is called Parâka.

19. Subsisting for one day on the urine and faeces of a cow, milk, sour milk, butter, and water here, and refers to another kind of Aghamarshana penance at the same time, which is described by Sânkha, and consists simply in fasting for three days and muttering the Aghamarshana hymn three times.

¹ According to Nand., the particle vâ, 'or,' here indicates another alternative, that of performing this penance with Âmalakas (Fimblica Officinalis Gaertn.)
in which Kusa grass has been boiled, and fasting the next day, is called Sântapana (the tormenting penance).

20. Swallowing (the same six things, viz.) cow-urine and the rest, each for one day, is called Mahâsântapana (the particularly tormenting penance).

21. Swallowing each for three days is called Atisântapana (the extremely tormenting penance).

22. Swallowing oil-cakes, foam of boiled rice, buttermilk, water, and ground barley (each for one day), with a fasting day between (every two days), is called Tulâpurusha (a man’s weight).

23. Drinking water boiled with Kusa grass, leaves of the Palâsa and Udumbara trees, of lotuses, of the Saṅkhapushpi plant, of the banyan tree, and of the Brahmaśuvartalâ plant, each (for one day), is called Parnakrikkhra (leaves penance).

24. Let a man perform all those penances after having shorn his hair and his beard, and let him bathe at morning, noon, and evening every day, lying on a low couch, and restraining his passions,

25. And let him (while engaged in performing them) avoid to converse with women, Sûdras, or outcasts, and let him constantly, to the best of his ability, mutter purifying Mantras and make oblations in the fire.

XLVII.

1. Now follows the Kândrâyana (lunar penance).

2. Let a man eat single mouthfuls (of food) unchanged in size;


2. ‘Unchanged in size’ means ‘of that size precisely which the law prescribes.’ Yâgñavalkya (III, 324) states that each daily
3. And let him during the moon’s increase add (successively) one mouthful (every day, so as to eat one mouthful on the first day of the moon’s increase, two mouthfuls on the second day, and so on; fifteen mouthfuls on the day of full moon), and during the wane of the moon let him take off one mouthful (every day, so as to eat fourteen mouthfuls on the first day of the moon’s wane, thirteen mouthfuls on the second, and one mouthful on the fourteenth day of the moon’s wane), and on the day of new moon let him fast entirely: thus has the barley-shaped Kândrâyana been described.

4. Or the ant-shaped Kândrâyana (may be performed).

5. That Kândrâyana is called ‘ant-shaped’ in which the day of new moon is placed in the middle.

6. That one is called ‘barley-shaped’ in which the day of full moon is placed in the middle.

7. If a man eats for a month eight mouthfuls a day, it is (the penance called) Yatikândrâyana (an hermit’s Kândrâyana).

8. Eating (for a month) four mouthfuls each morning and evening is (the penance called) Sisukândrâyana (a child’s Kândrâyana).

9. Eating anyhow¹ three hundred minus sixty mouthfuls a month is the penance called Sâmânya-kândrâyana (general Kândrâyana).

portion must have the size of a peacock’s egg, and Gautama (XXVII, 10) prescribes that the size of a mouthful shall be such as not to cause a distortion of the mouth in swallowing it. (Nand.)

9. ¹ ‘Anyhow,’ i.e. otherwise than ordained above, as e.g. eating four mouthfuls on one day, and twelve on the next day; or fasting on one day, and eating sixteen mouthfuls on the following day; or fasting for two days, and eating twenty-four mouthfuls on the third
10. After having performed this penance, in a former age, the seven holy Rishis, Brahman, and Rudra acquired a splendid abode, O Earth.

XLVIII.

1. Now if a man feels his conscience charged with some guilty act (such as performing a sacrifice for, or accepting a gift from, unworthy persons, or eating excrements) committed by himself (or if his conscience tells him that he has done more evil than good, or if he thinks himself less pure than others), let him boil a handful of barley-gruel for the sake of his own spiritual welfare.

2. Let him not make the (customary) Vaisvadeva offering after that.

3. Neither must he make the Bali offerings.

4. Let him consecrate with Mantras the barley, before it has been put to the fire, while it is being boiled, and after it has been boiled.

5. Let him watch the barley, while it is being boiled (muttering at the same time the following Mantra):

6. 'Soma, who is the highest priest among priests (gods), leader among the wise, Rishi among bards, the falcon among rapacious birds, the Svadhitri tree among trees, trickles murmuring through the filter.'

day; or fasting for three days, and eating thirty-two mouthfuls on the fourth day. (Nand.)


2, 3. Regarding the regular oblations which have to be offered at meal times &c. to the Visvedevás and to all beings (bhútâni), see LIX, 22, 24; LXVIII, 1–22.

4. The Mantras are given below, 17–22.

6. 1 Rig-veda IX, 96. Regarding the translation of this verse, see Dr. Zimmer's remarks, Altindisches Leben, p. 207.
With these words he must fasten blades of Kusa grass (round the neck of the kettle).

7. The pulse having been boiled, he must pour it into another vessel and eat it.

8. Let him help himself to it, while muttering the Mantra, 'The gods, who have sprung up in the mind and satisfy the mind, who are gifted with great energy, and whose father is Daksha, shall protect and help us. To them be Namaḥ (adoration), to them be Svāhā (hail).'

9. Then, after having sipped water, let him seize the centre (of the vessel) and mutter the Mantra:

10. 'Be satisfied in our stomach, O ye waters, and ye barley-corns, after having been bathed; they shall be salubrious to us, conferring bliss, causing health, divine, causing immortality, and increasers of Rita (truth and justice).'

11. One desirous of wisdom (must perform this rite) for three days;

12. A sinner, for six days.

13. Any of the mortal sinners (killers of a Brāhmaṇa, stealers of gold, and the rest) becomes purified by swallowing it for seven days.

14. Swallowing it for twelve nights effaces even sins committed by an ancestor;

15. Swallowing it for a month, every sin (whether light or heavy, and whether committed by himself or by an ancestor).

16. And so does swallowing barley-corns dissolved in the excrements of a cow for twenty-one days (efface every sin).

17. 'Thou art barley, thou the king of grains,

8. Taittirīya Samhitā I, 2, 3, 1. See also Vāgasaneyi Samhitā IV, 11, &c.
thou water mixed with honey; the Rishis have proclaimed thee an expeller of every kind of guilt and an instrument of purification.

18. ‘You are clarified butter and honey, O ye barley-corns; you are water and ambrosia, O ye barley-corns. May you efface whatever sinful acts I have committed:

19. ‘Sins committed by words, by acts, and by evil thoughts. Avert distress and ill-fortune from me, O ye barley-corns.

20. ‘Purify food licked at by dogs or pigs, or defiled by leavings (of food), and (purify me from the stain) of disobedience towards mother and father, O ye barley-corns.

21. ‘Purify for me food given by a multitude of persons, the food of a harlot, or of a Sûdra, food offered at a Srâddha, food rendered impure by the birth of a child in the house, the food of a thief, and food offered at a Navasrâddha (or new Srâddha, which takes place on the first, third, fifth, seventh, ninth, and eleventh day after a person’s demise).

22. ‘Purify me, O ye barley-corns, from the sin of injuring a child or of causing (a punishment) to be inflicted on some one by the king, from theft of gold (or other high crimes), from the violation of a religious duty, from performing a sacrifice for an unworthy person, and from abusing a Brâhmaṇa.’

XLIX.

1. After having fasted during the eleventh day of the bright half of the month Mārgasthāna, let a

XLIX. 1. ‘He must worship Vâsudeva either with sixteen acts, muttering one out of the sixteen verses of the Purushasûkta with each single act, the first act being the invocation of the gods, and
man worship, on the twelfth day, the venerable Vāsudeva (Vishṇu).

2. (He shall worship him) with flowers, incense, unguents, lamps, eatables (such as milk), and repasts given to Brāhmaṇas.

3. By performing this rite (on the twelfth day of the bright half of every month, from the month Mārgašīrśa to the month Kārttika) for one year, he is purified from every sin.

4. By performing it till he dies, he attains Sveta-
dvīpa ('the white island,' the abode of Bhagavat).

5. By performing it for a year on each twelfth day of both halves of a month, he attains heaven.

6. By performing it (within the same intervals), till he dies, (he attains) the world of Vishṇu.

7. The same (heavenly rewards are gained by him who performs this rite) on each fifteenth day (after having fasted during the fourteenth).

8. If he worships (according to the latter rite) Kesava (Vishṇu) who has become one with Brahma, on the day of full moon, and Kesava absorbed in meditation, on the day of new moon, he will obtain a great reward.

the last the dismissal of the assembled Brāhmaṇas; or he must worship him with the "five offerings," perfumes, and the rest, muttering at the same time the "twelve syllables" (Om namo bhagavatevasudevāya, "Om, adoration to the venerable Vāsudeva").' (Nand.)

2. 'He must worship him with those offerings and with burnt-oblations. The burnt-oblation, which must consist either of sesame, or of barley, or of clarified butter, has to be accompanied, by the recitation of the Purushasūkta or of the "twelve syllables."' (Nand.)

8. According to Nand., the two forms of Vishṇu mentioned here must be considered as two separate deities, the one having to be invoked with the words 'Adoration to Brahmakeśava,' and the
9. If in a year on a day of full moon the moon and the planet Jupiter are seen together in the sky, it is called a great full moon.

10. Gifts, fasts, and the like are declared to be imperishable on that day. The same is the case if a conjunction with the asterism Sravanâ falls on the twelfth day of the bright half (of any month).

L.

1. Let a man make a hut of leaves in a forest and dwell in it;

2. And let him bathe (and perform his prayers) three times a day;

3. And let him collect alms, going from one village to another, and proclaiming his own deed;

4. And let him sleep upon grass:

5. This is called a Mahâvrata (great observance).

6. He who has killed a Brâhmaṇa (unintentionally) must perform it for twelve years.

7. (He who has unintentionally killed) a Kshatriya or a Vaisya engaged in a sacrifice, for the same period.

other with the words 'Adoration to Yogakesava.' 'A great reward' he interprets by 'a shape identical with that of Brahman.'


3. 'And,' to imply that he should also make way for any Ārya whom he meets.

4. The particle ka here means, according to Nand., that he ought to remain chaste, as ordained by Gautama, XXII, 4.
8. Likewise, he who has killed (unintentionally) a pregnant woman, or\(^1\) a woman in her courses.

9. Or\(^1\) a woman who has bathed after temporary uncleanness;

10. Or\(^1\) a friend.

11. He who has (unintentionally) killed a king, must perform the Mahâvrata for twice the same number of years (or twenty-four years);

12. He who has (unintentionally) killed a Kshatriya (not engaged in a sacrifice, nor a king), for one quarter of that time less (or for nine years);

13. He who has (unintentionally) killed a Vaisya (not engaged in a sacrifice), for half of that time (or for six years).

14. He who has (unintentionally) killed a (virtuous) Sûdra, for half of that time again (or for three years).

15. He who is performing any of those penances, must carry (on his stick) the skull of the person slain, like a flag.

16. Let a man serve cows for a month, his hair and beard having been shorn.

17. And let him sit down to rest when they rest;

18. And\(^1\) let him stand still when they stand still;

---

\(^1\)Nand. infers from texts of Praêetas, Yama, and Parásara, that the particle vá, 'or,' here refers to pregnant cows, and to women whose confinement is close at hand, or who are married to one who has kindled his sacred fire, or for whom all the sacred rites have been duly performed from their birth.

\(^1\)Nand. refers the particle vá, 'or,' to women of high rank and to a rival wife, or a mother, or a daughter, or a sister, or a daughter-in-law, or a wife, who is of the same caste as her husband.

\(^1\)'The particle áa includes children here.' (Nand.)

\(^1\)According to Nand., the particle áa here refers to the
19. And let him give assistance to a cow that has met with an accident (such as getting into a slough, or falling into a pit).

20. And let him preserve them from (the attacks of lions and tigers and other) dangers.

21. Let him not seek shelter himself against cold (and hot winds) and similar dangers, without having previously protected the cows against them.

22. Let him wash himself with cow-urine (three times a day);

23. And let him subsist upon the (five) productions of a cow:

24. This is the Govrata (cow rite), which must be performed by him who has (unintentionally) killed a cow (belonging to a Kshatriya).

25. If a man has killed an elephant (intentionally), he must give five black (nīla) bulls.

26. If he has killed (unintentionally) a horse, he must give a garment.

27. If he has (intentionally) killed an ass, he must give a bull one year old.

28. The same if he has (intentionally) killed a ram or a goat.

29. If he has (intentionally) killed a camel, he must give one Krīshnala of gold.

---

precept of Parāśara, that he should drink water when the cows drink, and lie down when they lie down.

19. 1 According to Nand, the particle ā here implies another precept of Parāśara, that he should not take notice of a cow grazing or drinking water upon his own ground or that of another.

23. 1  'The particle ā implies that he should also mutter the Gomasṭ hymn, as Sātātapas says.' (Nand.)

25. 'He is called a black bull whose colour is red, whose mouth and tail are of a yellowish-white colour, and whose hoofs and horns are white.' (Yagñapārśva, quoted by Nand.)
30. If he has (intentionally) killed a dog, he must fast for three days.

31. If he has (unintentionally) killed a mouse, or a cat, or an ichneumon, or a frog, or a Dundubha snake, or a large serpent (a boa constrictor), he must fast one day, and on the next day he must give a dish of milk, sesamum, and rice mixed together to a Brähmana, and give him an iron hoe as his 'fee.'

32. If he has killed (unintentionally) an iguana, or an owl, or a crow, or a fish, he must fast for three days.

33. If he has killed (intentionally) a Hamsa, or a crane, or a heron, or a cormorant, or an ape, or a falcon, or the vulture called Bhāsa, or a Brähmana duck, he must give a cow to a Brähmana.

34. If he has killed a snake, (he must give) an iron spade.

35. If he has killed emasculated (cattle or birds)¹, (he must give) a load of straw².

36. If he has killed (intentionally) a boar, (he must give) a Kumbha of clarified butter.

37. If he has (intentionally) killed a partridge, (he must give) a Droza of sesamum.

38. If he has (intentionally) killed a parrot, (he must give) a calf two years old.

39. If he has (intentionally) killed a curlew, (he must give) a calf three years old.

40. If he has (unintentionally) killed a wild carnivorous animal, he must give a milch cow.

---

¹ Thus according to Nand., who declares himself against the interpretation of shāna by 'a eunuch;' see, however, Kullūka on M. XI, 134, and Dr. Bühler's rendering of Gaut. XXII, 23.—
² Nand. adds, 'and a Māsha of lead;' see the passages just referred to.
41. If he has (unintentionally) killed a wild animal not carnivorous, (he must give) a heifer.

42. If he has (intentionally) killed an animal not mentioned before, he must subsist upon milk for three days.

43. If he has (unintentionally) killed a bird (not mentioned before), he must eat at night only;

44. Or (if unable to do so), he must give a silver Másha.

45. If he has (unintentionally) killed an aquatic animal, he must fast (for a day and a night).

46. If he has killed a thousand (small) animals having bones, or an ox-load of animals that have no bones, he must perform the same penance as for killing a Sūdra.

47. But, if he has killed animals having bones, he must (moreover) give some trifle to a Brāhmaṇa (for each animal which he has killed); if he has killed boneless animals, he becomes purified by one stopping of the breath.

48. For cutting (unawares?) trees yielding fruit (such as the bread-fruit or mango trees), shrubs, creeping or climbing plants, or plants yielding blossoms (such as the jasmine tree), he must mutter a Vedic text (the Gāyatrī) a hundred times.

49. For killing (unintentionally) insects bred in rice or other food, or in (sweets and) the like, or in liquids (such as molasses), or elsewhere (in water and so on), or in flowers or fruits, the penance consists in eating clarified butter.

50. If a man has wantonly cut such plants as

46, 47. Nand. thinks that the former Sloka refers to intentional, and the latter to unintentional murder of those animals.

[7]
grow by cultivation (such as rice and barley), or such as rise spontaneously in the wood (such as wild rice), he must wait on a cow and subsist upon milk for one day.

LI.

1. A drinker of spirituous liquor must abstain from all religious rites and subsist on grains separated from the husk for a year.

2. If a man has (knowingly) tasted any of the (twelve) unclean excretions of the body, or of the (twelve) intoxicating drinks, he must perform the Kândrâyana penance.

3. Likewise, if he has (knowingly) eaten garlic, or onions, or red garlic, or any plant which has a similar flavour (to that of garlic or onions), or the meat of village pigs, of tame cocks (and other tame birds), of apes, and of cows.

4. In all those cases men belonging to a twice-born caste have to be initiated a second time, after the penance is over.

5. On their second initiation, the tonsure, the girding with the sacred string, the wearing of the staff, and the begging of alms shall be omitted.

6. If a man has (unawares) eaten meat of a five-toed animal, with the exception of the hare, the porcupine, the iguana, the rhinoceros, and the tortoise, he must fast for seven days.

7. If he has eaten the food of a multitude of persons, of a harlot, of a thief, or of a singer, he must subsist upon milk for seven days.

8. And \({}^{1}\) (if he has eaten) the food of a carpenter or of a leather manufacturer;

9. Or of a usurer, of a miser, of one who has performed the initiatory ceremony of a Soma-sacrifice, of a jailer, of an Abhisasta, or of a eunuch;

10. Or of a dissolute woman, of a hypocrite, of a physician, of a hunter, of a hard-hearted or cruel person, and of one who eats the leavings of food;

11. Or of a woman who has neither husband nor son, of a goldsmith, of an enemy, or of an outcast;

12. Or of a malignant informer, of a liar, of one who has transgressed the law, and of one who sells himself, or who sells (molasses or other) liquids and condiments;

13. Or of a public dancer, of a weaver, of an ungrateful man, or of a dyer of clothes;

14. Or (the food) of a blacksmith, of a man of the Nisháda tribe (who subsist by fishing), of a stage-player\(^{1}\), of a worker in cane, or of a seller of weapons;

\(^{8}\) 'As shown by ḫa, "and," other persons who have a dishonourable profession, such as fishermen, have also to be understood.' (Nand.)

\(^{9}\) Abhisasta means 'accused of a heinous crime,' i.e. 'a person of bad repute.' (Nand.) See also Dr. Bühler's notes on Āpast. I, 9, 24, 6, and on Gaut. XVII, 17.

\(^{14}\) 'This is the usual meaning of the term raṅgāvatārin. Nand. explains it by 'wrestlers and the like.'
15. Or of a trainer of dogs, of a distiller of spirituous liquor, of an oil manufacturer, or of a washerman;

16. Or (the food) of a woman in her courses (whether belonging to her, or dressed for her), or of one who lives under one roof with the paramour of his wife;

17. Or (food) which has been looked at by the killer of an embryo (of a Brâhmaṇa), or which has been touched by a woman in her courses, or nibbled by a bird, or touched by a dog, or smelt at by a cow;

18. Or that which has been designedly touched with the foot, or that which has been sneezed at;

19. Or the food of insane, or wrathful, or sick persons;

20. Or (food that is given) in a disrespectful manner, or the meat (of animals killed) for no sacred purpose.

21. After having (unawares) eaten the flesh of any sort of fish, excepting the Pâthîna, Rohita, Râgîva, Simhatunda, and Sakula fishes, he must fast for three days.

22. Likewise, after having (unawares) eaten the flesh of (any other) aquatic animal (such as the alligator, or the Gangetic porpoise).

23. After having (knowingly) drunk water from a vessel in which spirituous liquor had been kept, he must drink for seven days milk boiled together with the Saṅkhapushpī plant.

17. 1. Nand. considers the term patatrin to refer to crows only in this place. Kullūka (on M. IV, 208) interprets it by 'crows and the like.' See also Gaut. XVII, 10.

20. See Dr. Bühler's notes on Gaut. XVII, 19, 31.
24. After having (knowingly drunk water) from a vessel in which an intoxicating beverage had been kept, (he must drink the same) for five days.

25. A Soma-sacrificer, who has (unawares) smelt the breath of a man who had been drinking spirituous liquor, must plunge into water, (suppress his breath) and mutter the Aghamarshana three times, and eat clarified butter afterwards.

26. For eating (designedly) the flesh of an ass, of a camel, or of a crow, he must perform the Kāndráyana penance.

27. Likewise, for eating (knowingly) the flesh of an unknown (beast or bird), meat kept in a slaughterhouse, and dried meat.

28. For eating (unawares) the flesh of carnivorous beasts (tigers and others), or birds (hawks and others), he must perform the Taptakriikkha.

29. For (knowingly) eating a sparrow, or (the heron called) Plava, or a Brāhmaṇit duck, or a Hamsa, or the (wild cock called) Raggudāla, or a Sārāsa crane, or a Dātyūha, or a male or female parrot, or a crane, or a heron, or a cuckoo, or a wagtail, he must fast for three days.

30. Likewise, for eating (unawares the flesh of) animals whose hoof is not cloven (such as horses),

---

26. Nand. argues from a passage of Prañetas, that the flesh of the following other animals, dogs, jackals, cocks, boars, carnivorous animals in general, Gangetic porpoises, apes, elephants, horses, tame hogs, cows, and human beings, is also implied here. But if that were the case, Sûtra 26 would be partly a mere repetition of, and partly opposed to, the rules laid down in Sûtras 33 and 22.

27. 'Nand. infers from a passage of the Brāhma-purâna, that the use of the particle a further implies a prohibition to eat the flesh on the back, or flesh which had been interred in the ground, or covered with earth, fried meat, and the flesh of the uterus.
or of animals having a double row of teeth (such as the Rohita deer).

31. For eating (unawares) the flesh of any bird, excepting the francoline partridge, the Kāpiṅgala, the (quail called) Lāvaka, the peahen, and the peacock, (he must fast) for a day and a night.

32. For eating (knowingly) insects (ants and others), he must drink for one day (water in which the plant) Brahmasuvarkalā (has been boiled).

33. For eating (unawares) the flesh of dogs, he must perform the same penance.¹

34. For eating (unawares the mushroom called) Kḥattrāka, or (the mushroom called) Kavaka, he must perform the Sāntapana penance.

35. For eating (unawares) stale food, other than a mess prepared with barley (such as cakes), or with wheat (such as gruel), or with milk (boiled with rice, or mixed with coagulated milk, or otherwise dressed), and dishes sprinkled with fat (such as clarified butter), sour gruel, and sweetmeats, he must fast (for one day).

36. Likewise, (for eating unawares) the juice flowing from an incision in a tree, (plants raised in) unclean substances (such as excrements and the like), and the red exudation of trees.

37. Also, (for eating unawares) the root of the water-lily; (and for eating) rice boiled with sesamum, or with beans, Samyâva, rice boiled in milk with sugar, pastry, Sashkult (cakes), or food destined for

---

¹'And he must perform the Sāntapana penance mentioned in the next Sūtra, as the use of the particle ka implies.' (Nand.)

¹Nand. interprets this term by utkarikā, which, according to Wilson, is a sort of sweetmeat made with milk, treacle, and clarified butter. Kullūka (on M.V, 7) has a somewhat different interpretation.
the gods, if those dishes have not been announced to the gods first; and (for eating) food destined for burnt-oblations.

38. Also, for tasting the milk of any animal, save the milk of cows, goats, and buffalos (and for tasting any eatables made of such milk)¹.

39. Also, (for tasting the milk) of those animals (cows and the rest) within ten days after their giving birth to a young one.

40. And (for tasting) the milk of a cow whose milk flows of itself, of one that has just taken the bull ¹, or of one whose calf is dead ².

41. And (for tasting the milk of a cow) that has been feeding upon ordures.

42. And (for tasting) any such food as has turned sour (but not that which is sour by nature, like sorrel), except sour milk (and what is made with it).

43. A student, who partakes (unawares) of a Śrāddha repast, must fast for three days.

44. And he must remain in water for a whole day (afterwards).

45. If he eats honey or meat (at any time), he must perform the Prāgāpatya penance.

46. If any one eats (unawares) the leavings of the

---

³Nand. infers from the use of the particle ka that the same penance is ordained for tasting any other production of those animals, as e.g. their excrements.

⁴Sandhinī means 'a cow that has just taken the bull,' or 'a female animal that gives milk once a day,' or 'a cow that is milked by the calf of another cow.' (Nand.) Haradatta (see Āpast. I, 5, 17, 23; Gaut. XVII, 25) interprets it by 'an animal giving milk while big with young.' For other interpretations, see the Petersburg Dictionary. — ²Ś The particle ka indicates that animals bearing twins have also to be included in this prohibition.' (Nand.) See Gaut. loc. cit.
food of a cat, of a crow, of an ichneumon, or of a rat, he must drink water in which the Brahmasuvarkalâ plant has been boiled.

47. For eating (unawares) what has been left by a dog, he must fast for one day, and drink Paṅka-gavya (afterwards).

48. For tasting (knowingly) the excrements of five-toed animals (excepting human excrements), he must (fast) for seven days (and drink Paṅka-gavya on the eighth).

49. If one (not a student) eats (unawares) of a Srāddha repast consisting of raw food, he must subsist on milk for seven days.

50. If a Brāhmaṇa eats what has been left by a Śūdra, (he must also subsist on milk) for seven days.

51. If he eats what has been left by a Vaisya, (he must subsist upon milk) for five days.

52. If he eats what has been left by a Kshatriya, (he must subsist upon milk) for three days.

53. If he eats what has been left by another Brāhmaṇa, (he must subsist upon milk) for one day.

54. If a Kshatriya eats what has been left by a Śūdra, (he must undergo the same penance) for five days.

55. If he eats what has been left by a Vaisya, (he must undergo it) for three days;

56. And so must a Vaisya, if he eats what has been left by a Śūdra.

50. Nand. explains that he should drink Paṅka-gavya alternately with milk. This explanation extends to the following Śūtras also (up to Śūtra 56). He further argues from another Smṛiti text that the term Śūdra means 'Śūdras and women' here.
57. For (knowingly) eating (undressed) food, which has been left by a Kandâla (or Svapaka or other member of the seven lowest castes), he must fast for three days.

58. For (unawares) eating dressed food (left by such), the Parâka penance is ordained.

59. Let no Brâhmaṇa ever eat (the flesh of) beasts which has not been consecrated with Mantras; but if it has been consecrated with Mantras, he may eat it, following the eternal rule (laid down in the Veda).

60. As many hairs as the beast has, which he has slain in this world, for so many days will the killer of a beast for other purposes than a (Srauta or Smârta) sacrifice, suffer terrible pangs in this world and in the next ¹.

61. It is for sacrifices that beasts have been created by the Self-existent (Brahman) himself. Sacrificing causes the whole universe to prosper; therefore is the slaughter (of beasts) for a sacrifice no slaughter.

62. The sin of him who kills deer for the sake of gain, is not so great (and visited less heavily) in the world to come, than the sin of him who eats meat which has not been offered to the gods.

63. Plants, cattle, trees, amphibious animals, and birds, which have been destroyed for the purposes of sacrifice, obtain exaltation in another existence (in which they are born as Gandharvas, or other beings of a high rank).

---

¹ My translation follows Nand. It is, however, doubtful, whether the reading is correct; see Manu V, 38.

62. This is because the former kills animals in order to support his family, whereas the latter eats meat merely in order to tickle his palate. (Nand.)
64. When honouring a guest, at a sacrifice, or when worshipping the manes, or the gods, a man may slay cattle, but not otherwise on any account.

65. That twice-born man who, knowing the exact truth (promulgated) in the Veda, slays cattle for the sacrifices (ordained in the Veda), will convey himself and the cattle (slain by him) to a blissful abode.

66. A self-controlled man of a twice-born caste, whether he be a householder, or be dwelling with his spiritual teacher, or in the forest, must never slay an animal in opposition to the precepts of the Veda, even in cases of distress.

67. That slaughter which is in accordance with the precepts of the Veda, and has been fixed for this world of movable and immovable creatures, should be considered as no slaughter at all; because it is from the Veda that law shines forth.

68. He who hurts animals that do not hurt any one, merely in order to afford pleasure to himself, will never obtain happiness, whether living or dead.

69. He who gives no living creature intentionally the pain of confining or killing (or hurting) it, from benevolence towards all (creatures), will enjoy everlasting happiness.

70. Whatever he thinks of, whatever he strives for, and whatever he desires in his heart, all that is easily obtained by him who does not injure any created being.

71. Meat cannot be obtained without injuring an

---

66. ¹ Nand. interprets the term ātmavān by samnyāśi, 'an ascetic, or member of the fourth order,' apparently because the first three orders are mentioned in this Sloka. I have followed Kullūka's interpretation (on M. V, 43).

68. ¹ 'But it is no sin to kill tigers or other beasts of prey.' (Nand.)
animal, and the murder of animals excludes the murder of animals excludes the
murderer from heaven, therefore must meat be avoided.

72. Reflecting upon the origin of flesh and upon the (sin of) hurting or confining animated
creatures, he must abstain from animal food of any kind.

73. He who transgresses not the law and eats not flesh like a Pisâka, is beloved by men and
remains free from disease.

74. He who gives his consent to the killing of an animal, he who cuts it up, he who kills it, the pur-
chaser and the seller, he who prepares it, he who serves it up, and he who eats it, all these are
denominated slaughterers of an animal.

75. There is no greater sinner than he who, without giving their share to the manes and to the gods,
wants to increase his own flesh with the flesh of another creature.

76. Those two, he who performs a horse-sacrifice annually for a hundred years and he who does not
eat meat, shall both obtain the same recompense for their virtue.

77. By eating (wild rice or other) sacred fruits or roots, and by living upon such grains as are the food
of hermits, a man does not reap so high a reward as by avoiding meat.

78. (An eater of flesh must say within himself), 'Me he (mâm sa) will eat in the next world, whose

---

72. 'The human soul is enveloped in six sheaths, three of which come from the father, and three from the mother. The three that come from the mother are skin, flesh, and blood. Now flesh is said in the Sruti to be derived from the menstrual discharge, and the latter is one of the species of forbidden food. (Nand.)
flesh I am tasting here.' This, say the learned, is
the derivation of the word flesh (māmsa).

LII.

1. He who has stolen the gold (of a Brāhmaṇa),
must bring a club to the king, proclaiming his deed.
2. Whether the king kills him with it, or dismisses
him unhurt, he is purified.
3. Or (in case he committed the theft unawares),
he must perform the Mahāvrata for twelve years.
4. He who appropriates (knowingly) a deposit,
(must perform the same penance.)
5. He who steals (knowingly) grain or valuable
objects, (or prepared food belonging to a Brāhmaṇa),
(must perform) the Kṛikkhra for a year.
6. For stealing male or female slaves (not belong-
ing to a Brāhmaṇa, and for seizing) a well or
pool (actually containing water), or a field, the
Kāndrāyana (penance must be performed).
7. (For stealing) articles of small value (such as
tin or lead, not exceeding twenty-five Panaś in value),
the Sāntapana (penance must be performed).
8. (For stealing) sweetmeats, (rice or other) food,

LII. 1, 2. M. VIII, 314–316; XI, 100–101; Y. III, 257; Āpast.
I, 9, 25, 4–5; Gaut. XII, 43, 44. — 3. M. XI, 102.— 5–13. M. XI,
163–169.
3. 1 See L, 1–5.
5. 1 By dhana, 'valuable objects,' the objects mentioned below
(in 10), copper and the rest, are meant. (Nand.) — 2 Nand. does
not explain the meaning of Kṛikkhra, which is a general term for
'a heavy penance.' It probably denotes the Prācāpatya penance
here, as in a number of other law texts (e.g. below, LIV, 26), and
in the corresponding text of Manu in particular. See Kullāka on
M. XI, 163.
8–13. Nand. explains that these Sūtras refer to a small amount
of those articles which are mentioned in them.
(milk or other) drinks, a bed, a seat, flowers, roots, or fruit, drinking Pañkagavya (is ordained as penance).

9. (For stealing) grass, firewood, trees, rice in the husk, sugar, clothes, skins, or flesh, the thief must fast for three days.

10. (For stealing knowingly) precious stones, pearls or coral, copper, silver, iron, or white copper, he must eat grain separated from the husk for twelve days.

11. For stealing (unawares) cotton, silk, wool or other (stuffs), he must subsist for three days upon milk.

12. For stealing two-hoofed or one-hoofed animals, he must fast for three days.

13. For stealing birds, or perfumes, or medicinal herbs, or cords, or basket-work, he must fast for one day.

14. Though a thief may have restored to the owner the stolen property (either openly or) in some indirect manner, he must still perform a penance, in order to purify himself from guilt.

15. Whatever a man takes from others, unchecked (by the dictates of religion), of that will he be bereft in every future birth.

16. Because life, religious merit, and pleasure depend upon wealth, therefore let a man take care not to injure the wealth (of others by robbing them) by any means.

17. Among those two, he who injures animal life, and he who injures wealth, the one who injures wealth shall incur the heavier penalty.

14. 'As under pretext of handing over to him the dowry of a wife.' (Nand.)
LIII.

1. One who has (unawares) had illicit sexual intercourse, must perform the Prāgāpatya penance for a year, according to the rule of the Mahāvrata, clad in a garment of bark, and living in a forest.

2. The same (penance is ordained) for sexual intercourse with the wife of another man (who belongs to his own caste, but is no Guru of his).

3. For intercourse with a cow, the Govrata (must be performed).

4. For intercourse with a man, for unnatural crimes with a woman, (for wasting his manhood) in the air, (for intercourse with a woman) in water, by day, or in a go-cart, he must bathe dressed in his clothes.

5. By intercourse (knowingly) with a Kandāla woman, he becomes her equal in caste.

6. For intercourse unawares with such, he must perform the Kāndrāyana twice.

7. For intercourse (knowingly) with cattle (other) than cows) or with a public prostitute, (he must perform) the Prāgāpatya penance.

8. A woman who has committed adultery once,


1. The crime intended here is explained by Nand. as being illicit intercourse with a step-mother, who belongs to the Sūdra caste.


4. 'Or in a cart drawn by asses or by other beasts of draught, as the particle ka implies.' (Nand.)

5. 'Or with a woman of an equally degraded caste, such as the Svapāka caste and others.' (Nand.)

8. See Sūtra 2.
must perform that penance which has been pre-
scribed for an adulterer.

9. That guilt which a Brāhmaṇa incurs by in-
tercourse with a Kandāla woman one night, he can
only remove by subsisting upon alms, and constantly
repeating (the Gāyatrī) for three years.

LIV.

1. If a man associates with one guilty of a crime,
he must perform the same penance as he.

2. A Brāhmaṇa who has drunk water from a well
in which a five-toed animal has perished, or which
has been defiled in the highest degree, must fast
for three days.

3. A Kshatriya (must fast) for two days (in the
same case).

4. A Vaisya (must fast) for one day (and one
night).

5. A Sūdra (must fast) for a night only.

6. And all (the former, but not a Sūdra) must
drink Pañkagavya, when their penance has been
completed.

7. If a Sūdra drinks Pañkagavya, or if a Brāhma-
ṇa drinks spirituous liquor, they both go to the
hell called Mahāraurava.

Āpast. II, 5, 12, 22; Gaut. XXIII, 21. — 12. M. XI, 200; Y. III,

7. 'See XLIII, 5. Nand. infers from an anonymous Smṛiti
passage, that the first part of this Sūtra refers not only to Sūdras,
but to women also, and not only to the drinking of Pañkagavya,
8. If a man has not connection with his wife in the natural season, unless it be on the days of the full and new moon, or because she is ill, he must fast for three days.

9. A false witness must perform the penance ordained for killing a Brâhmaṇa.

10. He who has (unawares) voided excrements without water (being near), must bathe in his clothes, pronounce the 'great words,' and offer a burnt-oblation.

11. One who has been surprised asleep by the sun rising or setting, must bathe in his clothes and mutter the Gâyatrī one hundred and eight times.

12. He who has been bitten by a dog, a jackal, a tame pig, an ass, an ape, a crow, or a public prostitute, shall approach a river and (standing in it, shall) stop his breath sixteen times.

13. One who forgets the Vedic texts which he has studied, or who forsakes the sacred fires, must subsist upon alms for a year, bathing at the tree Savanas (morning, noon, and evening), sleeping upon the ground, and eating one meal a day.

14. For setting one's self up by false statements, and for falsely accusing or abusing a Guru, he must subsist upon milk for a month.

15. An atheist, one who leads the life of a member of the Kândāla or of other low castes that but also to the offering of burnt-oblations and the muttering of prayers.

9. According to Nand., this particular species of criminals is only quoted as an instance of anupâtakâh (criminals in the third degree, see XXXVI), who are all intended in this Sûtra.

10. See LV, 10. — 2 'The particle ka implies that he must touch a cow besides, as Manu directs (XI, 203).' (Nand.)

14. See XXXVII, 1, 3.
dwell outside the village (Bâhyas)\textsuperscript{1}, an ungrateful man, one who buys or sells with false weights, and one who deprives Brâhmânas of their livelihood (by robbing them of a grant made to them by the king or private persons, or by other bad practices), all those persons\textsuperscript{2} must subsist upon alms for a year.

16. An unmarried elder brother whose younger brother is married, a younger brother married before the elder, an unmarried elder sister whose younger sister is married, the relative who gives such a damsel in marriage, and the priest who officiates at such a marriage, must perform the Kândráyana.

17. He who sells living beings, land, religious merit (obtained by a sacrifice or otherwise), or Soma, must perform the Taptakrikhra.

18. He who sells fresh ginger\textsuperscript{1}, (edible) plants (such as rice or barley), perfumes, flowers, fruits, roots, skins, canes, (winnowing baskets or fans and the like) made of split bamboo, chaff, potsherds, hair, ashes, bone, cow-milk or curds, oil-cakes, sesamum, or oil, must perform the Prâgâpatya.

19. He who sells the fruit of the Sleshmâtaka tree, lac, bees-wax, shells, mother-of-pearl, tin, lead, iron, copper, or (sacrificial) vessels made of the horn of the rhinoceros, must perform the Kândráyana.

20. He who sells dyed cloth, tin\textsuperscript{1}, precious

\textsuperscript{1} Or nástikavr̥tti means "one who receives his substance from an atheist."’ See also Gaut. XV, 16. — \textsuperscript{2} The use of the particle ka implies that calumniators are also intended.' (Nand.)

17. See XLVI, 11.

18. The term árdra, which Nand. interprets by árdrakam, might also be connected with the following word, and both together be translated by ‘fresh plants’ See Y. III, 38.

20. Tin, perfumes, and, of the articles enumerated in Sûtra 21,
stones, perfumes, sugar, honey, liquids or condiments (other than sugar, salt, and the like), or wool, must fast for three days.

21. He who sells meat, salt, lac, or milk, must perform the Kândrâyana.

22. And all those persons (mentioned in Sûtras 17–21) must be initiated a second time.

23. He who has been riding (voluntarily) upon a camel, or upon an ass, and he who has (purposely) bathed, or slept, or eaten, quite naked, must stop his breath three times.

24. By muttering attentively the Gâyatrî three thousand times, (by dwelling) upon the pasture of cows, (and) by subsisting on milk for a month, he becomes free from the sin of accepting unlawful presents.

25. He who has (knowingly) offered a sacrifice for an unworthy person (such as a low-caste person, or an outcast), he who has performed the funeral rites for a stranger, he who has practised magic rites (in order to destroy an enemy), and he who has performed a sacrifice of the kind called Ahîna, (all those persons) may rid themselves of their

lac, and milk have already been mentioned in Sûtras 18 and 19. Nand. tries to remove the difficulty in the second case, by stating the perfumes mentioned here to be perfumes of a different kind, and in the fourth case, by asserting that the milk of female buffalos, &c. is meant in Sûtra 21. But he interprets the two other terms as given above. Probably the passage is interpolated.

22. ¹Nand. infers from the use of the particle ḫa that this rule applies equally to the persons mentioned in the next Sûtra.

23. ¹'The use of the particle vâ, “or,” implies that riding upon a cow, and other such animals, is also intended here.’ (Nand.)

25. ¹This kind of sacrifice is defined by Nand. as one connected with repeated drinking of the Soma juice, and lasting from two to twelve days. Medhátithi (on Manu XI, 198) simply defines
sins by performing three *Krikkha* (Prāgāpatya) penances.

26. Those twice-born men, by whom the Gāyatrī has not been repeated (and the other initiatory ceremonies performed), as the law directs, must be made to perform three (Prāgāpatya) penances and must be initiated according to custom.

27. Those twice-born men who are anxious to make an atonement for having committed an illegal act¹, or for having neglected the study of the Veda, must be made to perform the same penance.

28. Those Brāhmaṇas who have acquired property by base acts (such as living by the occupations of a lower caste, or accepting unlawful presents) become free from sin by relinquishing it, and by muttering (Veda texts) and practising austeritys.

29. For omitting one of the regular acts enjoined in the revealed (and traditional) law, and for a breach of the rules laid down for a Snātaka¹, a fast is ordained as atonement.

---

¹ It as a sacrifice extending over two days or more; Kullūka (ibid.) states that it lasts three days or more, and that it is said in the Veda to cause impurity. See also Weber, Ind. Stud. X, 355.

26. The recitation and repetition of the Gāyatrī is one of the chief elements of the ceremony of initiation. The words with which the pupil must address his teacher on this occasion are given by Nand.; they are quoted from Āsv. I, 21, 4, and Sāṅkh. II, 5, 10–11. See also Gaut. I, 46, with Dr. Bühler’s note.

27. ¹I.e. Brāhmaṇas and others who have gained their livelihood (in times of distress) by such occupations as are lawful for other castes only, and who, when the times of distress are over, wish to atone for those actions.’ (Nand.)

29. ¹Regarding the meaning of this term, see above, XXVIII, 42, note. The rules to be observed by a Snātaka are given in Chapter LXXI.
30. For attacking a Brāhmaṇa (by raising a stick or a weapon against him), the Kṛikkhṛa (Prāgāpatya) penance must be performed; for striking him, the Atikṛikkhṛa; and for fetching blood from him, the Kṛikkhṛatikṛikkhṛa.

31. With sinners, who have not expiated their crime, let a man not transact business of any kind. But a man who knows the law must not blame (or shun) those who have expiated it.

32. Let him not, however, live (or have any intercourse) with those who have killed children, or with ungrateful persons, or with those who have slain one come for protection, or a woman, even though such sinners may have obtained their absolution, as directed by the law.

33. (An old man) who has passed his eightieth year, a youth under the age of sixteen, women, and sick persons have only to perform half of every penance.

34. In order to remove those sins for which no particular mode of expiation has been mentioned, penances must be prescribed, which shall be in accordance with the ability of the offender, and with the heaviness of his offence.

LV.

1. Now follow the penances for secret sins.

---

30. For the Atikṛikkhṛa penance, see M. XI, 244.
33. Nand. adds, that a youth under the age of sixteen, who has not been initiated, and old women, as well as girls who have not yet attained maturity, must only perform a quarter of it, as directed in a Smṛti.

2. The killer of a Brāhmaṇa is purified, if, having approached a river (and bathed in it), he restrains his breath sixteen times, and takes only one meal, consisting of food fit for offerings, each day, for a month.

3. At the end of this rite he must give a milch cow.

4. By performing the same rite and by muttering (while standing in the water) the Aghamarshana (instead of stopping his breath), a drinker of spirituous liquor becomes free from sin.

5. (By performing the same rite and) muttering the Gāyatri one thousand and ten times (each day), a stealer of gold becomes free from guilt.

6. One who has connection with a Guru’s wife (becomes free from sin) by fasting for three days and muttering the Purushasūkta and (at the same time) offering a burnt-oblation.

7. Even as the horse-sacrifice, the king of sacrifices, removes all sin, the hymn of Aghamarshana likewise removes all sin.

8. Let a twice-born man stop his breath, in order to rid himself of all sin; all sins committed by a


2. Nand. infers from a text of Manu (XI, 249), that this rule refers to one who has killed a Brāhmaṇa intentionally.

3. This rule, Nand. infers from a passage of Yāvāvalyka (III, 305), applies also to the penances mentioned in the following Sūtra.

4. 1 Rig-veda X, 190. — 2 I.e. one who has knowingly drunk it, the penance for drinking it unknowingly being stated by Yāvāvalyka (III, 304).’ (Nand.)

5, 6. 1 Nand. infers from M. XI, 251, 252, that these two Sūtras also refer to penances for crimes intentionally committed. — 2 Rigs-veda X, 90.
twice-born man may be removed by repeated Prānāyāmas.

9. It is called a Prānāyāma, if a man, stopping the breath (which comes from the mouth and from the nostrils), recites the Gāyatrī three times, together with the Vyāhrtis (‘words’)\(^1\), with the sacred syllable Om, and with the (text called) Śīras\(^2\).

10. The lord of creatures (Brahman) has milked out from the three Vedas the letter A, the letter U, and the letter M (of which the sacred syllable Om is composed), and (the three sacred words) Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ, Svāḥ (earth, the atmosphere, and heaven).

11. The lord of creatures, the supreme deity, has also milked out from the three Vedas successively the three verses of the sacred stanza which begins with the word ‘tad,’ and is called Sāvitṛ (or Gāyatrī).

12. By muttering, every morning and evening, that syllable and that stanza, preceded by the three ‘words,’ a Brāhmaṇa will obtain that religious merit which the (study of the) Veda confers, just as if he had actually studied the Veda.

13. By repeating those three (Om, the ‘words,’ and the Gāyatrī every day) for a month out of the village, a thousand times, a twice-born man is purified even from a mortal sin, as a snake (is freed) from its withered skin.

14. Any member of the Brāhmaṇa, Kshatriya, or Vaisya castes, who does not know those three texts,

---

\(^1\) The three Vyāhrtis, ‘words,’ or Mahāvyāhrtis, ‘great words,’ are quoted in the next Sloka. — \(^2\) It begins with the words, ‘O ye waters, who are splendour and ambrosia.’ (Nand., and Mitāksharā on Y. I, 23.)
or fails to recite them in the proper season, meets with reproach among the virtuous.

15. The three imperishable ‘great words,’ preceded by the syllable Om, and the Gāyatrī consisting of three divisions, have to be recognised as the mouth (or beginning) of the Veda.

16. He who repeats that stanza (preceded by the syllable Om and the three ‘words’) carefully every day for three years, will be absorbed in the highest Brahman after death, move as freely as air, and become as pure as air.

17. The monosyllable (Om) is the highest Brahman, the stoppings of the breath are the best of austerities, but nothing is more exalted than the Gāyatrī; (declaring the) truth is better than silence.

18. All religious acts ordained in the Veda, (whether) consisting in burnt-oblations or sacrifices (or alms-giving or other pious observances), perish (after the merit obtained by them has been exhausted); but the syllable Om (akshara) must be known to be imperishable (akshara), as it is identical with Brahman, the lord of creatures.

19. The act of reciting (the syllable Om, the ‘words,’ and the Gāyatrī) is ten times better than the (Gyotishoma or other) sacrifices prescribed (by the Veda); it is a hundred times better when muttered in a low voice; it is a thousand times better when repeated mentally only.

20. The four Pākayagnās (small or domestic
offerings), together with the sacrifices prescribed (in the Veda), though all united, are not equal to a sixteenth part of the sacrifice performed by reciting (those sacred prayers).

21. A Brāhmaṇa may beyond doubt obtain final emancipation by solely repeating (those prayers), whether he perform any other religious observance or no; one who is benevolent towards all creatures (and does not slay them for sacrifices) is justly called a Brāhmaṇa (or one united to Brahman).

LVI.

1. Now then¹ follow the purifying Mantras from all the Vedas.

Brahman.’ (Nand.; see LIX, 20–25.) Kullūka, on the contrary (on M. II, 86), refers the term Pākayagñā to the four first only out of those five offerings, and this interpretation, besides being more simple than Nand.’s, is preferable for several other reasons. First, the ‘offering to Brahman’ includes the daily recitation of the Gāyatrī, which is mentioned here as opposed to the four Pākayagñās. Secondly, the number of four Pākayagñās is equally given in the Kāṇḍaka Grihya-sūtra; and Devapāla, in his Commentary on that work, gives a definition of them, which agrees in the main with Kullūka’s. ‘Four’ Pākayagñās are mentioned in the Grihya-sūtras of Kausika, Pāraskara, and Sānkhayana also. See Weber, Ind. Stud. X, 48. Thirdly, the Pākayagñās are brought in here as opposed to the Vidhiyagñās or ‘sacrifices prescribed by the Veda.’ This is probably because the latter are offered in the triad of sacred fires, whereas the term Pākayagñā, in its narrower use, denotes the oblations offered in the domestic fire. Hence, it might come to include the ‘offering to men,’ i.e. the feeding of a guest, but certainly not the study of the Veda.

LVI. M. XI, 250–260; Y. III, 302–305; Gaut. XIX, 12; XXIV.

¹’Now then,’ i.e. the previous chapter containing an enumeration of secret sins, an enumeration of the purifying Mantras, by which they may be expiated, follows next. (Nand.)
2. By muttering them, or reciting them at a burnt-oblation, the twice-born are purified from their sins. (They are as follows:)


3. Rig-veda X, 190, 1. (This and the following references are based upon Nand.'s statements.)


5. Rig-veda VIII, 84, 7–9.

6. Rig-veda IX, 58.


8. The term Pāvamāntyāḥ in its most common use denotes the ninth book of the Rig-veda, but Nand. here refers it to Taitt. Brāhm. I, 4, 8.


10. Sāma-veda II, 47–49. Regarding this and the following Sāmans see also Benfey, Ind. Stud. III, 199 seq., Burnell's Index to the Ārsheya Brāhmaṇa, and S. Goldschmidt's remarks in his edition of the Āranyaka Samhitā, Transactions of the Berlin Academy, 1868, p. 246 seq.


12. 'The Vyāhrti Sāmans, i.e. bhūḥ and the four others.' (Nand.) The four others are, bhuvah, svah, satyam, purushah. See Úhyagāna III, 2, 10, in Satyavrata Sāmārrami's edition of the Sāma-veda Samhitā.

13. 'Bhārunda is the name of certain Sāmans, twenty-one in number, which begin with the words, yat te kṛishnaḥ sakuna (Rig-veda X, 16, 6). They are contained in the Āranyagāna.' (Nand.) The reading of the last word is doubtful. At all events, the verse quoted by Nand. does not occur in the Āranyagāna. It may be that the Sāmans called Ekavimsatyanugāna are meant, which are found in that work, though they do not contain the verse referred to.


15. Āranyaka Samhitā IV, 33, 34, in Goldschmidt's edition,= Rig-veda X, 90, 1, 4.

27. The three Āgyadahs, the Rathantara, the Agnivrata, the Vâmadevya, and the Brahmâtsamâna, properly chanted, purify man from sin; and if he wishes he may obtain through them recollection of his existence in a former life.

LVII.

1. Now (the following persons) must be avoided:

19. The same text as in the preceding Sûtra.
22. 'The text beginning with the words, brahmâ devânâm prathamâ sambabhûva, "Brahman rose first among the gods."' (Nand.) The Atharvasîra Upanishad has the words, very near the beginning, aham eka prathamam âsit. See the Calcutta edition.
25. Tatt. Ârany. X passim.
2. Vrâtyas (i.e. those for whom the ceremony of initiation has not been performed);

3. Outcasts;

4. Descendants within the third degree\(^1\) of an outcast mother or father, if they (or their outcast ancestors) have not been purified (by a penance).

5. (As a rule) the food of all such persons must not be eaten, nor gifts be accepted from them\(^1\).

6. He must avoid accepting repeated gifts from those whose presents must not be accepted\(^1\).

7. By accepting such gifts, Brâhmâvas lose their divine lustre.

8. And he who, not knowing the law regarding acceptance of gifts, accepts (illicit) gifts, sinks to hell together with the giver.

9. He who, being worthy to receive gifts, does not accept them, obtains that world which is destined for the liberal-minded (after death).

10. Firewood, water, roots, fruits, protection, meat, honey, a bed, a seat, a house, flowers, sour

---

\(^1\) There are two classes of sinners, the repentant and the unrepenting. The penances to be performed by the former having been enumerated, he goes on in the present chapter to state that the latter must be avoided.’ (Nand.)


4. Nand. refers the term ‘in the third degree’ to the three ascendants of the parents. The same infers from a passage of Gautama (XX, 1) that the particle \(ka\) is used in order to include a murderer of a king also.

5. Nand. infers from another text of Gautama (XX, 8) that it is also forbidden to converse with them.

6. ‘It is no sin then, in one who is in distress, to accept a present once from them.’ (Nand.) See 14.
milk, and vegetables he must not disdain to accept when they are offered to him.

11. Even if an offender (but not a mortal sinner) has beckoned and offered alms to him, which had been brought previously for the purpose, the lord of creatures has declared that they may be accepted from him.

12. Neither will the manes eat (his funeral oblations offered to them) for fifteen years, nor will the fire convey his burnt-offerings (to the gods) if he rejects such alms.

13. If he wishes to provide for his (parents or other) Gurus or for (his wife or other) such persons as he is bound to maintain, or if he wants to worship the manes or the gods, he may accept gifts from any one; but he must not satisfy himself with them.

14. But even in those cases, and though he be worthy to receive presents, let him not accept them from a dissolute woman, from a eunuch, from an outcast, or from an enemy.

15. And if his parents are dead, or if he is living apart from them in a house of his own, he must never, while seeking to obtain food for himself, accept alms from any other persons but those who are of respectable descent (and belong to a twice-born caste).

16. One who ploughs the ground for half the crop (and gives the other half to the king or a private person, who is the owner), a friend of the family, a (house-)slave, a herdsman, a barber, and

11. 'The use of the particle à implies that Kusa grass &c. is likewise intended, as Yāgniavalkya (I, 214) says.' (Nand.)
16. The reason of this rule, according to Nand., lies in this, that
one who announces himself (with the words 'I am your slave'): the food of all such may be eaten, although they are Śûdras.

LVIII.

1. The property of householders is of three kinds:

2. White, mottled, and black.

3. By those obsequies which a man performs with white property, he causes (his departed ancestor) to be born again as a god.

4. By performing them with mottled property, he causes him to be born as a man.

5. By performing them with black property, he causes him to be born as an animal.

6. What has been acquired by the mode of livelihood of their own caste, by members of any caste, is called 'white.'

7. What has been acquired by the mode of livelihood of the caste next below in order to their own, is called 'mottled.'

8. What has been acquired by the mode of livelihood of a caste by two or more degrees lower than their own, is called 'black.'

9. What has been inherited, friendly gifts, and all the castes mentioned in this Sûtra are not properly Śûdras, but the offspring of unions between parents of a different caste, herdsmen being, according to Parâśara, the offspring of a Kshatriya with a Śûdra damsel, &c. The same considers the use of the particle kha to imply that potters are also intended. See Gaut. XVII, 6.


1. As the obligations of a householder, which will be discussed further on (in LIX), cannot be fulfilled without a certain amount of wealth, he discusses in the present chapter the origin of wealth. (Nand.)
the dowry of a wife, that is called white property, for members of any caste indiscriminately.

10. What has been acquired as a bribe, as a fee (for crossing a river and the like, or for a bride, &c.), or by the sale of forbidden articles (such as lac, or salt), or as a return for a benefit conferred, is denoted 'mottled wealth.'

11. What has been acquired by servile attendance, by gambling, by thieving, by begging, by deceit (as if a man says that he wants a present for another and takes it himself, or by forging gold or other metals), by robbery, or by fraud (as if a man shows one thing to a purchaser and delivers another to him instead), is called 'black property.'

12. Whatever a man may do (in this world) with anything (he has, whether white, mottled, or black property) he will get his reward accordingly; both in the next world and in this.

LIX.

1. A householder must perform the Pākayagñas

'11. 1Nand. interprets the term pārvika by 'moving a chowrie to and fro before one's master, while standing by his side.'


1. 1The term Pākayagñā is used in a more restricted sense here than above (LV, 20). Nand. interprets it by 'Vaivadeva, Sthā-
(small or domestic offerings) in the fire kindled at the time of marriage.²

2. He must offer the Agnihotra (or daily oblations of clarified butter) every morning and evening (in the Tretā fires).

3. He must offer burnt-oblations to the gods (in case the Agnihotra cannot be performed).

4. Let him offer the two Darsapurṇa-māsas on the days of conjunction and opposition of the sun and moon.

5. Once in each half of the year, (at the two solstices, let him offer) the Pasubandha (animal sacrifice).

6. In autumn and summer let him offer the Āgrayāna (oblation of first-fruits);

līpāka, Sravāṇakarman, and similar sacrifices,’ i.e. all the sacrifices which have to be performed in the one household fire, as opposed to those for which a Tretā or triad of sacred fires is required (see Stenzler, note on Āsv. I, 1, 2). Gautama (VIII, 18) enumerates seven Pākayāgas, among which, however, the Vaisvadeva is not included. The Vaisvadeva is described in LXVII. Regarding the other Pākayāgas, see the Grihya-sūtras. —² ‘Or in the fire kindled at the division of the family estate, or in the fire kindled on his becoming master of the house.’ (Nand.) See Sāṅkh. I, 1, 3–5.

2. The three Tretā fires have been enumerated above (XXXI, 8). Regarding the Agnihotra and the sacrifices mentioned in 4–8, see Weber, Ind. Stud. X, 328–337, 343–349, 352–396.

4. ‘One who has performed the ceremony of Agnyādhāna (kindling the sacred fires) must perform these two offerings in the Tretā fires, one who has not done so, in the household or nuptial fire.’ (Nand.) This remark applies equally to the sacrifices mentioned in 5–7.

6. ‘If the Āgrayāna is offered in the household fire, it must consist of a Śhālīlīpāka (cooked offering of grain).’ (Nand.) See the Grihya-sūtras above cited. Nand. further explains that in autumn the first-fruits of rice, and in summer the firstlings of
7. Or when rice and barley are ripening (in winter and spring).

8. He who has a sufficient supply of food for more than three years (shall perform the Soma-sacrifice)\(^1\).

9. (He shall perform) the Soma-sacrifice once a year (in spring).

10. If he has not wealth (sufficient to defray the expenses of the Pasubandha, Soma, Kāturmāsya, and other Śrauta sacrifices), he shall perform the Ishṭī Vaisvānāri.

11. Let him not make an offering of food obtained as alms from a Śūdra.

12. If he has begged articles for a sacrifice (and obtained them), let him employ them all for that purpose (and never for himself).

13. Every evening and morning let him offer up the Vaisvadeva;

14. And\(^1\) let him give alms to an ascetic (afterwards).

15. For giving alms and showing due honour to the recipient (by pouring water on his hands both before and afterwards) he obtains the same reward as for giving a cow.

---

barley, or, according to Āpastamba, of Vṛṣṇyava, have to be offered, and he infers from another text of the same author that the particle ā here refers to an oblation of Śyāmāka grain, which has to be offered in the rainy season. The two passages in question are not found in Āpastamba’s Dharma-sūtra, but Weber, loc. cit., quotes them from Kātyāyana.

8. According to Nand., the Soma-sacrifices here referred to are of the kāmya species (offered in order to obtain the gratification of a special desire).

14. Nand. infers from the use of the particle ā, and from a text of Parāśara, that an injunction to give alms to a student is also intended here.
16. If there is no ascetic (or other person worthy to receive alms), he must give a mouthful to cows;
17. Or he must cast it into fire.
18. If there is food in the house, he must not reject a mendicant, (who arrives) after he has taken his meal himself.
19. A householder has five places where animals are liable to be destroyed: his wooden mortar, his slab to grind wheat or condiments upon, his fireplace, his water-pot, and his broom.
20. For the sake of expiating offences committed (by ignorantly destroying life) in those places, he must perform the (five) sacrifices addressed to the Veda, to the gods, to all created beings (or 'to the goblins'), to the manes, and to men.
21. Privately reciting (and teaching) the Veda is the sacrifice addressed to the Veda.
22. The regular burnt-oblation (Vaisvadeva) is the sacrifice addressed to the gods.
23. The Pitritarpana (refreshing the manes with food and water) is the sacrifice addressed to the manes.
24. The Bali-offering is the sacrifice addressed to all creatures (or 'to the goblins').
25. The sacrifice addressed to men consists in honouring a guest.
26. He who does not give their share to these five, the gods, his guests, (his wife and children and others,) whom he is bound to maintain, his manes, and himself, is not alive, though he breathes.

18. 'The expression, "if there is food in the house," indicates that he is not bound to cook a fresh meal for his guest.' (Nand.)
27. These (three), the student, the hermit, and the ascetic, derive their existence from the order of householders; therefore must a householder not treat them with disdain, when they have arrived (at his house at the proper time for begging alms).

28. The householder offers sacrifices, the householder practises austerities, the householder distributes gifts; therefore is the order of householders the first of all.

29. The Rishis\(^1\), the manes, the gods, all creatures (dogs, &c.), and guests beg householders for support; therefore is the order of householders the best of all.

30. If a householder is intent upon pursuing the three objects of life (virtue, love, and wealth), upon constantly distributing presents of food, upon worshipping the gods, upon honouring the Brähmanas, upon discharging his duty of privately reciting (and teaching) the Veda, and upon refreshing the manes (with oblations of balls of rice, water, and the like), he will attain the world of Indra.

LX.

1. In (the last watch of the night, which is called)

---

27. Nand. refers the term bhikshu, which has been rendered by 'ascetic,' i.e. a member of the fourth order, to the six sorts of beggars enumerated by Parâsara. But as the first three orders are mentioned in this Sloka, it is certainly more natural to translate the term as has been done above.

29. ^1 Nand. thinks that hermits or members of the third order are meant by this term. But it seems preferable to refer it to the Rishi authors of the Veda, to whom the first of the five sacrifices, the study of the Veda, is more immediately addressed. See Âpast. I, 4, 13, 1; Gaut. V, 3.

LX. 1. M. IV, 92; Y. I, 115. — 1, 2. M. IV, 50; Y. I, 16; Âpast.
the hour sacred to Brahman, let him rise and void his excrements.

2. By night (let him void them) facing the south, by day and during either twilight (let him void them) facing the north.

3. (He must) not (void them) on earth which has not been previously covered (with grass and the like);

4. Nor on a ploughed field;

5. Nor in the shade of a tree (fit to be used for sacrifices);

6. Nor on barren soil; 7. Nor on a spot abounding in fresh grass; 8. Nor where there are worms or insects; 9. Nor in a ditch (or hole, or upon the roots of a tree); 10. Nor on an ant-hill; 11. Nor on a path; 12. Nor on a public road; 13. Nor in a place previously defiled by another person; 14. Nor in a garden; 15. Nor in the vicinity of a garden or of (a reservoir of) water; 16. Nor on ashes; 17. Nor on coal; 18. Nor on


6. Nand. infers from the use of the particle ëk, that the following places (mentioned by Manu IV, 46, according to Nand.'s reading, which differs from the traditional one) are also included in this prohibition: a river, a mountain, the ruins of a temple, and the top of a mountain.

17. Nand. infers from the use of the particle ëk, and from a text of Yama, that chaff and potsherds are also intended here.
cow-dung; 19. Nor in a fold for cattle; 20. Nor in the air; 21. Nor in water;
22. Nor facing the wind, or fire, or the moon, or the sun, or a woman, or a (father or other) Guru, or a Brâhmaṇa;
23. Nor without having enveloped his head;
24. Having cleaned his hindparts with a clod of earth, or with a brick, (or with wood or grass,) and seizing his organ (with his left, after having removed his garment), he must rise and clean himself with water and earth (previously) fetched for the purpose, so as to remove the smell and the filth.
25. The organ must once be cleaned with earth, the hindparts three times, the one hand (the left) ten times, both hands together seven times, and both feet together three times.
26. Such is the purification ordained for householders; it is double for students; treble for hermits; and quadruple for ascetics.

LXI.
1. A householder must not use 1 Palâsa-wood for cleaning his teeth.
2. Nor (must he use the twigs of) the Śleshmān-

---

20. 'I. e. in an apartment on the roof or in any other such place.' (Nand.)

LXI. 1. Ápast. I, 11, 32, 9; Gaut. IX, 44.
1. 'Literally 'eat,' adyāt. In 16 and 17 the synonymous verbs bhaksh and ar are used. Nevertheless it can hardly be doubted that both of the two modes of cleaning the teeth, which appear to have been customary, are indicated in this chapter: the one consisting in brushing them with little sticks or twigs provided with a brush (see 16), the other in chewing twigs. Unfortunately the reading of Nand.'s gloss on the term sakûraka in 16 is uncertain.
2. Regarding the Vibhîtaka tree, see Dr. Bühler's Kashmir Report, p. 8.
taka (or Selu) plant, nor of the soap plant, nor of the Vibhītaka (or Kalidruma) tree, nor of the Dhava plant, nor of the Dhâmani tree (for that purpose).

3. Nor (the twigs of) the Bandhûka (or Bandhu-gîvakā) plant, nor of the Nirgundī shrub, nor of the Sigru, Tilva, and Tinduka trees.

4. Nor (the twigs of) the Kovidāra (Yugapat-traka), Saml, Pîlu (Gudāphala), Pippala (holy fig-tree), Înguda, or Guggula trees;

5. Nor (the twigs of) the Pâribhâdraka (Sakrapâdapa), or tamarind, or Mokaka, or Semul trees, nor those of the hemp plant;

6. Nor sweet plants (such as liquorice sticks);

7. Nor sour plants (such as Āmlikâs);

8. Nor twigs that have withered on the stem;

9. Nor perforated (or otherwise faulty) wood;

10. Nor stinking wood;

11. Nor smooth wood;

12. He must not (use the sticks) facing the south or west.

13. He must use them facing the north or east;

14. He may use (the twigs of) the banyan or Asana trees, or of the Arka plant, or of the Khadira, or Karaṅga, or Badara (jujube), or Sal, or Nimb trees, or of the Arimedha shrub, or of the Apâmârga or Malatī plants, or of the Kakubha or Bèl trees;

15. Or of the Kashâya tree, or of the Tikta or Kaṭuka plants.

16. Before sunrise let him silently clean his teeth with a stick, which must be as thick as the top of the little finger, provided with one end that may be chewed (or 'with a brush'), and twelve Âṅgulas long.
17. Having washed¹ and used the stick for cleaning the teeth, he must take care to leave it in a clean place; he must never make use of it on the day of new moon (or on the day of full moon).

LXII.

1. The part at the root of the little finger of a twice-born man is called the Tirtha sacred to Pragâpati.

2. The part at the root of the thumb is called the Tirtha sacred to Brahman.

3. The part at the tops of the fingers is called the Tirtha sacred to the gods.

4. The part at the root of the forefinger is called the Tirtha sacred to the manes.

5. Let him sip water, which has not been put to the fire and is free from foam (and bubbles), which has not been poured out by a Sûdra (or other uninitiated person), or by a man who has one hand only, and which has no saline flavour¹; and (let him sip it) in a clean place, duly seated, placing (his right hand) between his knees, facing the east or the north (or the north-east), attentively regarding the water, and in a cheerful mood.

6. Let him sip water thrice with the Tirtha sacred

¹It must be washed both before and after using it. (Nand.)


¹Nand. observes that this chapter and the preceding one follow in order upon Chapter LX, because the purificatory rite described at the end of the latter is immediately followed by the Ådamana (sipping of water), and then by the Dantadhâvana (cleaning the teeth), both of which acts, however, have to be performed on other occasions also, as after a meal, &c.

¹The term kshâra, 'saline flavour,' includes bad or spoiled water of any kind, according to Nand.
to Brahman (or with the Tirthas sacred to the gods and to Pragâpati respectively).

7. Let him wipe his lips twice (with the root of his thumb).

8. Let him touch the cavities (above his navel)\(^1\), his head, and his breast with water.

9. By water which reaches either their heart, or their throat, or their palate respectively, members of the three twice-born castes are purified each in his turn; a woman and a Sûdra are purified by water which has once touched their palate.

**LXIII.**

1. In order to obtain wealth and for the sake of security he shall apply to a lord.

2. He must not travel alone; 3. Nor with wicked companions; 4. Nor with Sûdras; 5. Nor with enemies; 6. Nor too early in the morning; 7. Nor too late in the evening; 8. Nor in the twilight; [9. Nor at noon; 10. Nor near water:] 11. Nor in too great a hurry; 12. Nor at night;

---

8. ¹ See XXIII, 51.


1. 'A lord' (īśvara) means a king or another rich man, in his own country, or in another country. (Nand.) See also Dr. Bühler's note on Gaut. IX, 63, where the same Sûtra occurs.

9, 10. Sûtras 9 and 10 are wanting in Dr. Bühler's MS.
13. Nor (let him travel) without cessation with (horses or other) beasts of draught that are quite young, diseased, or (otherwise) afflicted;

14. Nor with such as are deficient in limb; 15. Nor with weak ones; 16. Nor with young bulls; 17. Nor with untrained animals.

18. He must not appease his hunger and allay his thirst without having first given grass and water to the animals.

19. He must not stop at a place where four ways meet; 20. Nor at night at the root of a tree; 21. Nor in an empty house; 22. Nor upon a meadow; 23. Nor in a stable;

24. Nor (must he stand) on hair, on the husks of grain, on potsherds, on bones, on ashes, or coal;

25. Nor on seeds of the cotton plant.

26. When he passes by a place where four ways meet, let him turn his right side towards it.

27. And let him do the same in passing by the image of a deity;

28. And in passing by well-known large trees.

29. After having seen a fire, or a Brâhmaṇa (with his turban on), or a public prostitute, or a jar filled (with water), or a looking-glass, or an umbrella, or a flag, or a banner¹, or a Bôl tree, or a lid (or platter), or a palace built in the shape of a certain diagram (or in the form of a quadrangle without a western gate)²;

29. ¹'More precisely the term patâkâ signifies "a staff, by which a piece of cloth torn in the middle is fastened."' (Nand.) —

²'The particle ḷa is added at the end of this enumeration in order to include in it perfumes, lamps, and other objects mentioned in a Smṛiti.' (Nand.)
30. Or a fan, or a chowrie, or a horse, or an elephant, or a goat, or a cow (having a calf), or sour milk, or milk, or honey, or white mustard;

31. Or a lute, or sandal-wood, or a weapon, or fresh cow-dung, or fruit, or a flower, or a fresh pot-herb, or Gorośanâ, or blades of Dûrvâ grass;

32. Or a turban, or ornaments, or jewels, or gold, or silver, or clothes, or a seat, or a vehicle, or (raw) meat;

33. Or a golden vase, or cultivated land which is being carried away (by a stream), or a single (bull or other) piece of cattle tied with a rope, or an unmarried damsel (clad in white), or a (boiled) fish, (let him turn his right side towards them and) go on.

34. Having seen one intoxicated, or insane, or deformed, he must turn back;

35. (Also, if he has seen) one who has vomited, or one who has been purged, or one who has had his head shorn, or one who wears all his hair tied in one knot, or a dwarf;

30. 'The particle ːa, which is added at the end of this Sūtra, refers to a king, his ministers, his domestic priest, &c., as indicated in a Smṛiti passage.' (Nand.)

31. Nand. infers from another Smṛiti passage that ːa here refers to a crow and to a Sūdra or workman with his tools.

32. Nand. here refers ːa to shells and other objects mentioned in a Smṛiti.

33. Nand. here refers ːa to a dead body and other objects enumerated in a Smṛiti.

34. The enumeration of auspicious objects in Sūtras 29–33 is followed by an enumeration of inauspicious objects in Sūtras 34–38. (Nand.)

35. The particle ːa refers to enemies, outcasts, and others mentioned in a Smṛiti. (Nand.)
36. Or (if he has seen) one wearing a dress (of a reddish-yellow colour) dyed with Kashāya\(^1\), or an ascetic, or one smeared\(^2\) (with ashes)\(^3\);

37. Or (if he has seen) oil, or sugar, or dry cow-dung, or fire-wood, or grass (other than Kusa or Dūrvā grass), or Palāsa (and other leaves, other than betel leaves), ashes, or coal\(^1\);

38. Or (if he has seen) salt, or a eunuch, or (the spirituous liquor called) Āsava, or an impotent man, or cotton cloth, or a rope, or an iron chain for the feet, or a person with dishevelled hair.

39. (If he sees), while about to begin a journey, a lute, or sandal-wood, or fresh pot-herbs, or a turban, or an ornament, or an unmarried damsel, he must praise them\(^1\).

---

36. \(^1\) Nand. refers kāshāyin, 'wearing a dress dyed with Kashāya,' to 'persons who wear the marks of an order to which they do not belong.' But this interpretation is evidently wrong. Among the sects that wear a dress dyed with Kashāya, Buddhists are the most prominent, but it must not be overlooked that there are other important sects also, as e.g. the Svāminārāyas of the present day, who wear such dresses. --\(^2\) The term maśina, 'smeared,' no doubt refers to a Saiva sect. Nand. interprets it by 'Kāpālikas and the like;' but more probably the Pārupatas are meant. --\(^3\) The particle \(à\) further refers to the humpbacked, deaf, and blind, to barren women, and to naked and hungry persons, as stated in a Smṛiti. (Nand.)

37. \(^1\) Nand. refers the particle \(à\) in this Sūtra to hares, naked mendicants, snakes, iguanas, lizards, skins, and other inauspicious objects and persons enumerated in a Smṛiti.

38. Nand. argues from a passage of Nārada (not found in his Institutes), that the particle \(à\) here refers to persons mounted upon an ass, camel, or buffalo, and others.

39. \(^1\) Nand. mentions two explanations of this Sūtra: 1. he must eulogise the above objects or persons if he sees them; 2. he must gladden persons, who have those objects or persons with them, with presents and the like.
40. He must not (knowingly) step on (or step over, or stand on) the shade of the image of a deity, of a (learned) Brâhmaṇa, of a spiritual teacher, of a brown (bull or other animal), or of one by whom the initiatory ceremony at a Soma-sacrifice has been performed.

41. Nor (must he step) on anything spat out or vomited, nor on blood, nor on faeces or urine, nor on water used for ablutions.

42. He must not step over a rope to which a calf (or a cow) is tied.

43. He must not walk quickly in the rain.

44. He must not cross a river without need;

45. Nor without having previously offered an oblation of water to the gods and to the manes;

46. Nor (swimming) with his arms;

47. Nor in a leaky vessel.

48. He must not stand on the bank (of a river).

49. He must not gaze into a pool.

50. He must not cross it (by swimming through it, or in any other way).

51. Way must be made for an aged man, for one carrying a burden, for a king, for a Snâtaka (of any of the three kinds 1), for a woman, for a sick person, for a bridegroom, and for one riding in a carriage. Among those, should they all meet, a king must be

---

41. According to Nand., the particle và, 'or,' is added at the end of this Sûtra, in order to include an officiating priest and others mentioned by Yâgñavalkya I, 152.

51. 1 The Snâtaka (see XXVIII, 42, note) is of three kinds: 1. the Vidyâsnâtaka, who has studied the Vedas; 2. the Vratasnâtaka, who has performed the Vratas or vowed observances of a student; 3. the Udbhayasnâtaka, who has completed both the Vedas and the Vratas. (Nand.) See the Gṛhsta-sûtras.
honoured by the rest (excepting the Snātaka); but the king himself must show honour to a Snātaka.

LXIV.

1. He must not bathe in another man's pool;
2. In cases of distress (if there is no other water at hand) he may bathe (in another man's pool), after having offered up five (or seven, or four) lumps of clay and (three jars with) water.
3. (He must not bathe) during an indigestion;
4. Nor while he is afflicted (with a fever or other illness);
5. Nor without his clothes; 6. Nor at night;
7. Unless it be during an eclipse; 8. Nor in the twilight.
9. He must bathe early in the morning, when he beholds the east reddening with the rays of the (rising) sun.
10. After having bathed, he must not shake his head (in order to remove the water from his hair);
11. And he must not dry his limbs (with his hand or with a cloth);
12. Nor must he touch any oily substance.

5. The term nagma, literally 'naked,' has to be taken in its widest sense here. According to Bhrigū and Gobhiḷa it includes, besides one wholly undressed, 'one without his upper garment, one who has dirty clothes on, one clad in lower garments of silk only, one who wears double clothing or even a greater number of clothes, one who wears a small piece of cloth over the pudenda only,' &c. (Nand.) See also M. IV, 129.
13. He must not put on again the garment which he wore before, without its having been washed.

14. After having bathed, he must cover his head with a turban and put on two garments washed (by himself).

15. He must not converse, (after having bathed,) with barbarians, low-caste persons, or outcasts.

16. He must bathe in cascades, ponds dug by the gods, and lakes.

17. Stagnant water is more pure (and purifies more effectually) than water taken out (of a well or the like); the water of a spring is more pure than that of a tank; the water of a river is more pure than the former; water collected by (Vasishtha or some other) devout sage is even more pure; but the water of the Ganges is the purest of all.

18. After having removed the dirt by means of earth and water, and after having dived under water and returned (to the bank of the river), he must address the bathing-place with the three Mantras (beginning with the words), 'Ye waters are,' with the four Mantras (beginning with the words),

---

1. Ushñisha, 'a turban,' here denotes a bandage used for drying the head, which is wrapped round the head and closely tied together. — I. e. an upper and an under garment. (Nand.)

16. The term devakhâta, 'ponds dug by the gods,' refers to Pushkara and other holy bathing-places. (Nand.) See below LXXXV.

17. Nand. cites Vasishthapräkṣī and Visvāmitrapräkṣī as instances of holy bathing-places of this description.

18. Nand. refers this and the following Sûtras to a midday bath, because a verse, which he quotes, forbids the use of earth (in order to clean one's self with it) in the morning bath. But it seems to follow from 35 and 42, that all the rules given in this chapter refer to that bath, which must be taken at sunrise every day. — Rig-
'The golden-coloured (waters)\textsuperscript{3},' and with (the one Mantra beginning with the words), 'Carry away (all) that, O ye waters\textsuperscript{4}.'

19. Then he must dive under water and mutter the Aghamarshana three times;

20. Or (he must mutter three times the Mantra which begins with the words), 'That most exalted step of Vishnu;'

21. Or the Drupadā Sāvitrī (which begins with the words, 'Like one released from a post');

22. Or the Anuvāka (which begins with the words), 'They get their minds ready;'

23. Or the Purushasûkta.

24. After having bathed, he must feed the gods and the manes, while standing in the water with his wet clothes on.

25. If (being unable to remain in water after having bathed) he has changed his dress, (he must feed the gods and the manes,) after having crossed the bathing-place (and reached the bank).

26. (But) he must not wring his bathing-dress till he has satisfied the gods and the manes.

27. After having bathed\textsuperscript{1} and sipped water, he must sip water (once more) according to the rule.

28. He must offer (sixteen) flowers to Purusha,

veda X, 9, 1–3, &c. — Tatt. Samh. V, 6, 1, 1–2, &c.— Rigveda I, 23, 22, &c.

20. Rig-veda I, 22, 20, &c.


22. Rig-veda V, 81, &c.

24. 'The use of the particle \textit{ka} indicates that he must anoint himself after having bathed.' (Nand.)

27.\textsuperscript{1} This expression refers back to the whole proceeding described above, up to the wringing of the bathing-dress. (Nand.)
while muttering the Purushasūkta, one with each verse.

29. Afterwards (he must offer) a libation of water.

30. He must first offer one to the gods with the Tīrthā sacred to the gods.

31. Then he must offer another to the manes with the Tīrthā sacred to the manes.

32. In offering the latter he must first of all feed (the manes of) his next of kin (such as his father, mother, maternal grandfather, uncles, brothers, &c.)

33. After that (he must feed) his relatives (such as a sister's son, a father-in-law, a brother-in-law, &c.) and distant kinsmen (such as the sons of his father's sisters and of his mother's sisters).

34. Then (he must feed) his (deceased) friends.

35. According to the above rule he must bathe every day.

36. After having bathed, he must mutter as many purifying Mantras as possible.

37. And he must mutter the Gāyatrī even more often (than other Mantras);

38. And the Purushasūkta.

39. There is nothing more sublime than those two (prayers).

40. One who has bathed is thereby entitled to perform the offerings to the Visvedevās and to the manes, to mutter sacred texts, and to exercise the duty of hospitality, as prescribed by law.

30, 31. See LXII, 3, 4.

37, 38. 'Or the meaning of these two Sūtras is, that the Gāyatrī and the Purushasūkta always have to be muttered besides the other Mantras.' (Nand.)

40. Nand. refers the term vidhinodite to a separate duty, that
41. Distress and misfortune, bad dreams and evil thoughts are taken from him even who only sprinkles himself with water (no matter from where it comes): that is the law.

42. He who regularly takes the prescribed bath (every morning), does not experience the tortures of Yama’s hell. By the regular bath criminals even obtain their absolution.

LXV.

1. Now then, after having duly bathed, and duly washed his hands and feet, and duly sipped water, he must worship Bhagavat Vāsudeva (Vishnū), who is without beginning and end, before an idol or on the sacrificial ground.

2. Having called up in his mind (Vishnū to life, with the Mantra)1, ‘The two Āsvinś possess life, may they (give you life),’ and having invited (Vishnū) with the Anuvāka (beginning with the words), ‘They get their minds ready,2’ he must worship him with his knees, his hands, and his head.3

of worshipping the gods; the particle ā to the propitiation of the planets by sacrifices and other such duties; and the particle tathā to optional acts, such as the gift of a cow to a Brāhmaṇa, and the like. But this is certainly a too extensive interpretation of the text.

LXV, LXVI. These two chapters treat of the worship of Vishnū. (Nand.)

LXV. 1. The fittest place for worshipping Vishnū is upon a Sālagrāma (ammonite) stone. (Nand.)

2. 1 Kāṭhaka XI, 7. The rendering of this Mantra is conjectural, as the reading is uncertain. Nand. states expressly that it is quoted from the Kāṭhaka.2 See LXIV, 22. 3 The particle ā indicates that he must also worship Vishnū in his mind, and with his speech, by saying, ‘Om, adoration to Bhagavat Vāsudeva.’ (Nand.)
3. With the three Mantras (beginning with the words), 'Ye waters are,' he must (fetch and) announce the Arghya (or water for washing the hands).

4. With the four Mantras (beginning with the words), 'The golden-coloured,' (he must fetch and announce) the water for washing the feet;

5. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the words), 'May the waters of the plain propitiate us,' the water which is to be sipped;

6. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the words), 'Carry away (all) that, O ye waters,' the water destined for the bath;

7. With (the four Mantras, beginning with the words, 'Proud) of the chariot, of the poles, the hero,' unguents and ornaments;

8. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the words), 'A youth, splendidly arrayed,' a garment;

9. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the word), 'Blooming,' a flower;

10. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the

---

3, 4. See LXIV, 18.

5. This Mantra is found Atharva-veda I, 6, 4; XIX, 2, 2; Taitt. Áraṇy. VI, 4, 1. Nand. states that it is kāśākhāya, from the Sākhā of the Kāṭhās; but I have not found it in the Berlin MS. of the Kāṭhaka, the only complete MS. in existence of that work.

6. See LXIV, 18.

7. This Mantra also belongs to the Kāṭhā school, according to Nand. It is not found in the MS. of the Kāṭhaka, but it occurs in the Taitt. Brāhm. II, 7, 7, 2. The above translation is in part according to Sāyana's Commentary on the Taitt. Brāhm.

8. Rig-veda III, 8, 4, &c.

9. Taitt. Samh. IV, 2, 6, 1; Kāṭh. XVI, 13; Atharva-veda VIII, 7, 27. Nand. says that it is a Taźtīrīya Mantra.

words), 'Thou art murderous (dhûr), slay (dhûrva) (the slayer),' incense (dhûpa);
11. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the words), 'Thou art splendour and light,' a lamp;
12. With (the one Mantra, beginning with the words, 'I have praised) Dadhikrâvan,' a Madhuparka (honey-mixture);
13. With the eight Mantras (beginning with the word), 'Hiranyagarbha,' an offering of (other) eatables.
14. A chowrie, a fan, a looking-glass ¹, an umbrella, a (palanquin or other) vehicle, and a (throne or other) seat, all these objects he must announce (and place before) the god (Vishnu), muttering the Gâyatrl (at the same time).
15. After having thus worshipped him, he must mutter the Purushasûkta. After that, he who wishes to obtain eternal bliss must make oblations of clarified butter, while reciting the same hymn.

LXVI.

1. He must not make an oblation to the gods or to the manes with water collected at night.
2. He must not give any other fragrant substance than sandal, or musk, or (fragrant) wood (of the odoriferous Devadâru tree), or camphor, or saffron, or the wood of the Gâtîphala tree;
3. Nor a garment dyed with indigo;

¹ Vâgas. Samh. XXII, 1. Nand. states that this Mantra belongs to the Sâkhâ of the Kâthas; but I have not met with it in the Kâthaka.
12. Rig-veda IV, 39, 6, &c.
13. Rig-veda X, 121, 1-8; Kâth. XL, 1, &c.
14. Thus the term mâtrâ is interpreted by Nand.
4. Nor an ornament made of factitious jewels or gold;
5. Nor (a flower) having a nasty odour;
6. Nor one that has no odour at all;
7. Nor one grown upon a thorny plant.
8. But he may give even a flower grown upon a thorny plant, if it is white and sweet-smelling.
9. He may give even a red flower, if it is saffron, or a water-flower (such as the red lotus).
10. (He must) not (give) any animal substance (such as claws or horns) for the incense.
11. (He must) not (give) anything but clarified butter or oil for the lamp.
12. (He must) not (give) forbidden food at the offering of eatables;
13. Nor the milk of goats or female buffalos, though it is lawful food (otherwise);
14. Nor the flesh of five-toed animals, of fishes, and of boars.
15. Fully prepared for the sacrifice and pure, he must announce (and offer up to Vishnu) all the oblations, with his mind fixed upon the deity, with a cheerful heart, and free from precipitation or anger.

LXVII.

1. After having swept the place around the (kitchen) fire, sprinkled it with water all around,
strewed (Kusa grass) all around, and sprinkled (the latter) with water all around, he must take out of all dishes the uppermost part and offer it:

2. To Vásudeva, to Sańkarshana, to Pradyumna, to Aniruddha, to Purusha, to Satya, to Aśyuta, to Vásudeva.

3. Afterwards (he must offer twelve burnt-oblataions) to Agni, to Soma, to Mitra, to Varuṇa, to Indra, to Indra and Agni united, to the Visvedevās, to Pragāpati, to Anumati, to Dhanvantari, to Vâstoshpati, and to Agni Svishṭakṛit (the god of the fire who causes the proper performance of the sacrifice).

4. Then let him make a Bali-offering with that which has been left of the dishes.

5. To (the serpent demons) Taksha and Upa-taksha,

6. (Strewing the two Balis) on both sides of the fire, to the east of it (on the north-eastern side first, and on the south-eastern side afterwards).

14; M. III, 84–94; Y. II, 103–108; Āpast. II, 2, 3; II, 2, 4, i–i3; Gaut. V, 10–18. — 33–46. Āsv. I, 24; Gobh. IV, 10; Pār. II, 9, 12–16; I, 3; Sañkh. II, 15–17; M. III, 99, 100, 102, 103, 111–118; Y. I, 107–113; Āpast. II, 2, 4, 11–20; II, 3; II, 4; Gaut. V, 21–45. Regarding the parallel passages of the Kâhaka and Mânava Grñhya-sûtras, see the Introduction. This chapter treats of the Vaisvadeva sacrifice. (Nand.)

1. Nand. infers from a text of Saunaka, that the particle aha points to the recitation of the Purushasûkta as an initiatory ceremony.

2. Regarding this Sûtra, see the Introduction. The oblations to be offered are eight in number, one for each invocation.

3. Devapâla, in his Commentary on the corresponding section of the Kâhaka Grñhya-sûtra, states that the deities to whom burnt-oblataions are offered (Sûtra 3) shall be invoked with the word svâhā, 'hail!' and those for whom Bali-offerings are strewed upon the ground, with the word namah, 'adoration.'

6–8. These three Sûtras have been translated in accordance
7. (Then let him offer other seven Balis) to all (the seven Ishṭakâs or goddesses of the bricks of the altar, also to the east of the fire, while pronouncing the Mantras), ‘Thy name is Ambâ; thy name is Dulâ; thy name is Nitatinâ (Nitatinir); thy name is Kupûnlkâ (and so on).’

8. (He must offer four Balis with the Mantras), ‘O Nandînî; O Subhâgâ; O Sumanâgâl; O Bhadrâṅkârī,’ (placing the Balis) in the corners (beginning with the south-eastern corner and proceeding) towards the south.

9. (He must place two Balis), addressed to Sṛṇa Hirânyakesṭi and to the trees, near the firm pillar.

10. (He must place two Balis), addressed to Dharma and Adharma and to Mrītyu, near the door.

11. (He must place one Bali), addressed to Varuna, in the water-jar.

12. (With the words, ‘Adoration be) to Vishnu,’ (he must place one Bali) in the mortar.

13. (With the words, ‘Adoration be) to the Ma-ruts,’ (he must place one Bali) on the mill-stone.

14. (In the apartment) on the roof (let him place two Balis) addressed to Vaisrâvâna (Kubera) the king, and to all created beings.

15. (With the words, ‘Adoration be) to Indra and to Indra’s ministers,’ (he must place two Balis) in the eastern part (of the house).

with Devapâla’s readings and his remarks on them. Nand. wrongly refers the four names mentioned in 7 to the four quarters of the globe. The Mantra quoted in 7 is found complete in the Kâshâka, XL, 4, and, in a modified form, in the Taitt. Saṃh. IV, 4, 5, 1.

9. 1‘I.e. the pillar which supports the house.’ (Nand.) It appears from an analogous passage of the Mânava Grīhya-sûtra, that a pillar in the middle of the house is meant.
16. (With the words, 'Adoration be) to Yama and to Yama's ministers,' (he must place two Balis) in the southern part.

17. (With the words, 'Adoration be) to Varuna and to Varuna's ministers,' (he must place two Balis) in the western part.

18. (With the words, 'Adoration be) to Soma and to Soma's ministers,' (let him place two Balis) in the northern part.

19. (With the words, 'Adoration be) to Brahman and to Brahman's ministers,' (let him place two Balis) in the centre (of the house).

20. (Let him throw) in the air (a Bali) addressed to Ākāsa (the air).

21. (With the words, 'Adoration be) to the goblins roaming by day,' (let him place a Bali) on the sacrificial ground.

22. (With the words, 'Adoration be to the goblins) roaming by night,' (let him offer a Bali in the same place at the Vaisvadeva which takes place) at night.

23. Afterwards he must offer upon blades of Kusa grass, having the points turned towards the south, balls of rice to his father, to his grandfather, and to his great-grandfather, to his mother, to his grandmother, and to his great-grandmother, proclaiming at the same time their name and race (and adding the word Svadhâ, 'reverence').

24. Along with the balls of rice let him give ointments, flowers, incense, eatables, and the like.

25. After having fetched a jar with water, let him

24. 'And the like' means betel and the sacrificial fee for the Brāhmaṇas.' (Nand.)

25. This has to be done with the words, svastītvam brūhi, 'say
cause a Brāhmaṇa to say the benediction (and give him the jar).

26. (The share) of dogs, crows, and Svapākas let him strew upon the earth.

27. And let him give (a mouthful of food as) alms.

28. By honouring guests he obtains the highest reward.

29. Let him assiduously honour a guest who arrives in the evening (after the Vaisvadeva is over).

30. Let him not suffer a guest to stay at his house unfed.

31. As the Brāhmaṇas are lords over all other castes, and as a husband is lord over his wives, a guest is the lord of a householder.

32. By honouring a guest he obtains heaven.

33. (One who has arrived as) a guest and is obliged to turn home disappointed in his expectations, takes away from the man, to whose house he has come, his religious merit, and throws his own guilt upon him.

34. A Brāhmaṇa who stays for one night only as a guest, is called atithi (a guest); because he does not stay for a long time, therefore is he termed atithi.

---

the benediction.’ (Nand.) The benediction, according to Devapāla, consists of the Purushasūkta, the Kanikrada (Vāgas. Samh. XIII, 48), and other Mantras.

27. According to Nand., who argues from a passage of Bauṭhāyana, the particle ka implies that he should feed Brāhmaṇas also.

33. This proverb is also found in the Mahābhārata XII, 6995, in the Hitopadera I, 56 (64 ed. Johnson), and in the Mārkandeyapurāṇa XXIX, 31. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 134.

34. Atithi in this derivation is supposed to mean ‘one who does not stay for a whole tithi or lunar day.’
35. Let him not consider a Brâhmaṇa fellow-vil-
lager or an acquaintance as his guest, though he has
come to the house where his wife and his fires are.

36. But if a Kṣhatriya has come to his house in
the way of a guest, let him hospitably entertain him
also, to his heart's desire, after the Brâhmaṇa guests
have eaten.

37. Should a Vaisya or a Sûdra come to his
house as guests, he must even give food to them
(at the same time and) with his servants, and treat
them with kindness (but not like guests in the
proper sense of the term).

38. To (members of) other castes (such as Mûr-
dhâvasiktas) and to friends (or relatives or) other
such persons, who have come to his house out of
attachment, let him offer such food as happens to be
there, to the best of his power, at the time when his
wife takes her meal.

39. One recently married (but not yet delivered
to her husband), an unmarried damsel, a sick
woman, and a pregnant woman: to these let him
give food unhesitatingly, even before his guests.

40. The foolish man who eats first himself, with-
out having offered food to those (persons that have
been mentioned), is not aware that he will himself be
food (after death) for dogs and vultures.

41. After the Brâhmaṇas, (the Kṣhatriyas who
have come as guests), the friends and relatives, (the
parents and others) whom he is bound to maintain,

36. ' This is Kullâka's rendering of the term kâmam (on M.
III, 111). According to Nand., it means that he is at liberty to
feed such guests or no.

38. The wife takes her meal when the husband has eaten.
(Nand.)
(and the servants) have made their repast, let man and wife eat the leavings themselves.

42. Having shown honour to the gods, to the manes, to men, to those whom he is bound to maintain, and to the household deities (as well as to dogs, crows, and the rest), let a householder enjoy that which has been left.

43. He who cooks food for himself only, eats nothing but sin: for that alone is considered as fit food for the virtuous, which is left, after the (customary) oblations have been offered.

44. By the daily recitation of the Veda, by the Agnihotra, by sacrificing, and by austerity, a householder does not obtain such excellent places of abode (after death) as by honouring a guest.

45. Whether he arrives in the evening or in the morning, he must offer a seat and water to his guest, and food, to the best of his ability, after having shown him marks of honour as the law directs.

46. By giving (to a guest) shelter, a bed, ointments for his feet, and a lamp: for each of these gifts singly he reaps the same reward as for the gift of a cow.

LXVIII.

1. He must not eat during an eclipse of the moon or of the sun.

45. For the rules regarding the reception of a guest, see Åsv. I, 24, and the other Gṛhya-sūtras; M. III, 119 seq., and the other Dharmasūtras.

2. He shall eat, after having previously bathed, when the eclipse is over.

3. If (the sun or moon) have set before the eclipse was over, he must bathe, and on the next day he may eat again, after having seen (the sun or moon rise).

4. A cow or a Brâhmâna having met with a calamity, he must not eat on that day.

5. If the king has met with an accident, (he must not eat on that day).

6. An Agnihotrin, who is absent on a journey, must eat at that time of the day when the Agnihotra is supposed to be over.

7. He may also eat at that time of the day when the Vaisvadeva is supposed to be over.

8. On the days of new and full moon (he may eat at that time) when he supposes the sacrifice customary on those days to have been performed.
9. He must not eat during an indigestion;
10. Nor at midnight; 11. Nor at noon;
12. Nor in the twilight;
13. Nor dressed in wet clothes;
14. Nor without his upper garment;
15. Nor naked;
16. Nor in water (nor in a boat);
17. Nor lying stretched out on the back;
18. Nor sitting on a broken stool;
19. Nor reclining on a couch;
20. Nor from a broken dish;
21. Nor having placed the food on his lap;
22. Nor (having placed the food) upon the ground;
23. Nor from the palm of his hand.
24. That food which has been seasoned with salt (after having been cooked) he must not eat.
25. He must not abuse children (eating in the same row with him).
26. (He must) not (eat) dainties alone.
27. (He must) not (eat) substances from which the fat has been extracted.
28. Nor (must he eat) roasted grain in the daytime.
29. At night (he must not eat) anything mixed with sesame-seeds.

9. According to Nand., the use of the particle ā implies a prohibition to eat again, after having partaken of a śrāddha meal.
15. See note on LXIV, 5.
24. Nand., quoting a passage of Vāsishtha (XIV, 28), states the use of the particle ā to imply, that food twice cooked and food cooked in a frying-pan should also be avoided.
27. This rule refers to skimmed milk and to a dough made of ground sesame, from which the oil has been extracted. (Nand.)
30. Nor (must he eat at night) sour milk or ground barley.

31. Nor (must he eat) the leaves of the mountain ebony, or of the banyan, or of the holy fig-tree, or of the hemp plant.

32. (He must) not (eat) without having first given to eat (to the gods and to the Brāhmaṇas);

33. Nor without having made a burnt-offering first;

34. Nor without having sprinkled his feet;

35. Nor without having sprinkled his hands and his face;

36. While having the remains of food on his mouth or hands, he must not take clarified butter.

37. Nor must he look at the moon, or at the sun, or at the stars (while unclean).

38. Nor must he touch his head (while unclean).

39. Nor must he recite the Veda (while unclean).

40. He must eat facing the east;

41. Or facing the south;

42. And after having honoured his food;¹

43. And cheerfully, adorned with a garland of flowers, and anointed with unguents.

¹ Nand. describes the ceremony of 'honouring one's food' as follows: ‘He must first sprinkle the food, while reciting the Gāyatrī and the Vyāhritis (see LV, 10). Then he must sprinkle water all around it, with the Mantra, “Forsooth, I sprinkle righteousness around thee.” After that he must sip water with the Mantra, “Thou art an imperishable basis” (Taitt. Ārany. X, 32, rendered according to Sāyana’s Commentary), and offer up five oblations to Prāna, &c. (see Dr. Bühler’s note on Āpast. II, r, r, 2). Finally he must eat in silence, without blaming the food, and taking care to leave some remnant of it in the dish, and sip water again, with the Mantra, “Thou art an imperishable covering”’ (Taitt. Ārany. X, 35, according to Sāyana).
44. He must not eat up his food completely;
45. Unless it consist of sour milk, or honey, or (clarified) butter, or milk, or ground barley, or meat, or sweetmeats.
46. He must not eat together with his wife, nor in the open air, nor standing, nor in the presence of many (hungry spectators), nor must many eat in the presence of one (hungry spectator).
47. Let him never eat in an empty house, in a house where the sacred fires are preserved, or in a temple dedicated to the gods. Neither must he drink water out of his joined hands, or satiate himself to repletion.
48. Let him not take a third meal (over and above the two regular meals in the mornings and evenings), nor let him ever take unwholesome food. He must eat neither too early, nor too late, and he must take no food in the evening, after having fully satiated himself in the morning.
49. He must not eat bad food (whether injurious to health or otherwise reprehensible), nor from a bad dish (which is similar to the dishes used by barbarians, or which has been defiled by a wicked man eating from it), nor lying on the ground, nor with his feet raised upon a bench, nor sitting on his hams with a cloth tied round his legs and knees.

46. Nand. thinks that this rule refers to those wives only who belong to a lower caste than their husbands.
48. ‘Too early’ means before sunrise; ‘too late’ means immediately before sunset. (Nand.)
LXIX.

1. He must not have connection with his wife on the eighth, or fourteenth, or fifteenth day of the half-month.

2. And (he must avoid connubial intercourse) after having partaken of a Srâddha;

3. And after having given (a Srâddha);

4. And after having been invited to a Srâddha;

5. And while performing a vow of abstinence (such as that to be kept on the day before a Srâddha, or the fast to be observed on the eleventh day of the half-month);

6. And one who has performed the initiatory ceremony of a Soma-sacrifice;

7. And in a temple, in a burial-ground, and in an empty house;

8. And at the root of a tree (or shrub);

9. And in the day-time; 10. And in the twilight;

11. And with one unclean (or in her courses);

12. And while he is unclean himself; 13. And with one anointed with unguents; 14. And being anointed himself; 15. And with one sick; 16. And while he is sick himself.

17. He must not have connection, if he wishes to enjoy a long life, with a woman who has a limb too little, nor with one who has a limb too much, nor with one older than himself, nor with a pregnant woman.

LXIX. 1. M. IV, 128; Y. I, 79. — 9. Âpast. II, 1, 1, 16. — 15. Gaut. IX, 28. The subject of daily duties being absolved, he now goes on to state (in Chapters LXIX, LXX) the rules that must be observed during the night. (Nand.)

4. The invitations to a Srâddha are issued on the day before it is to take place. (Nand.)
LXX.

1. He must not sleep with his feet wet;
2. Nor facing the north or the west;
3. Nor naked; 4. Nor on wet (fresh) bamboo;
5. Nor in the open air;
6. Nor on a bedstead made of Palâsa-wood;
7. Nor on one made of the wood of five trees;
8. Nor on one made of the wood of a tree which has been split by an elephant;
9. Nor on a bedstead made of the wood of a tree that has been kindled by lightning;
10. Nor on a broken bedstead;
11. Nor on one made of scorched wood;
12. Nor on one made of the wood of a tree that used to be watered with a jar;
13. Nor in a burial-ground, nor in an empty house, nor in a temple;
14. Nor with people who are restless of limb;
15. Nor with women;
16. Nor on grain, nor (in a stable of) cows, nor (on the couch of any of his) Gurus, nor on the fireplace, nor (in a building dedicated to the) gods.
17. He must not sleep while the remnants of


7. Nand. mentions three explanations of this term: 1. a bedstead made of five pieces of wood (or of the wood of five trees); 2. a bedstead made of any of the five kinds of wood enumerated in the Vishnu-purâna; 3. a bedstead made of any of the five kinds of wood enumerated in Sûtras 8–12. The second explanation is inadmissible, because part of the species of wood mentioned in the passage of the Vishnu-purâna referred to is identical with those enumerated in Sûtras 8–12.
food are on his hands or face, nor in the day-time, nor in the twilight, nor upon ashes, nor in a place soiled (by excrements and the like), nor in a wet place, nor on the top of a mountain.

LXXI.

1. Now¹ he must not contemn any one (whether of equal rank, or of higher or lower rank than himself).

¹ This chapter treats of the duties of a Snātaka (see XXVIII, 42, note). The particle atha, 'now,' however, signifies that some of these duties are common to the Snātaka and to the householder, whose special duties have been treated in the previous chapters. (Nand.)
2. He must not mock those who have a limb too little or a limb too much, who are ignorant, or who are poor.

3. He must not serve low people.

4. Let him not engage in work that may keep him from repeating (or teaching) the Veda.

5. Let him wear such a dress as becomes his age,

6. And his sacred knowledge, his descent, his means, and his country.

7. He must not be overbearing.

8. He must constantly consult the holy laws and other (salutary precepts relating to the acquisition of wealth, wisdom, and freedom from disease).

9. He must not wear a worn-out or filthy dress, if he has means (enough to procure a new one).

10. (Even though he lacks firewood or the like necessaries) he must not say to another man, 'I have got none.'

11. He must not wear a garland of flowers which has no smell at all, or an offensive smell, or which is red.

12. Let him wear a garland of water-flowers even though they be red.

13. And (he must wear) a staff made of bamboo;

14. And a jar with water;

15. And a sacrificial string made of cotton thread;

16. And two golden ear-rings.

2. The particle ka refers to ugly persons and the rest, enumerated by Manu IV, 141. (Nand.)

8. The use of the particle ka implies, according to Nand., that his frame of mind and his speech should also be in conformity with his age, &c., as ordained by Manu IV, 18.

13–16. Nand., arguing from texts of Baudhāyana and of Manu (IV, 36), takes the use of the particle ka in Sūtras 13 and 14 to
17. He must not look at the rising sun;  
18. Nor at the setting (sun);  
19. Nor (must he look at the sun) shining through an awning of cloth (under which he is lying).  
20. Nor at the sun reflected in a looking-glass or in water;  
21. Nor at the midday sun;  
22. Nor at the face of any of his Gurus while he is angry;  
23. Nor at his own image reflected in oil or in water;  
24. Nor reflected in a dirty looking-glass;  
25. Nor at his wife eating;  
26. Nor at a naked woman;  
27. Nor at a man in the act of discharging urine (or voiding excrements);  
28. Nor at an elephant (or other dangerous animal) broken loose from the rope that ties him;  
29. Nor at a fight between bulls (or elephants or buffalos) or the like animals, while he is himself standing in a (crowd or any other) place, from which it would be difficult for him to effect his escape;  
30. Nor at one insane;  

imply that a Śnātaka must wear three garments, an under garment, an upper garment, and a mantle, and in Śūtra 16, that he must carry about him a bushel of Kūra grass.

19. This rule appears to refer, likewise, to the custom of suspending, by a tree or a post, an upper garment or a piece of cloth, in order to ward off the rays of the sun.

20. The particle ā here is used, according to Nand., in order to include 'the sun, while it is eclipsed,' as mentioned by Manu IV, 37.

29. 'As shown by ā, a place where arrows, spears, or other missiles are falling down, is also intended here.' (Nand.)
31. Nor at one intoxicated;
32. He must not throw any impure substances into the fire;
33. Nor blood; 34. Nor poison;
35. Neither (must he throw any of those substances) into water.
36. He must not step over a fire.
37. He must not warm his feet (by the fire).
38. He must not wipe (the dirt from his feet) with blades of Kusa grass.
39. He must not wash (his feet) in a vessel of white copper.
40. He must not (wash) one foot with the other.
41. He must not scratch the ground (with a piece of wood or the like).
42. He must not crush clods of earth.
43. He must not cut grass.
44. He must not tear his nails or the hairs (of his beard or others) with his teeth.
45. He must avoid gambling;
46. And the heat of the sun just risen.
47. He must not wear a garment, or shoes, or a garland, or a sacrificial string which had before been worn by another.
48. He must not give advice to a Sûdra;
49. Nor (must he give him) the leavings of his food, nor the residue of an oblation (unless he is his own servant);

46. Besides the above interpretation of the term bâlâtapa, which is proposed by Kullâka also (on M. IV, 69), Nand. mentions two others: 1. the heat of that time of the day when the cows are collected for milking; 2. the heat of the autumn season. The particle â, according to Nand., is used in order to include the smoke of a burning corpse and the other forbidden objects mentioned by Manu IV, 69.
50. Nor (must he give him) sesamum;
51. Nor (must he point out) the sacred law to him;
52. Nor (must he prescribe) a penance (for him for atonement of a sin).
53. He must not scratch his head or his belly with both hands joined.
54. He must not reject sour milk or the Sumanas flower (when offered to him).
55. He must not take off his garland (from his head) himself (but he may cause another to do so).
56. Let him not rouse (a superior) from sleep.
57. He must not (by harsh speeches and the like) render disaffected one who is well affected towards him.
58. He must not speak to a woman in her courses;
59. Nor to barbarians or low-caste persons.
60. When a sacred fire, or an idol, or a Brâhmaṇa is near, he must stretch forth his right hand (from his upper garment).
61. If he sees a cow trespassing upon another man's field, he must not announce it (to the owner of that field).
62. And if he sees a calf sucking (at the udder of a cow, he must not announce it to the owner of the latter).
63. He must not endeavour to please overbearing men (by flattering their pretensions).
64. He must not dwell in a kingdom governed by a Sûdra king;

54. Nand. states that this rule does not contain a vain repetition of the rule laid down above (LVII, 10), as the latter refers to householders and the former to Snâtakas.
65. Nor in one abounding with wicked people;
66. And he must not live (in a kingdom) in which there are no physicians;
67. Nor in one afflicted (with a disease or other calamity).
68. And (he must not stay) long on a mountain.
69. He must not (walk or otherwise) exert himself without a purpose.
70. He must not dance or sing.
71. He must not make a noise by slapping (his left arm, after having placed it upon his right shoulder, with his right hand).
72. He must not make vulgar speeches.
73. He must not tell an untruth.
74. He must not say disagreeable things.
75. He must not strike any one upon a vital part.
76. He must not despise himself if he wishes to enjoy long life.
77. He must often repeat his prayers at each twilight (if he wishes to live long).
78. He must not play with (venomous) serpents or with weapons.
79. He must not touch the cavities of his body without a cause.
80. He must not raise a stick against another man.
81. One who deserves punishment he must strike in order to punish him.
82. (He must strike) him upon his back with a shoot of bamboo or with a rope.

75. 'Others' take this Sutra to mean, that he must not make public another man's misconduct. (Nand.) This interpretation is proposed by Vijnānēśvara, on Yāgñavalkya I, 153.
79. See XXIII, 51.
83. He must take care not to revile a god, a Brāhmana, the Sāstras, or the high-minded (Ṛishis).
84. And (he must avoid) gain and pleasure repugnant to duty.
85. (He must avoid) even lawful acts which may give offence to mankind.
86. On the days of new and full moon let him make a propitiatory offering.
87. He must not cut even grass (on those two days).
88. He must adorn himself (with garlands, sandal, and the like).
89. Thus he must observe established customs.
90. Those customs, which have been explicitly ordained in revealed and in traditional texts, and which are practised by the virtuous, must always be observed by a righteous man with subdued passions.
91. By adhering to established usage he attains to old age; this is the way to obtain that state in the next life which he desires, and imperishable riches, this is the way to destroy the effect of (bodily) marks foreboding future misfortunes.
92. He who observes the usages established among the virtuous, who is a believer in revelation, and free from ill-will, lives a hundred years, even

84. "Or repugnant to the final liberation," as the use of the particle kā implies. (Nand.) See Manu VI, 37.
85. The use of the particle kā, Nand. argues from Manu IV, 176, implies that acts which may cause future pain should also be avoided.
88. The use of the particle kā, according to Nand., implies that he must also observe auspicious rites and established customs, as ordained by Manu IV, 145. The latter injunction is, however, expressly given in the next Sūtra.
though he does not possess any external marks of prosperity.

LXXII.

1. He must persist in keeping his mind and his organs of sense under restraint.

2. Restraint of the mind implies restraint of the senses.

3. One who has acquired complete command over himself, gains this world and the next.

4. One who has no command over himself, reaps no fruit from any of his acts (whether worldly or tending to the acquisition of spiritual merit).

5. Self-restraint is the best instrument of purification; self-restraint is the best of auspicious objects; by self-restraint he obtains anything he may desire in his heart.

6. The man who rides (as it were) in a chariot drawn by his five senses and directed by his mind (as the charioteer), who keeps it on the path of the virtuous, can never be overcome by his enemies (lust, wrath, and greed), unless the horses (unrestrained by the charioteer) run away with the chariot.

7. As the waters (of all streams) are stored up (and reabsorbed) in the ocean, which, though being filled with them, remains unmoved and tranquil, even so that man, in whose mind the passions are stored up (and dissolved), obtains perfect calmness: but not he who strives after the gratification of his desires.

LXXII. 7 = Bhagavad-gītā II, 70. This chapter treats of duties which are common to all the four orders. (Nand.)
LXXIII.

1. One desirous of celebrating a Šrāddha must invite the Brāhmaṇas on the day before (it is to take place).

2. On the next day, in the forenoon, if it falls in the bright half of the month, and in the afternoon, if it falls in the dark half of the month, the Brāhmaṇas, who must have duly bathed and duly sipped water, must be placed by him, in the order of their seniority¹ (or) of their sacred knowledge, upon seats covered with Kusa grass.

3. (He must entertain) two (Brāhmaṇas) facing the east at the Šrāddha of the gods (Visvedevās), and three facing the north at the Šrāddha of the manes;

4. Or one only at each Šrāddha.

5. After having (worshipped the Visvedevās and) offered a burnt-oblation: during the recitation of the first Paṅkaka (pentad) at a Šrāddha repast con-

---

¹ At the Šrāddha of the manes the oldest Brāhmaṇa represents the great-grandfather; the one next to him in age, the grandfather; the youngest of the three, the father of the sacrificer. (Nand.)
sisting of undressed grain or performed for the gratification of a special desire;  
6. At a Śrāddha repast consisting of meat, during the recitation of the second Pañkaka;  
7. At a new moon (Śrāddha), during the recitation of the last Pañkaka;  
8. On the Ashākās (or eighth days) of the (three) dark halves subsequent to the full moon day of the month Āgrahāyana (or Mārgaśīrsha)¹, during the recitation of the first, second, and last Pañkakas respectively;  
9. Likewise, on the Anvashaśakās (or ninth days of the dark halves of those months);  
10. He must invite the manes, after having received permission to do so from the Brāhmaṇas¹.  
11. Having driven away the Yātudhānas by strewing grains of sesame and by reciting the two  

not been traced in the Berlin MS. of the Kāthaka, nor indeed in any other Samhitā of the Veda, but there can be no doubt that they belong to the school of the Kāthas, as nearly all are quoted by their Prātiṇas in the Kāthaka Grīhyasūtra, and given at full in Devapāla’s Commentary on the latter. The above renderings of the Prātiṇas rest upon Devapāla’s interpretations. That the rules in 5 seq. teach the performance of a Śrāddha according to the rites of the Kāthaka school, is confirmed by Nand. in his remarks on 5 seq. and 9 seq.  
5. ¹See LXXVIII.  
8. The days referred to are the eighth days of the dark halves of the months Mārgaśīrsha, Pausha, and Māgha.  
9. ‘And on the Śrāddhas taking place on the seventh day of the dark half, as Śa indicates.’ (Nand.) This statement does not, however, deserve much credit, as such Śrāddhas are neither mentioned in our work nor in the Kāthaka Grīhyasūtra.  
10. ¹‘The permission of the Brāhmaṇas has to be asked with the Mantra, “I shall invite (the manes);” and their answer must be, “Invite them.”’ (Nand.)  
11. The Yātudhānas are a class of demons supposed to disturb
Mantras (the first of which begins with the words),
'May the Asuras go away;'

12. He must invite the manes (with the four Mantras), 'Come near, O ye manes,' 'Conduct them all (here), O Agni,' 'May my (ancestors) come near,' 'This is your (share), O ye manes.' Then let him prepare the water for washing the feet with scented water, which has been mixed up with *Kusa* grass and sesamum, while reciting (the three Mantras), 'Those standing,' 'Speech is imperishable,' and 'What my mother (has sinned),' and offer it (to the Brähmanas); let him prepare the Arghya (or water mixed with *Dūrvā* grass, flowers, &c.) and offer it to them; let him offer to the Brähmanas, to the best of his power, *Kusa* grass, sesamum, clothes, flowers, ornaments, incense, and lamps; let him take food sprinkled with clarified butter; let him look them in the face with the Mantra, 'O ye Âdityas, Rudras, and Vasus;' let him say, 'I will offer an oblation in the fire,' and if the Brähmanas say, 'Offer an oblation,' let him offer three burnt-oblations 2.'

13. After having consecrated the offerings with the Mantras, 'They, who are my ancestors,' 'This is your (share), O ye manes,' and 'This offering;' he must pour (what is left of) the food into such vessels as happen to be there, or (into golden ones at the offering addressed to the Visvedevás and) into silver

the effect of a *Srâddha*. The second Mantra, according to Devapâla, is from the Rig-veda, X, 15, 1.

12. ¹ These two Mantras are also quoted, with slight variations, by *Sâñkhâyana* III, 13, 5.— ² The three burnt-oblations have to be accompanied by the recitation of the three Mantras, 'To Soma accompanied by the manes svadhâ namaḥ; to Yama Ângiras svadhâ namaḥ; to Agni who takes the offerings addressed to the manes svadhâ namaḥ.' (Nand.)
ones (at the offering addressed to the manes), and offer it first to the two Brāhmaṇas facing the east (who have been invited to the Srāddha of the gods).

14. Afterwards he must offer it to the (three) Brāhmaṇas facing the north (who represent his three ancestors, addressing himself) to his father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, (and calling out) their name and race.

15. While the Brāhmaṇas are eating the food, let him mutter (the three Mantras), 'Whatever (trickles down) through my fault,' 'With days and nights,' and 'Whatever (limb) of yours, Agni.'

16. And (let him mutter) the Itihāsa (Epics), Purāṇa (Legends), and Dharmasāstra (Institutes of the Sacred Law).

17. Near the leavings let him deposit upon blades of Kusa grass with the ends turned towards the south one ball of rice for his father, while saying, 'Earth is (like) a spoon, imperishable (satisfaction).'

18. With the Mantra, 'Air is (like) a spoon, imperishable (satisfaction,' let him deposit) a second ball for his grandfather.

19. With the Mantra, 'Heaven is (like) a spoon, imperishable (satisfaction,' let him deposit) a third ball for his great-grandfather.

20. With the Mantra, 'Those ancestors who

14. The formula of this invocation, according to Nand., is this, 'To NN., my ancestor, of the Gotra NN., who is like a Vasu, (I offer) this food, svadhā namaḥ.' The use of the particle ṛa, according to the same, implies that the maternal grandfather and the other maternal ancestors must also be addressed, as ordained below (LXXV, 7).

15. 'A similar Mantra is quoted, Śāṅkh. III, 13, 5.
have died,' let him place a garment (upon the balls).

21. With the Mantra, 'Give us sons, O ye manes,' (let him place) food upon them.

22. With the Mantra, 'Enjoy it, O ye manes, partake of it, each according to his share', let him wipe off the grease from his hands with the ends of the blades.

23. With the Mantra, '(Ye waters) imparting vigour', let him sprinkle the balls to the right with the wet (remainder of the food), and offer the Argha, flowers, incense, unguents, and rice, and other victuals and dainties to the Brâhmanas.

24. And (he must offer them) a jar with water, which has been mixed up with honey, clarified butter, sesamum, and (ointments, oil, and the like).

25. The Brâhmanas having eaten and being satisfied, let him sprinkle the food (as much as has been left by them) and the grass with the Mantra, 'Mayest thou not fail me,' and strew the food near the leavings; and having asked them, 'Are you satisfied?' Is (the Srâddha) finished,' he must first give water for sipping to the Brâhmanas facing the north, and then to those facing the east; and he must sprinkle the place where the Srâddha has been offered (with water, with the Mantra), 'Well sprinkled.' All these rites he must perform while holding blades of sacred grass in his hand.

26. Afterwards he must, while turning his face towards the Brâhmanas facing the east, circumambu-

23. ¹ Vâgasa. Samh. II, 34. — ² The Argha is a respectful offering, the ingredients of which vary.
late them from left to right, with the Mantra, 'What a crow (may have eaten of my offering),' and turn back again; he must honour them with sacrificial fees, to the best of his power, saying, 'May you be satisfied,' and on their answering, 'We are satisfied,' he must address them with the Mantra, 'The gods and the manes.'

27. After having given (to all) water (with the Mantra, 'May the food and water and whatever else I gave you be) imperishable,' (and) calling out their name and race, and having added the Mantra, 'May the Viśvedevās be satisfied,' he must ask, with folded hands, and with an attentive and cheerful mind, the following (benediction) from the Brāhmaṇas facing the east:

28. 'May the liberal-minded in our race increase in number, and may the (study of the) Vedas and our progeny (also increase). May faith not depart from us, and may we have plenty to bestow on the poor.'

29. They shall answer, 'Thus let it be.'

30. (The second half of the benediction shall be as follows), 'May we have plenty of food, and may we receive guests. May others come to beg of us, and may not we be obliged to beg of any one.'

31. After having received this double benediction (through the Brāhmaṇas saying, 'Thus let it be'),

32. He must dismiss the Brāhmaṇas, with the Mantra, 'With all food', after having honoured them according to custom, accompanied them (as far as the limits of his estate), and taken his leave of them.

32. ¹Rig-veda VII, 38, 8.
LXXIV.

1. After having worshipped, on each Ashtakâ, the gods and performed, with vegetables, meat, and cakes respectively, a Srâddha (according to the rules given in the last chapter), he must, on each Anvash-takâ, worship the gods and offer a burnt-oblation in the same way as on the Ashâkâs (i.e. reciting the same three Pañâkas successively), and entertain Brâhmaivas in the same way as (directed) before (in the preceding chapter), in honour of his mother, his paternal grandmother, and his paternal great-grandmother, honour them with presents, accompany them (as far as the limits of his estate), and dismiss them.

2. Then he must dig (six) trenches.

3. On the border of these trenches, to the northeast of them, he must light fires and place balls of rice.

4. On the border of three of the trenches (he must place balls) for the men, and on the border of the other three (he must place balls) for the women.

LXXIV. 1–8. Âsv. II, 5; Gobh. IV, 2; Pâr. III, 3, 10–12; Sânkh. III, 13, 6; M. IV, 150. Regarding the corresponding section of the Kââhaka Grîhya-sûtra, see the Introduction.

1. 1See LXXIII, 8, 9; LXXVI, 1. — 2Nand. considers the use of the particle ka to imply that the father together with the other paternal ancestors, and the maternal grandfather along with the other maternal ancestors, should also be invoked, which would make in all nine ancestors to be invoked. The first part of this observation appears to be correct, but the maternal grandfather and the rest are neither referred to in the following Sûtras, nor in the Kââhaka Grîhya-sûtra.

2. Nand. gives it as his opinion, that nine trenches should be made, three of which are to be for the maternal grandfather, &c. But Sûtra 4 refers to three trenches for the men only, and the Kââhaka Grîhya-sûtra expressly mentions the number of six trenches.
5. He must fill the three trenches for the men with water mixed with food.
6. (He must fill) the three trenches for the women with milk mixed with food.
7. (And he must fill up) each triad of trenches singly with sour milk, meat, and milk.
8. After having filled (the trenches), he must mutter the Mantra, 'May this (food) be imperishable for ye men and for ye women.'

LXXV.

1. He who makes a Srâddha-offering while his father is alive, must offer it to those persons to whom his father offers (his Srâddhas).
2. (If he offers a Srâddha) while both his father and grandfather are alive, (he must offer it to those persons) to whom his grandfather (offers his Srâddhas).
3. While his father, grandfather, and great-grandfather are alive, he must offer no Srâddha at all.
4. He whose father is dead (but whose grandfather is alive), must first of all offer a ball of rice to his father, after that, two balls to the two ancestors coming before his grandfather (or to his great-grandfather and to his fourth ascendant).
5. He whose father and grandfather are dead (but whose great-grandfather is alive), must first offer two balls to those two, and then offer one ball to the grandfather of his grandfather.

7. Nand. renders this Sûtra differently, in accordance with his own theory regarding the number of the trenches.

6. He whose grandfather is dead (but whose father and great-grandfather are alive), must give one ball to his grandfather and two balls to the father and grandfather of his great-grandfather.

7. An intelligent man must offer Şrâddhas to his maternal grandfather, and to the father and grandfather of him, in the same way (as to his paternal ancestors), duly modifying the Mantras. But the Şrâddhas addressed to other relatives, (uncles, brothers, and the like, must be performed) without Mantras.

LXXVI.

1. The (twelve) days of new moon, the three Ash'akâs, the three Anvash'akâs, a Mâgha day (i.e. 'day on which the moon enters the lunar asterism Maghâ'), which falls on the thirteenth of the dark half of the month Praushṭapada, and the two seasons when rice and barley grow ripe (or autumn and spring):

7. The Mantras are those quoted above, in Chapters LXXIII and LXXIV. They have to be modified, i.e. the names of the maternal ancestors must be put in, and the verb &c. of the sentence be altered accordingly. (Nand.)

LXXVI. i. M. III, 122, 273, 281; IV, 150; Y. I, 217, 260; Gaut. XV, 2; Āpast. II, 7, 16, 4–6.

1. Nand. infers from a passage of Ārvalâyana (Grhîya-sûtra II, 4, 3) that Şrâddhas to be offered on the day before each Ash'akâ are also intended here. See, however, note on LXXIII, 9. The same proposes two explanations of the term Mâghî: 1. It has to be separated from the following words, and refers directly to the day of full moon in the month Mâgha, and indirectly to the days of full moon in Ashâdha, Kârttika, and Vairâkha as well, as indicated in a passage of the Brâhma-purâna. 2. It has to be connected with the clause following it. This latter interpretation, on which the rendering given above is based, is supported by Manu (III, 273, 274),
Thus have the regular times for a Srâddha been declared by the lord of creatures. He who fails to perform a Srâddha on those days, goes to hell.

LXXVII.

1. The sun's passage from one sign of the zodiac to another;
2. The two equinoctial points;
3. The two solstitial points particularly;
4. The (Yoga) Vyatipâta;
5. The constellation under which (the sacrificer himself, or his wife, or his son) is born;
6. A time of rejoicing (as, when a son has been born, or another happy event happened):
7. These occasions for a Srâddha the lord of creatures has pronounced optional; a Srâddha which is performed on these occasions gives infinite satisfaction (to the manes).
8. No Srâddha must be performed in the twilight or at night by an intelligent man. A Srâddha may be performed at those times also when an eclipse (of the sun or of the moon) takes place.
9. For a Srâddha which is offered them at the time of an eclipse satisfies the manes, as long as the moon and the stars exist, and procures immense advantages and the satisfaction of all his desires to the sacrificer.

Yâgñavalkya (I, 260), according to the interpretations of Kullûka and Vîgrâhâvâra, and by the Vishnu-sûtra itself (LXXVIII, 52).


4. This is the seventeenth among the twenty-seven Yogas or astrological divisions of the zodiac. (Nand.)

7. The meaning is, that the Srâddhas mentioned in this chapter are naimittika, 'occasional.' (Nand.)
LXXVIII.

1. By performing a Srâddha on Sunday he procures everlasting freedom from disease.

2. (By performing a Srâddha) on Monday he becomes beloved 1.

3. (By performing it) on Tuesday (he procures) success in battle.

4. (By performing it) on Wednesday (he enjoys) all his desires.

5. (By performing it) on Thursday (he acquires) such religious knowledge as he desires.

6. (By performing it) on Friday (he acquires) wealth.

7. (By performing it) on Saturday (he procures) longevity.

8. (By performing it under the Nakshatra or constellation) Krîttikâs (he gains) heaven.


1. Nand. states that the Srâddhas mentioned in this chapter are of the kâmya sort, i.e. ‘offered for the gratification of a special desire.’

2. 'This is Nand.'s interpretation of the term saubhâgyam. It might also be taken in its usual acceptation, as meaning ‘happiness.’

8–35. Those names of the twenty-eight Nakshatras or lunar asterisms, which I have included in parentheses, are from Nand.'s Commentary. Most of the objects which are said to be gained by the Srâddhas mentioned in Sûtras 8–35 are connected etymologically, or through their import, with the names of the particular Nakshatras under which they are performed. Thus the term pushâ, ‘prosperity,’ in Sûtra 13, is etymologically connected with Pushya; the term mitra, ‘friend,’ in 22, is connected with Maitra; the term râgyam, ‘royalty,’ in 23, is connected with Sâkra, the name of that Nakshatra being derived from Sakra, a name of Indra, the king of the gods, &c.
9. (By performing it under the constellation) Rohitā (he obtains) progeny.
10. (By performing it under the constellation) Saumya (or Mrīgasīrśa he procures) the superhuman power of a pious Brāhmaṇa.
11. (By performing it under the constellation) Raudra (or Ādrā he reaps) the fruit of his labours.
12. (By performing it under the constellation) Punarvasu (he procures) land.
13. (By performing it under the constellation) Pushya (or Tishya he procures) prosperity.
14. (By performing it under the constellation) Sārpa (or Āsleshāśa he obtains) beauty.
15. (By performing it under the constellation) Paītrya (or Maṅgā he enjoys) all his desires.
16. (By performing it under the constellation) Bhāgya (or Pūrvaphālgunī) he becomes beloved.¹
17. (By performing it under the constellation) Āryamana (or Uttaraphālgunī he procures) wealth.
18. (By performing it under the constellation) Hasta (he acquires) superiority among his kindred.
19. (By performing it under the constellation) Tvāśṭra (or Kītrā he procures) handsome sons.
20. (By performing it under the constellation) Svāti (he procures) success in trade.
21. (By performing it under the constellation) Visākāhā (he acquires) gold.
22. (By performing it under the constellation) Maitra (or Anurādhā he procures) friends.
23. (By performing it under the constellation) Sākra (or Gyesīthā he procures) royalty.
24. (By performing it under the constellation) Mūla (he procures good results in) agriculture.

¹ See 2, note.
25. (By performing it under the constellation) Āpya (or Pūrvāshādhās he procures) success in sea-voyages.

26. (By performing it under the constellation) Vaisvadeva (or Uttarāshādhās he enjoys) all his desires.

27. (By performing it under the constellation) Abhīgit (he procures) superiority.

28. (By performing it under the constellation) Sravana (he enjoys) all his desires.

29. (By performing it under the constellation) Vāsava (or Dhanishtās he procures success in preparing) salt.

30. (By performing it under the constellation) Vāruna (or Satabhishā he obtains) freedom from disease.

31. (By performing it under the constellation) Āga (or Pūrvabhādrapadā he obtains) copper vessels.

32. (By performing it under the constellation) Āhirbudhnya (or Uttarabhādrapadā he obtains) a house.

33. (By performing it under the constellation) Pausha (or Revatī he acquires) cows.

34. (By performing it under the constellation) Āsvina (or Āsvint he obtains) a horse.

35. (By performing it under the constellation) Yāmya (or Bharant he procures) longevity.

36. (By offering it) on the first day of a lunar fortnight (he procures) a house and handsome wives.

29. 'Lavanam means either 'salt' or 'beauty' or 'medicinal herbs and fruits.' (Nand.)
37. (By offering it) on the second day (he procures) a beautiful daughter (and sons-in-law).
38. (By offering it) on the third day (he enjoys) all his desires.
39. (By offering it) on the fourth day (he procures) cattle.
40. (By offering it) on the fifth day (he procures) handsome sons.
41. (By offering it) on the sixth day (he obtains) success in gaming.
42. (By offering it) on the seventh day (he procures good results in) agriculture.
43. (By offering it) on the eighth day (he procures success in) trade.
44. (By offering it) on the ninth day (he procures) cattle 1.
45. (By offering it) on the tenth day (he procures) horses.
46. (By offering it) on the eleventh day (he procures) sons endowed with the superhuman power of a pious Brâhmaṇa.
47. (By offering it) on the twelfth day (he procures) gold and silver.
48. (By offering it) on the thirteenth day he becomes beloved.
49. (By offering it) on the fifteenth day (he enjoys) all his desires.

---

1 Nand. infers from a passage of Yâmāvalkya (I, 266) that the term 'cattle' here refers to horses and other one-hoofed animals. See, however, the next Sūtra.
2 The term saubhâgyam is stated by Nand. (with reference to Y. I, 264) to denote 'superiority among his kindred,' in this Sūtra. But there is no cogent reason for deviating here from that interpretation of the term which he proposes in his Commentary on Sūtras 2 and 16. See above.
50. For Sråddhas for those who have been killed in battle the fourteenth day is ordained.

51. There are two stanzas on this subject recited by the manes:

52. ‘May that excellent man be born to our race, whosoever he may be, who attentively offers a Sråddha in the rainy season\(^1\) on the thirteenth of the dark half,

53. ‘With milk profusely mixed with honey; and (he who offers such Sråddhas) during the whole month Kārttika and (in the afternoon) when the shadow of an elephant falls towards the east.’

**LXXIX.**

1. He must not perform a Sråddha with water collected at night.

2. On failure of Kusa grass he must employ Kāsa or Dūrvā grass instead.

3. Instead of a garment (he may give) cotton thread.

4. He must avoid (giving) the fring of cloth, though it be of cloth not yet used.

5. And (he must not give) flowers having a nasty odour, or no odour at all, the blossoms of thorny plants, and red flowers.

---

\(^1\) The term pråvri/kâle, ‘in the rainy season,’ probably refers to one month only of the rainy season, the month Bhådrapada or Praushålapada. See above, LXXVI, 1, and M. III, 273, 274, with Kullûka's Commentary; Y. I, 260, with Vîgñånêsvara's Comment.


5. The use of the particle īa implies, according to Nand., who quotes a text in support of his assertion, that the leaves of the Kadamba, Bēl, Ketaka, and Bakula trees, as well as those of the Barbara plant and of the thorn-apple tree, are also included in this prohibition.
6. He may give white and sweet-smelling flowers, even though grown on thorny plants, and aquatic flowers, even though they be red.

7. He must not give marrow or fat instead of a lamp.

8. He may give clarified butter or sesamum-oil.

9. He must not give (the nails or horns) of animals instead of the incense of all kinds (prescribed for a Srāddha).

10. He may give bdellium mixed up with honey and clarified butter.

11. He may give sandal, saffron, camphor, aloe wood, or Padmaka wood instead of an ointment.

12. He must not salt (the dishes) publicly (after they have been cooked).

13. He must not give clarified butter, condiments, or the like (i.e. sour milk, milk, &c.) with his hands.

14. He must use metallic vessels;

15. Especially vessels made of silver.

16. He must place (on the sacrificial ground) vessels made of the horn of the rhinoceros, blankets made of the hair of the mountain-goat, the skin of a black antelope, sesamum, white mustard, unbroken grains, (silver and copper vessels and other) purificatory objects, and (a goat and other animals or objects), by which the demons are kept aloof.

7. 'Or mustard-oil or any other such substance, as ka indicates.' (Nand.)

8. 'Or the juice of plants, as mentioned by Saṅkha, on account of vā.' (Nand.)

13. He must give those liquids with a spoon or similar implement. (Nand.)

16. According to Nand., the particle ka refers to other purificatory things, viz. the following seven, 'milk, water from the Ganges, honey, silken cloth, a grandson, blankets made of the hair of the
17. He must avoid to use pepper, (the onion called) Mukundaka, (the pot-herb called) Bhûstrina, (the leaves, blossoms, or roots of) the Sigru tree, mustard-seeds, (the plant) Nirgundâ, (the fruit or leaves of) the Sâl tree, the plant Suvarkalâ, the (pumpkin-gourd called) Kûshmânâda, the bottle-gourd, the egg-plant, (the plants or pot-herbs called) Pâlakyâ, Upotakt, and Tandulyaka, the herbs of the safflower, the Pindâluka (root), and the milk of female buffalos.

18. And (he must not use the bean called) Râgamâsha, (the lentil called) Masûra, stale food, and factitious salt.

19. Let him avoid wrath.
20. He must not shed a tear.
21. He must not be in a hurry.

22. In offering the clarified butter and other (liquids, such as condiments, sour milk, milk, and the like) he must use metallic vessels, vessels made of the horn of the rhinoceros, and vessels made of the wood of the Phalgu tree.

23. There is a Sloka on this subject:

24. 'That which has been offered in vessels made of gold, or of silver, or of the horn of the rhinoceros, or of copper, or of Phalgu wood, becomes imperishable (and brings infinite reward to the sacrificer).'</n
mountain-goat, and sesamum.' The last two are, however, already contained in the above enumeration.

17. The term 'buffalo's milk' includes here, according to a text quoted by Nand., the milk of sheep, of antelopes, of camels, and of all one-hoofed animals.

18. 'As shown by â, chick-peas and other grains and herbs mentioned in a Smrâti must also be avoided.' (Nand.)

19. 'This rule applies both to the sacrificer and to the guests at a Srâddha.' (Nand.)
LXXX.

1. Sesamum, rice, barley, beans, water, roots, fruits, vegetables, Śyāmāka grain, millet, wild rice, kidney-beans, and wheat satisfy (the manes) for a month;

2. The flesh of fishes (excepting those species that are forbidden), for two months;

3. The flesh of the common deer, for three months;

4. The flesh of sheep, for four months;

5. The flesh of birds (of those kinds that may be eaten), for five months;

6. The flesh of goats, for six months;

7. The flesh of the spotted deer, for seven months;

8. The flesh of the spotted antelope, for eight months;

9. Beef, for nine months;

10. Buffalo's meat, for ten months;

11. The meat of a hornless goat, for eleven months;

12. The milk of a cow, or preparations from it, for a year.

13. On this subject there exists a stanza, which the manes utter:

14. '(The pot-herb) Kālaśaka (sacred basil), (the prawn) Mahāsalka, and the flesh of the (crane called) Vārdhrīnasā, (and of) a rhinoceros having no horn, is food which we always accept.'
LXXXI.

1. He must not place the food upon a chair.
2. He must not touch it with his foot.
3. He must not sneeze upon it.
4. He must drive the Yâtudhânas away by means of sesamum or mustard-seeds.
5. Let him perform the Srâddha in an enclosed place.
6. He must not look at a woman in her courses;
7. Nor at a dog; 8. Nor at a tame pig;
9. Nor at a tame cock.
10. Let him strive to perform the Srâddha in sight of a goat.
11. The Brâhmaṇas must eat in silence.
12. They must not eat with their heads covered;
13. Nor with shoes on their feet;
14. Nor with their feet placed upon a stool.
15. Let not men with a limb too little, or with a limb too much, look at a Srâddha;

Commentator, Haradatta, and by Āpastamba himself (I, 5, 17, 36). Nand.'s second interpretation, 'an old white goat,' is probably wrong, although it is supported by the authority of Kullûka and Vîganânervara.


4. Nand. quotes the following Mantra, which has to be recited on this occasion, 'The Asuras, the Râkshasas, and the Pîrâśas have been driven away.' A similar Mantra occurs in the Vâgasan. Samh. II, 29.

5. 'K'a indicates that it must be a place inclining to the south, as stated in a Smrâti.' (Nand.)

6. This and the following Sûtras refer both to the host at a Srâddha and to the guests invited by him. (Nand.)
18. If at the time of a Srâddha a Brâhmaṇa or an ascetic (has come to his house), he must feed him, if (the invited) Brâhmaṇas permit it.

19. The Brâhmaṇas must not declare the qualities of the sacrificial dishes, even though asked to do so by their host.

20. As long as the dishes remain warm, as long as (the Brâhmaṇas) eat in silence, as long as the qualities of the sacrificial food are not declared by them, so long the manes enjoy it.

21. Having brought together (the remainder of) all the sorts of substantial food and (of the vegetables and) the like, he must sprinkle it with water, and place it before the Brâhmaṇas, who have taken their meal, strewing it on the ground.

22. The leavings (that have remained in the dishes) and what has been strewn (in the manner just mentioned) upon the blades of Kusa grass (spread on the ground) is the share of such (Brâhmaṇas) as have died before they were initiated, and of husbands who have deserted wives descended from good families.

23. What has dropped on the ground from the dishes, at a sacrifice addressed to the manes, they declare to be the share of servants, provided they be not dishonest or depraved.

LXXXII.

1. At a (Srâddha) offering to the Visvedevâs let him not enquire (into the qualities or descent of) a Brâhmaṇa (whom he means to invite).
2. But at a (Srâddha offering) to the manes he must enquire as closely as possible (into the qualities and descent of a Brâhmaṇa, whom he means to invite).

3. He must not invite (to a Srâddha) such as have a limb too little, or a limb too much;

4. Nor such as follow an occupation forbidden (by the Veda or by the traditional law)\(^1\).

5. Nor those who act (deceitfully) like cats;

6. Nor those wearing the insignia of some particular order, without having a claim to them;

7. Nor astrologers;

8. Nor Brâhmaṇas who subsist upon the offerings made to an idol which they attend;

9. Nor physicians;

10. Nor sons of an unmarried woman;

11. Nor sons of the son of an unmarried woman;

12. Nor those who sacrifice for a multitude of persons;

13. Nor those who offer sacrifices for a whole village;

14. Nor those who offer sacrifices for Sûdras;

15. Nor those who offer sacrifices for those for whom it is forbidden to sacrifice (such as outcasts and others);

16. Nor those for whom the ceremony of initiation has not been performed;

17. Nor those who sacrifice for such;

---

\(^1\) The particle ka, according to Nand., in this Sûtra, refers to other categories, mentioned by Atri, viz. persons belonging to the same Gotra, or descended from the same Rishi ancestors as the sacrificer, and unknown persons.

8. ‘Ka indicates here that thieves and wicked persons are also intended, as stated in a Smṛtī.’ (Nand.)
18. Nor those who do work on holidays;
19. Nor malignant informers;
20. Nor those who teach (the Veda) for a fee;
21. Nor those who have been taught (the Veda) for a fee;
22. Nor those who subsist on food given to them by a Śūdra;
23. Nor those who have intercourse with an outcast;
24. Nor those who neglect their daily study of the Veda;
25. Nor those who neglect their morning and evening prayers;
26. Nor those who are in the king's service;
27. Nor 'naked' persons;
28. Nor those who quarrel with their father;
29. Nor those who have forsaken their father, mother, Guru, holy fire, or sacred study.
30. All those persons are said to defile a company, because they have been expelled from the community of Brāhmaṇas. Let a wise man avoid carefully, therefore, to entertain them at a Srāddha.

LXXXIII.

1. The following persons sanctify a company:
2. A Trināṭiketa;

27. See LXIV, 5, note.
29. The particle ā here refers to the following further persons mentioned in a Smṛti: a shepherd, one who lives by the prostitution of his own wife, the husband of a woman who had another husband before, and one employed to carry out dead bodies. (Nand.)
2. Nand. has two explanations of the term Trināṭiketa: 1. One who has thrice kindled the Nāḍiketa fire. 2. One who has studied,
3. One who keeps five fires;
4. One who can sing the Sâmans called Gye-shîha;
5. One who has studied the whole Veda;
6. One who has studied one Vedânga;
7. One who has studied either the Purânas (Legends), or the Itihâsas (Epic), or grammar;
8. One who has studied one of the Dharmasâstras (Institutes of the Sacred Law);
9. One purified by visiting sacred places of pilgrimage;
10. One purified by offering sacrifices;
11. One purified by austere devotion;
12. One purified by veracity;
13. One purified by (constantly muttering) Mantras;
14. One intent upon muttering the Gâyatrî;
15. One in whose family the study and teaching of the Veda are hereditary.
16. One who knows the Trisuparna (the text which thrice contains the word Suparna).

in consequence of a vow, the portion of the Yagur-veda called Trinâtiketa. See Âpast. II, 7, 17, 22, with Dr. Bühler’s note, and the Petersburg Dictionary.
7. Grammar is again mentioned here, although it forms part of the Vedângas mentioned in Sûtra 6. But there the Prâtisâkhyas are meant. (Nand.)
8. The number of the Smrâis or Dharmasâstras, according to Nand., amounts to fifty-seven. The now current tradition gives thirty-six as their number; but upwards of a hundred works of this description must have been actually in existence. See Dr. Bühler’s Introduction to the Bombay Digest, p. xii seq.
16. See above, LVI, 23, and Dr. Bühler’s note on Âpast. loc. cit. Nand. proposes another interpretation also of the term Trisuparna, ‘one who has thrice kindled a fire in honour of Suparna.’
LXXXIV, 4.

SRÂDDHAS. 255

17. A son-in-law;
18. And a grandson. All these persons are worthy (to be fed at a Srâddha);
19. And, particularly, devotees.
20. There is a stanza recited by the manes, which refers to this subject:
21. ‘May that man be born to our race, who feeds a Brâhmaña devotee assiduously at a Srâddha, by which repast we are satisfied ourselves.’

LXXXIV.

1. He must not offer a Srâddha in a country inhabited by barbarians.
2. He must not visit a country inhabited by barbarians (excepting on a pilgrimage).
3. By (constantly) drinking water from (or bathing in) a pool situated in a foreign (barbarous) country, he becomes equal to its inhabitants.
4. Those countries are called barbarous (mlekkha) where the system of the four castes does not exist; the others are denoted Âryâvarta (the abode of the Âryans).

18. According to Nand., the particles âa and iti refer to the sister’s son and other relatives, as enumerated by Yâgñavalkya I, 220, 221.
19. Nand. thinks that âa here refers to ascetics.
LXXXIV. 2. Nand. quotes a stanza of Devala to the effect that one who has visited the countries of Sindh, of the Sauvâras, Surât, and the adjacent parts, Bengal proper, Kaliṅga, South Bihâr, and Malwa requires to be initiated a second time.
3. ‘Kâ refers to pools belonging to Kandâlas or other degraded castes.’ (Nand.)
4. Âryâvarta is the name of the whole tract of land which extends from the eastern to the western ocean, and is bounded by the Himâlayas and by the Vindhya mountains in the north and south. See Manu II, 21, 22.
LXXXV.

1. A Sraddha offered at the (Tirtha or place of pilgrimage called) Pushkaras confers eternal bliss upon the giver;

2. And so does the muttering of prayers, the offering of burnt-oblations, and the practice of austerities in that place.

3. Even by merely bathing at Pushkara he is purified from all his sins.

4. The same effect may be produced at Gayashrsha;

5. And near Vata (Akshayavata);

6. And on the Amarakanaka mountain;

7. And on the Varaha mountain;

LXXXV. 1. Pushkara, according to the common acceptation of the term, is the name of a celebrated place of pilgrimage near Agmîr, the modern Pokur. See Lassen, Indian Antiquities, I, 113. Nand. quotes a Smruti passage to the effect that there are three Pushkaras, and a passage of the Mahabhârata, in which it is stated that one Pushkara is sacred to Brahman, another to Vishnu, and a third to Rudra.

3. Nand. asserts with regard to the use of the name Pushkara in the singular number in this Sutra, that it means even a single bath has the consequence here mentioned.

4. Gayashrsha is the name of a mountain near Gayâ in Bihâr, a celebrated place of pilgrimage. Compare Yâgnavalkya I, 260.

5. There exists one Akshayavata in Bihâr (Nand.) and another in Prayâga (Allahabad). The ‘undecaying banyan-tree’ (Akshay Bal) is an object of worship at Allahabad even now, and was so already in the times of Hwen Thsang. See Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India, p. 389; St. Julien, Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes, II, 278.

6. Nand. states that both the Tirtha called Amarakanaka on the Mekalâ mountain in the Vindhya range and the whole mountain of that name are meant.

7. ‘This is a certain boar-shaped mountain.’ (Nand.) It seems very probable that the Tirtha of Bâramûla, the ancient Varaha-
8. And anywhere on the bank of the Narmadā (Nerudda) river;
9. And on the bank of the Yamunā (Jumna);
10. And, particularly, on the Gaṅgā;
11. And at Kusāvarta;
12. And at Binduka; 13. And upon the Nilgiri hills; 14. And at Kanakhala; 15. And at Kubgāmra; 16. And on the Bhrigutuṅga (mountain);
17. And at Kedāra; 18. And on the Mahālaya (mountain); 19. And on the Nadantikā (river); 20. And on the Sugandhā (river); 21. And at Sākambharī; 22. And at Phalgutīrtha; 23. And on the

mūla in Kasmīr, is meant. See Bühler, Kasmīr Report, p. 12, where a ‘Varāha hill’ is mentioned as adjacent to that town.

11. This Tīrtha ‘is situated upon the mountain called Tryambaka, where the Godāvarī river takes its rise.’ (Nand.) Tryambaka is the modern Trimbak (the name of a place of pilgrimage situated near Nāsik).

12. ‘Binduka is the name of a Tīrtha in the Dekhan. Bilvaka, as other texts read (the MS. on which the two Calcutta editions are based among the number), is the name of another Tīrtha in the Dekhan.’ (Nand.)

14. There is one Kanakhala in the Himālayas, and another near Trimbak. (Nand.)

15. There is one plain of that name in Orissa, and another in Haridvār. (Nand.)

16. This is the name of a sacred mountain near the Amarakanṭaka range, according to Nand.; in the Himālayas, according to others. See the Petersburg Dictionary.

17. Kedāra (the Kedār mountains?) is in the Himālayas. (Nand.)
18, 19. These two names are not defined by Nand.
20. This is a river in the vicinity of the Saugandhika mountain. (Nand.)

21. Sākambharī is the modern Shāmbar, which lies ‘in the desert of Marudera, on the salt lake.’ (Nand.)
22. ‘Phalgutīrtha is a Tīrtha in Gayā.’ (Nand.)
23. Mahāgaṅgā, ‘the great Gaṅgā,’ is the Alakānandā river
Mahāgaṅgā; 24. And at Trihalikāgrāma; 25. And at Kumāradhārā; 26. And at Prabhāsa; 27. And particularly anywhere on (the bank of) the Sarasvati;

28. At Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvār), at Prayāga (Allahabad), where the Gaṅgā falls into the ocean, constantly in the Naimisha forest, and especially at Benares;

29. And at Agastyāśrama;
30. And at Kanvāśrama (on the Mālint river);
31. And on the Kausikt (Kosi river);
32. And on the bank of the Sarayū (Surju river in Oudh);
33. And on the confluence of the Sona (Sone) and Gyoṭishā rivers;
34. And on the Srīparvata (mountain);

(Nand.), which takes its rise in the Himālayas and falls into the Ganges.

24. 'Trihalikāgrāma means Sālagrāma. There is another reading, Tanḍulikāgrāma.' (Nand.)

25. This is the name of a lake in Kaśmīr, which the god Kuṃāra by a mighty stroke caused to stream forth from the Kraunḍā mountain (see Vāyu-purāṇa); or Kumāradhārā is situated near the southern ocean in the plain of Ishupāta. (Nand.)

26. Prabhāsa is the name of a Tīrtha near Dvārakā, on the western point of Kattivar. (Nand.)

27. Regarding the river Sarasvatī and its reputed holiness, see particularly Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India, I, 331 seq., and Manu II, 17.

28. The Naimisha forest is in the northern country. (Nand.)

29. 'Agastyāśrama is situated near Pushkara (Śūtra 1), on the bank of the Sarasvatī. There is another Agastyāśrama in the south, near Svāmisthāna.' (Nand.)

33. The confluence of those two rivers is in the centre of the Vindhya range. For the name of the second, another reading is Gyoṭratha. (Nand.)

34. The Srīparvata or Srīśaila, where the Mallikārguna (symbol of Śiva) is worshipped, is in the Dekhan. (Nand.)
35. And at (the Tirtha situated on the Yamunâ, which is called) Kâlodaka.
36. And at Uttaramânasâ (in the Kedâr mountains, in the Himâlayas).
37. And at Vadavâ (in the Dekhan).
38. And at Mataṅgavâpî (in the southern part of Gayâ);
39. And at Saptârshâ; 40. And at Vishnupada;
41. And at Svargamârgapada (or Rathamârga);
42. And on the Godâvari river (in the Dekhan);
43. And on the Gomati (river);
44. And on the Vetravatî (river);
45. And on the Vipâsâ (river);
46. And on the Vitastâ (river);
47. And on the banks of the Satadru (river);
48. And on the Kândrabhâgâ (river);
49. And on the Írávatî (river);
50. And on the banks of the Indus;
51. And on the southern Pañkanada;
52. And at Ausaga (?);
53. And at other such Tirthas;

39. Saptârshâ, 'the Tirtha of the seven Rîshis' (Nand.), is perhaps the present Satara, in the country of the Maharattas.
40. Nand. places this Tirtha in the centre of Gayâ. There is another of the same name, which is placed on the Kailâsa mountain.
43. The Gomati (the Gunti, near Lucknow) rises in the Naimisha forest. (Nand.) See 28.
44. The Vetravatî (the modern Betwah, near Bhilsah) is situated in Ahikkhattrâ. (Nand.)
45-49. The Vipârâ (Beas), Vitastâ (Jhelum or Behut), Satadru (Sutlej), Kândrabhâgâ (Chenâb), and Írávatî (Ravee) are the five rivers of the Paṅgâb (Pañkanada in Sanskrit).
51. This is the name of the confluence of five rivers in the Dekhan: the Kriśhṇâ, Venâ, Tuṅga, Bhadrâ, and Kowa. (Nand.)
52. 'Ausaga (v. l. Augasa; read Ausiga ?) means Sûrpâraka' (Nand.), which was situated probably on the mouth of the Kriśhṇâ (Kistna).
54. And on the banks of (other) holy rivers;
55. And anywhere at the birth-place of a deity, (such as Râma, Krîshna, and others);
56. And on sand-banks; 57. And near waterfalls; 58. And on mountains; 59. And in arbours (the sporting-places of Krîshna); 60. And in woods; 61. And in groves; 62. And in houses smeared with cow-dung; 63. And in ‘pleasant spots.’

64. There are some stanzas recited by the manes, which refer to this subject:

65. ‘May that person be born to our race, who will give us libations of water, taken from streams abounding with water, especially if their floods (coming from the Himâlayas) are cool.

66. ‘May that excellent man be born to our race, who offers us a Srâddha attentively at Gayâsîrsha or at Vâta.’

67. A man must wish to have many sons, because if only one of them goes to Gayâ (and offers a Srâddha to him after his death), or if he performs a horse-sacrifice, or if he sets a dark-coloured bull at liberty, (he will acquire final emancipation through him.)

LXXXVI.

1. Now follows the ceremony of setting a bull at liberty, (which should take place)
2. On the days of full moon in Kârttika or Âsvina.
3. When performing this rite, he must first examine the bull.

63. The term mañgâna, ‘a pleasant spot,’ means ‘a place close by the house, where sacred basil is planted,’ or other such places. (Nand.)

67. ¹See the next chapter.

LXXXVI. 1–18. Pâr. III, 9; Sânkh. III, 11. Regarding the corresponding section of the Kââhaka Grihya-sûtra, see Introduction.
4. (The bull must be) the offspring of a milch cow having young ones living.
5. He must have all marks.
6. He must be dark-coloured;
7. Or red, but having a white mouth, a white tail, and white feet and horns.
8. He must be one who protects the herd.
9. Then, after having (kindled) a blazing fire among the cows (in the cow-pen) and strewn Kusa grass around it, let him boil with milk a dish sacred to Pūshan, and offer (two oblations) in the fire with the Mantras, ‘May Pūshan follow our cows,’ and ‘Here is pleasure.’ And let a blacksmith mark the bull:
10. On the one flank (the right), with a discus; on the other flank (the left), with a trident.
11. After he has been marked, let him wash the bull with the four Mantras, (beginning with the words), ‘The golden-coloured,’ and with (the five Mantras, beginning with the words), ‘May the divine (waters help and propitiate us’).
12. Having washed and adorned the bull, he must bring him near, together with four young cows,

5. ‘I.e. the bull must not be deficient in any limb.’ (Nand.) This interpretation is supported by the Grihya-sūtras.
6. Nand. mentions two interpretations of the term nīla, ‘dark-coloured:’ 1. a bull who is all white, and is therefore said to be of the ‘Brāhmaṇa kind;’ 2. one whose body is white, whereas his tail, his hoofs, and his face are black, and his horns blue. Cf. L, 25.
7. Nand. interprets yathasyākādakam by nishektāram, ‘one who covers the cows.’ My rendering is based upon Devapāla’s comment on the corresponding passage of the Kāṭhaka Grihya-sūtra. See also Pār. and Sāṅkh. loc. cit.
9. 1 Rig-veda VI, 54, 5, &c.— 2 Vagas. Samh. VIII, 51; Kāṭh. Āsv. IV, 6, &c.
11. 1 Taitt. Samh. V, 6, 1, 1, 2, &c.— 2 Rig-veda X, 9, 4–8, &c.
which must also have been washed and decorated, and he must mutter the Rudras\(^1\), the Purushasûkta, and the Kûshmândîs\(^2\).

13. Then let him pronounce in the bull’s right ear the Mantra, ‘The father of calves;’

14. And the following (Mantras):

15. ‘Holy law is a bull and is declared to have four feet\(^1\): him I choose for the object of my worship; may he protect me wholly.

16. ‘This young (bull) I give you as husband (O ye calves), roam about sportingly with him for your lover. May we not be deficient in progeny, O king Soma, and may we live long, and may we not be oppressed by our enemies.’

17. He must drive away the bull together with the calves in a north-eastern direction and give a pair of garments, gold, and a vessel made of white copper to the officiating priest.

18. The blacksmith shall receive as wages as much as he claims, and food prepared with a great deal of butter, and (three) Brâhmanas shall be fed.

19. Any pool from which the bull drinks after

---


13. Nand. states expressly that this Mantra is from the Kâthaka. It is found Kâth. XIII, 9; Taitt. Samh. III, 3, 9, 2; Kâth. Grihya-sûtra XLVII.

15. \(^1\) This term refers perhaps to the ‘four feet of a judicial proceeding.’ See Nârada i, 11; 2, 9.

16. Taitt. Samh. III, 3, 9, 1, &c. The second half of this Mantra is found in the Kâthaka Grihya-sûtra only.

18. The clause regarding the ‘food,’ which has been rendered in accordance with Nand.’s Commentary, might also be construed with ‘fed,’ which would bring the whole into accordance with the precepts of the Kâthaka Grihya-sûtra and of the two other Grihya-sûtras.
having been set at liberty, that entire pool will refresh the manes of him who has set the bull at liberty.

20. The earth which is anywhere dug up by the bull exulting in his strength, is converted into delicious food and drink to satisfy the manes.

LXXXVII.

1. Now on the day of full moon in the month Vaisâkha he must spread out upon a woollen blanket the skin of a black antelope (together with the horns and hoofs), after having adorned the former with gold and the latter with silver, and after having ornamented the tail with a string of pearls.

2. After that, he must cover (that part of the blanket which is not covered by the skin) with sesamum.

3. And he must adorn the navel with gold.

4. He must cover (the skin) with a couple of new garments.

5. He must place all sorts of perfumes and jewels upon it.

LXXXVII. 1. The particle atha, 'now,' indicates the beginning of a new section, treating of gifts. It comprises Chapters LXXXVII–XCIII. (Nand.) The commentator infers from a corresponding passage of the Matsya-purâna, that the following further rules are implied in this Sûtra. The ceremony may also take place on the full moon days in the months Mâgha, Kârttika, and Âshâdha, on the twelfth day after the summer solstice, and during an eclipse of the sun or moon. The silver on the hoofs must weigh five Palas, and the gold on the horns ten Suvarnas (or two Palas and a half). The place must be pure, smeared with cow-dung, and covered with Kusa grass.

3. 'The Skânda-purâna states that the eyes must be adorned with jewels.' (Nand.)

5. 'And garlands of flowers and other objects must be placed upon it, as 2a indicates.' (Nand.)
6. After having placed on its four sides (beginning with the eastern side) four metallic dishes (of copper, silver, white copper, and gold respectively) filled with milk, sour milk, honey, and clarified butter respectively, (and having poured out water) he must give (the skin, seizing it by the tail), to a Brâhmaṇa, who is an Agnihotrin ¹, decked with ornaments, and clad in two garments.

7. There are (the following) stanzas in regard to this subject:

8. 'He who bestows (upon a pious Brâhmaṇa) the skin of a black antelope, together with the hoofs and horns, after having covered it with seeds of sesamum and garments, and adorned it with all sorts of jewels:

9. 'That man doubtless obtains the same reward as if he were to bestow the whole earth on him, bordered as it is on every side (by the oceans), together with the oceans and caverns, and with rocks, groves, and forests.

10. 'He who places sesamum, gold, honey, and butter on the skin of a black antelope and gives the whole to a Brâhmaṇa, annhilates the consequences of all his own evil actions.'

LXXXVIII.

1. A cow in the act of bringing forth a young one is (comparable to) the earth.

2. By bestowing such a cow upon a Brâhmaṇa, after having decked her with ornaments, he obtains the same reward as if he were to bestow the earth (upon him).

6. ¹ See LXVIII, 6, note.

3. There is a stanza in regard to this subject:
4. ‘One who full of faith and with intense application of mind gives away a pregnant cow, enters heaven for as many Yugas (or ages of the world) as that cow and her calf together have hairs on their bodies.’

LXXXIX.

1. The month Kārttika is sacred to the god Agni.
2. Agni is the first of all gods.
3. Therefore is that man purified from every sin committed during the past year, who persists during the month Kārttika in bathing (daily) out of the village, in muttering the Gāyatrī, and in taking a single meal each day, consisting of food fit for oblations.
4. He who bathes (at the prescribed time, early in the morning) constantly, during the whole month Kārttika, who keeps his organs of sense under control, who mutters (the Gāyatrī), who eats food fit for oblations only, and who governs his passions, is purified from every sin.

XC.

1. If on the fifteenth of the bright half of the month Mārgasīrsha the moon enters the lunar asterism Mrīgasīras, he must give at the time when the moon rises (a vessel with) a golden centre, containing a Prastha of ground salt, to a Brāhmaṇa.
2. By (performing) this rite he obtains beauty and good fortune in a future birth.

XC. 3, 5. Âpast. II, 8, 18, 19; II, 8, 19, r.—7. M. IV, 232.
1. One Prastha = sixteen Palas. (Nand.)
3. If on the full moon day of the month Pausha the moon enters the lunar asterism Pushya, he must rub over his body with a dough prepared with white mustard-seeds, anoint himself with a kumbha of clarified butter made of cow-milk, wash himself with (water and with) all sorts of medicinal herbs, all sorts of perfumes, and all sorts of seeds, wash (an image of) Bhagavat Vásudeva (Vishnu) with clarified butter, and worship him with perfumes, flowers, incense, with a lamp, with eatables, and the like, offer an oblation in the fire with Mantras tending to the praise of Vishnu (such as Rig-veda I, 22, 17, and others), Mantras tending to the praise of Indra (such as Rig-veda VI, 47, 11, and others), Mantras tending to the praise of Br̥haspati (such as Rig-veda II, 23, 15, and others, and with one Mantra tending to the praise of Agni Svishṭakrīt), and cause three Br̥hmaṇas to pronounce the benediction, after having bestowed clarified butter and gold upon them.

4. To the priest (who has performed the burnt-oblation for him) he must give a pair of garments.

5. By (performing) this rite he obtains prosperity (pushyate).

6. If on the full moon day in the month Māgha the moon enters the lunar asterism Maghā and he performs a Srāddha with sesamum on that day, he is purified.

---

3. 1 See V, 12, note. — 2 'And the like' means 'betel.' (Nand.) —
3 The rite described in this Sūtra appears to be identical with the ceremony called Yugādyā, 'the beginning of the present age of the world,' in later works. See Wilson, On the Religious Festivals of the Hindus, in the Royal Asiatic Society's Journal, IX, 89.
5. 1 This is a play upon words. See LXXVIII, 8, note, and below, Sūtra 9; XCII, 14, &c.
7. If on the full moon day in the month Phālguna the moon enters the lunar asterism Uttaraphālgunt, and he gives on that day a bedstead, quite complete and covered with good rugs, to a Brāhmaṇa, he obtains an amiable, handsome, and wealthy wife.

8. A woman who does the same, (obtains) a husband (possessing those qualities).

9. If on the full moon day of the month Kāitra the moon enters the lunar asterism Kītrā, and he gives a variegated (kītra) garment (to a Brāhmaṇa) on that day, he obtains good fortune.

10. If on the full moon day of the month Vaisākha the moon enters the lunar asterism Viśākhā, and he feeds on that day seven Brāhmaṇas with sesamum mixed with honey, in order to please king Dharma, he is purified from his sins.

11. If on the full moon day of the month Gyaishṭha the moon enters the lunar asterism Gyeshtthā and he gives on that day an umbrella and a pair of shoes (to a Brāhmaṇa), he becomes possessed of many cows.

12. If on the full moon day of the month Āshādha the moon is seen in conjunction with the lunar asterism Uttarāshādha and he gives food and drink (to a Brāhmaṇa) on that day, he renders (the satisfaction effected by) them imperishable.

13. If on the full moon day of the month Śrāvana the moon is seen in conjunction with the lunar asterism Śravana and he gives a milch cow covered with two garments, together with food (to a Brāhmaṇa), he attains heaven.

14. If on the full moon day of the month Praush-

7. Susamskrīta, ‘quite complete,’ means ‘provided with curtains and the like.’ (Nand.)
thapada (or Bhádrapada) the moon is seen in conjunction with the lunar asterism Uttaraproshtapadá (or Uttarabhádrapadá), and he gives a cow (to a Bráhmana) on that day, he is cleansed from every sin.

15. If on the full moon day of the month Ásvayuga (or Ásvina) the moon is seen in conjunction with the lunar asterism Ásvint, and he gives a vessel filled with clarified butter, and gold (to a Bráhmana) on that day, he obtains an excellent digestive faculty.

16. If on the full moon day of the month Kárttika the moon enters the lunar asterism Kritiká, and he bestows on that day, at the time of moonrise, upon a Bráhmana, a white bull, or one of a different colour, together with all sorts of grains, all sorts of jewels, and all sorts of perfumes, after having lighted lamps on both sides (of the bull), he will meet with no danger on perilous roads.

17. If on the third day of the bright half of the month Vaisákha he worships, after having fasted, Vásudeva (Vishnu) with (one thousand and eight, or one hundred) unbroken grains (of barley, while muttering the Mantra, Om namo bhagavate vásu-devâya 1), and offers up the same in fire, and gives them (to a Bráhmana), he is purified from every sin.

18. And whatever he gives on that day becomes imperishable.

19. If on the twelfth day of the dark half following on the full moon day of the month Pausha, he washes himself, after having kept a fast, with sesamum-seeds, gives water mixed with sesamum

17. 1 See XLIX, 1, note.

19. This is evidently the ceremony which is called Shatíladâna
(to the manes), worships Vâsudeva with sesamum, offers up (part of) the same in fire, gives to Brâhmaṇas of it, and eats (the remainder himself) he is purified from his sins.

20. (If) on the twelfth day of the dark half following on the full moon day of the month Mâgha, (the moon enters Sravana), he must keep a fast till the moon has entered that asterism, and place two lamps with two large wicks near (an image of) Vâsudeva;

21. Placing on the right hand (of the image of Vâsudeva, and kindling, a lamp) containing one hundred and eight Palas of clarified butter, with an entire piece of cloth (together with the fringes) dyed with saffron (as wick) in it;

22. (And placing) on its left, (and kindling, a lamp) containing one hundred and eight Palas of sesamum oil, with an entire piece of white cloth (as wick) in it.

23. He who has performed this rite obtains exquisite happiness, in whatever kingdom, in whatever province, and in whatever race he may be born again.

24. He who gives daily during the whole month Âsvina clarified butter to Brâhmaṇas, in order to please the two Âsvins, obtains beauty.

25. He who feeds daily during that month (three) Brâhmaṇas with (milk and other) bovine productions, obtains a kingdom.

26. He who feeds on the Revati day of every month (three) Brâhmaṇas with rice boiled in milk

in later works; see Wilson loc. cit. The name of the latter is derived from the fact that it consists, precisely like the ceremony described in the present Sûtra, of six acts, in all of which Tila, i.e. sesamum-seeds, forms an essential ingredient.
with sugar and mixed with honey and clarified butter, in order to please (the goddess) Revati, obtains beauty.

27. He who daily throughout the month Māgha offers sesamum-seeds in fire and feeds (three) Brāhmaṇas with sour rice-gruel mixed with clarified butter, obtains an excellent digestive power.

28. He who bathes in a river and worships king Dharma on the fourteenth of both halves of every month, is purified from every sin.

29. One desirous of obtaining the manifold advantages attending an eclipse of the sun or moon must constantly bathe in the mornings during the two months Māgha and Phālguna.

XCI.

1. The digger of a well has (the consequences of) the half of his evil acts taken from him as soon as the water comes forth from it.

2. A digger of pools is for ever freed from thirst, and attains the world of Varuna.

3. A giver of water shall never suffer from thirst (in heaven, for a hundred Yugas or ages of the world).

4. He who plants trees will have those trees for his sons in a future existence.

5. A giver of trees gladdens the gods by (offering up) their blossoms to them.

6. (He gladdens) his guests by (giving) their fruits to them;

7. (He gladdens) travellers with their shade;

8. (He gladdens) the manes with the water (trickling down from their leaves) when it rains.
10. A builder of temples enters the dwelling-place of that deity to whom he has erected a temple.
11. He who causes (a temple erected by another) to be whitewashed acquires brilliant fame.
12. He who causes (such a temple) to be painted with (a different) colour (such as blue, yellow, and others) attains the world of the Gandharvas.
13. By giving flowers he becomes fortunate.
14. By giving ointments he acquires renown.
15. By giving a lamp he obtains an excellent eyesight and exquisite happiness.
16. By giving food he obtains strength.
17. By removing the remains of an offering to a deity he obtains the same reward as for giving a cow.
18. The same reward is also obtained by scouring a temple, by smearing it (with cow-dung and the like), by removing the leavings of the food of a Brâhmaṇa, by washing his feet, and by nursing him when sick.
19. He who consecrates anew a well, or a park, or a pool, or a temple (when they have been soiled) obtains the same reward as he who first made them.

XCII.

1. Protecting (one attacked by robbers, or by tigers, or otherwise in danger) is more meritorious than any (other) gift.
2. By doing so he obtains that place of abode (after death) which he desires himself.

3. By giving land he obtains the same (heavenly reward).

4. By giving land to the extent of a bull’s hide only he is purified from every sin.

5. By giving a cow he attains heaven.

6. A giver of ten milch cows (obtains) the mansion of cows (after death).

7. A giver of a hundred milch cows enters the mansions of Brahman (after death).

8. He who gives (a milch cow) with gilt horns, with hoofs covered with silver, with a tail wound with a string of pearls, with a milk-pail of white copper, and with a cover of cloth, shall reside in heaven for as many years as the cow has hairs on her body;

9. Particularly, if it is a brown cow.

10. He who has given a tamed bull is (equal in virtue to) a giver of ten milch cows.


4. Nand. defines ‘a bull’s hide’ as a measure of surface 300 Hastas (see X, 2, note) long by ten Hastas broad. See, however, V, 183.

8. According to a Smṛiti quoted by Nand., the gold upon the horns of the cow shall weigh ten Suvarnas, the silver on her hoofs ten Palas, the white copper of which the milk-pail is made fifty Palas, and she shall have copper on her back, which must also weigh fifty Palas.

9. ‘The meaning is, that a brown cow sends even his ancestors as far as the seventh degree to heaven, as Yāgñavalkya (I, 205) says.’ (Nand.)
11. The giver of a horse attains the mansion of Sûrya (the sun-god).
12. The giver of a garment (attains) the mansion of K'andra (the god of the moon).
13. By giving gold (he attains) the mansion of Agni (the god of fire).
14. By giving silver (rûpya, he obtains) beauty (rûpa).
15. By giving dishes (pâtra) made of (gold or silver or other) metal he renders himself worthy (pâtra) to obtain everything he may desire.
16. By giving clarified butter, honey, or oil (he acquires) freedom from disease;
17. The same by giving (boiled or otherwise dressed) drugs.
18. By giving salt (lavanya, he obtains) personal charms (lavanyayā).
19. By giving grain (produced in the rainy season, such as Syâmâka grain, he acquires) satiation;
20. The same (effect is obtained) by giving grain (produced in winter or spring, such as wild turmeric or wheat).
21. A giver of food (obtains) all the rewards (enumerated above).
22. By giving grain (of any of the kinds not mentioned before, such as Kulattha or Kodrava grain, he obtains) good fortune.
23. A giver of sesamum (obtains) such offspring as he desires.
24. A giver of fuel (obtains) an excellent digestive power;
25. And he obtains victory in every fight.
26. By giving a seat (he obtains) high rank.
27. By giving a bed (of the kind declared above,
XC, 7, he procures) a wife (possessed of the qualities mentioned above).

28. By giving a pair of shoes (he obtains) a carriage yoked with mules.

29. By giving an umbrella (he attains) heaven.

30. By giving a fan or a chowrie (he obtains) prosperity in travelling.

31. By giving a house (he receives) the post of governor of a town.

32. Whatever a man is most fond of in this world (himself) and what his family like best, all that he must bestow upon a virtuous (Brâhmaṇa), if he wishes it to become imperishable.

XCIII.

1. What is given to another than a Brâhmaṇa produces the same fruit in the world to come.

2. (What is given) to one who calls himself a Brâhmaṇa (because he was born and initiated as such, but who does not perform his daily duties) produces twice the same fruit.

3. (What is given) to one who has studied the main portions of the Veda produces a thousand times the same fruit.


1. 'The term abrâhmaṇa (one not a Brâhmaṇa) refers to Kshatriyas and the like.' Kullûka on M. VII, 85. Dr. Bühler's rendering of Gautama V, 20 agrees with this interpretation. Nand., on the other hand, refers the term abrâhmaṇa to six kinds of Brâhmaṇas enumerated by Sâtâtapâ, who have infringed the rule of their caste by taking their substance from a king, or by selling or buying forbidden articles, or by sacrificing for a multitude of persons, &c. The term 'the same fruit' means that a person shall receive in a future world what he has given in this. (Nand.)
4. (What is given) to one who has mastered the whole Veda, produces infinite fruit.

5. A domestic priest may claim gifts from his own employer (but from no one else).

6. And so may a sister, a daughter and sons-in-law (or other connections claim gifts from their brother, father, &c., but not from a stranger).

7. One who knows his duty must not give even water to a twice-born man who acts like a cat, or to a Brāhmaṇa who acts like a crane, or to one who has not studied the Veda.

8. One who constantly hoists the flag of religion, and who is avaricious, crafty, deceitful, pitiless, and a calumniator of everybody, such a man is said to act like a cat.

9. One who hangs his head, who is bent upon injuring others and upon his own gain, artful, and falsely demure, such a man is said to act like a crane.

10. Those who act like cranes in this world, and those who act like cats, fall into (the hell called) Andhatāmśra on account of their wickedness.

11. If a man has committed an offence and does penance for it, he must not do so under pretext of performing an act of piety, covering his crime under a (fictitious) vow, and imposing on women and Śūdras.

12. A Brāhmaṇa who acts thus, is despised in the next life and in this by those who know the Veda, and the penance performed by him under such false pretence goes to the (demons called) Rākṣhasas.

10. ¹ See XLIII, 3.
13. One who gains his subsistence by wearing (a lock on the crown of the head or other) distinguishing marks of a caste or religious order, to which he does not belong, takes upon himself the (consequences of the) sins committed by those who have a right to those marks, and enters in a future birth the womb of an animal.

14. He must not give (to a panegyrist) from vain-glory, or from fear, or to a friend (from whom he hopes to obtain benefit), nor (must he bestow gifts), with a view to acquire religious merit, upon dancers or singers: that is a fixed rule.

XCIV.

1. A householder, when he sees his skin has become wrinkled and his hair turned grey, must go to live in a forest.

2. Or (he must do so) when he sees the son of his son.

3. Let him (before going into the forest) entrust the care of his wife to his sons, or let her accompany him.

4. Let him keep the sacred fires in his new abode as before.

5. He must not omit to perform the five sacri-
fices, but (he must perform them) with (fruits, herbs, or roots) growing wild.

6. He must not relinquish the private recitation of the Veda.

7. He must preserve his chastity.

8. He must wear a dress made of skins or bark.

9. He must suffer the hairs of his head, of his beard, and of his body, and his nails to grow.

10. He must bathe at morning, noon, and evening.

11. He must either collect provisions, after the manner of the pigeon, for a month, or he must collect them for a year.

12. He who has collected provisions for a year, must throw away what he has collected on the day of full moon in the month Āsvina.

13. Or an hermit may bring food from a village, placing it in a dish made of leaves, or in a single leaf, or in his hand, or in a potsherd, and eat eight mouthfuls of it.

XCV.

1. An hermit must dry up his frame by the practice of austerities.

2. In summer he must expose himself to five fires.

6. The use of the particle ḫa implies, according to Nand., that the practice of distributing gifts should likewise be continued.

11. The particle vai here refers, according to Nand., to a third alternative mentioned by Manu (VI, 18), that he should gather provisions sufficient for six months.

3. During the season of the rains he must sleep in the open air.
4. In winter he must wear wet clothes.
5. He must eat at night.
6. He may eat after having fasted entirely for one day, or for two days, or for three days.
7. He may eat flowers. 8. He may eat fruits.
9. He may eat vegetables.
10. He may eat leaves. 11. He may eat roots.
12. Or he may eat boiled barley once at the close of a half-month.
13. Or he may eat according to the rules of the Kāndrayāna.
14. He shall break his food with stones.
15. Or he shall use his teeth as a pestle.
16. This whole world of deities and of men has devotion for its root, devotion for its middle, devotion for its end, and is supported by devotion.
17. What is hard to follow, hard to reach, remote, or hard to do, all that may be accomplished by devotion; since there is nothing that may not be effected by devotion.

6. Nand. considers the particle và to refer to the precept of Yāgñavalkya (III, 50), that the fast may also extend over a half-month or an entire month.
13. The particle và, according to Nand., implies that he may also perform Krikkhas, as ordained by Yāgñavalkya (III, 50). Regarding the Kāndrayāna, see XLVII.
17. 'Duskhara has been translated according to the usual acceptation of this term. Nand. interprets it by 'hard to understand.' This proverb is also found Subhāshitārāva 109, Vṛiddhaśānakya’s Proverbs XVII, 3. See Böhtlingk, Ind. Sprüche, 5265.
XCVI.

1. After having passed through the first three orders and annihilated passion, he must offer an oblation to Pragāpati, in which he bestows all his wealth (upon priests) as fee for the performance of the sacrifice, and enter the order of ascetics.

2. Having reposed the fires in his own mind, he must enter the village, in order to collect alms, (but never for any other purpose).

3. He must beg food at seven houses.

4. If he does not get food (at one house), he must not grieve.

5. He must not beg of another ascetic.

6. When the servants have had their meal, when the dishes have been removed, let him beg food (consisting of the leavings).

7. (He must receive the food) in an earthen vessel, or in a wooden bowl, or in a vessel made of the bottle-gourd.

8. He must cleanse those vessels with water.

9. He must shun food obtained by humble salutation.


4. 'This implies that he must not rejoice if he does get it, as Manu (VI, 57) says.' (Nand.)
11. Or (he must) live at the root of a tree.
12. He must not stay for more than one night in one village (except during the rainy season).
13. His only dress must be a small piece of cloth worn over the privities.
14. He must set down his feet purified by looking down.
15. He must drink water purified (by straining it) with a cloth.
16. He must utter speeches purified by truth.
17. He must perform acts purified by his mind.
18. He must neither wish for death nor for (a long) life.
19. He must bear abuse patiently.
20. He must treat no one with contempt.
21. He must not pronounce a benediction.
22. He must not salute any one reverentially.

10. 'Empty' means 'inhabited by no one else,' and implies that the house in question should be situated in a dark place, difficult of access. (Nand.)
11. 'The article vâ implies that he must live there alone.' (Nand.)
14, 15. Nand. assigns as the reason of both these rules, 'lest he should not kill some insect.' Kullûka (on M. VI, 46) gives the same reason for the second rule, but the looking down, according to him, is ordained in order that he may not accidentally tread upon a hair or other impure substance.
17. The sense of this Sûtra is, that in doubtful cases he must act as his mind prompts him to do. (Nand.)
21. 'The meaning is, that he must not utter a benediction when he has been reverentially saluted by any one. He must confine himself to saying, "O Nârâyana." Others explain, that he must not utter a benediction in begging food.' (Nand.)
22. 'The sense is, that he must not salute any one reverentially who has reverentially saluted him, nor return his greeting other-
23. Should one man chop his one arm with an axe, and another sprinkle his other arm with sandal, he must neither curse the one in his mind, nor bless the other.

24. He must constantly be intent upon stopping his breath, upon retention of the image formed in his mind, and upon meditation.

25. He must reflect upon the transitoriness of the passage through mundane existence;

26. And upon the impure nature of the body;

27. And upon the destruction of beauty by old age;

28. And upon the pain arising from diseases bodily, mental, or due to an excess (of the bile, &c.)

29. And upon (the pain arising from) the (five) naturally inherent (affections).

30. On his having to dwell in an embryo, covered with everlasting darkness;

wise than by saying, "O Náráyana." Others explain, that he must not make an obeisance in begging food." (Nand.)

24. Nand. quotes a passage of the Yogasástra, which states that one Dhárana = three Prānāyāmas (stoppings or regulations of the breath). A passage of the Gáruda-purána (quoted in the Petersburg Dictionary) states that one Dhárana = sixteen Prānāyāmas. I have taken the term dhárana in its ordinary acceptation of 'retention of an idea' (cf. Wilson, Vishnu-purána V, 237) with regard to an analogous passage of Yágñavalkya (III, 201), which is also quoted by Nand.

28. According to Nand., the particle ʻa is used to include other diseases, love, anxiety or wrath, caused by enemies, and other mental pangs.

29. They are, ignorance, egotism, love, wrath, and dread of temporal suffering (Nand., according to Patañgali). The particle ʻa, according to Nand., is used in order to imply meditation upon the thousand births which man has to pass through, as stated by Yágñavalkya (III, 64).
31. And on (his having to dwell) between urine and faeces;

32. On his having to suffer, (as an embryo,) pain from the cold and hot (food and drink, which his mother happens to have taken);

33. On the dreadful pain which he has to suffer, at the time of his birth, while the embryo is coming forth from the narrowness of the womb;

34. On his ignorance and his dependency upon his (parents and other) Gurus in childhood;

35. On the manifold anxieties arising from the study of the Veda (and from the other obligations of a student);

36. And (on the anxieties arising) in youth from not obtaining the objects of pleasure, and upon the abode in hell (ordained as punishment) for enjoying them, after they have been obtained unlawfully;

37. On the union with those whom we hate, and the separation from those whom we love;

38. On the fearful agonies of hell;

39. And (on the agonies) that have to be suffered in the passage of the soul through the bodies of animals (and of plants).

40. (And let him reflect thus that) there is no pleasure to be met with in this never-ceasing passage of the soul through mundane existence;

41. (And that) even what is called pleasure, on account of the absence of pain, is of a transient nature;

42. (And that) he who is unable to enjoy such pleasures (from sickness or some such cause), or who is unable to procure them (from poverty), suffers severe pangs.
43. He must recognise this human frame to consist of seven elements.
44. Those elements are, adeps, blood, flesh, serum of flesh, bone, marrow, and semen.
45. It is covered with skin.
46. And it has a nasty smell.
47. It is the receptacle of (the above-named) impure substances (adeps and the rest).
48. Though surrounded by a hundred pleasures, it is subject to change.
49. Though carefully supported (by elixirs and the like), it is subject to destruction.
50. It is the stay of carnal desire, wrath, greed, folly, pride, and selfishness.
51. It consists of earth, water, fire, air, and ether.
52. It is provided with bone, tubular vessels (carrying bile and phlegm through the body), tubes (conducting the vital airs), and sinews.
53. It is endowed with the quality of ragas (passion).
54. It is covered with six skins.
55. It is kept together by three hundred and sixty bones.
56. They are distributed (as follows):
57. The teeth together with their receptacles are sixty-four in number.

46. The particle ka, according to Nand., refers to the fact that the human body is defiled by the touch of impure objects.
48. 'The meaning is that, though food and drink and other sensual enjoyments abound, they may cause pain as well as pleasure by producing phlegm, &c.' (Nand.)
51. 'Earth,' i.e. the flesh and bone, &c.; 'water,' i.e. the blood; 'fire,' i.e. the digestive faculty, the eyesight, &c.; 'air,' i.e. the five vital airs; 'ether,' i.e. the space enclosed by the airs, in the mouth, in the belly, &c. (Nand.)
58. There are twenty nails.
59. There are as many bones to the hands and feet (one at the root of each finger and toe).
60. There are sixty joints to the fingers and toes.
61. There are two (bones) to the two heels.
62. There are four to the ankles.
63. There are four to the elbows.
64. There are two to the shanks.
65. There are two to the knees and two to the cheeks.
66. (There are two) to the thighs and (two) to the shoulders.
67. (There are two) to the lower part of the temples, (two) to the palate, and (two) to the hips.
68. There is one bone to the organs of generation.
69. The backbone consists of forty-five (bones).
70. The neck consists of fifteen (bones).
71. The collar-bone consists of one (bone on each side).
72. The jaw likewise.
73. There are two (bones) at its root.
74. There are two (bones) to the forehead, (two) to the eyes, and (two) to the cheeks.
75. The nose has one bone, the nose-bone.
76. The ribs together with the joints called ‘arbuda,’ and with the joints called ‘sthánaka,’ consist of seventy-two (bones).
77. The breast contains seventeen bones.

76. ‘There are thirteen ribs to each flank, which makes in all twenty-six ribs. There are twenty joints to them in the breast, called “arbuda,” and twenty-six joints in the back, called “sthánaka,” which makes a total of seventy-two bones.’ (Nand.)
78. There are two temporal bones.
79. The head has four skull-bones. Thus (the bones have been enumerated).
80. There are in this human frame seven hundred tubular vessels (carrying bile and phlegm through the body, or arteries).
81. Of sinews, there are nine hundred.
82. Of tubes (conducting the vital airs, or nerves), there are two hundred.
83. Of muscles, there are five hundred.
84. Of tubular vessels (or arteries), the branches of the smaller tubular vessels, there are twenty-nine Lakshas (two millions nine hundred thousand) and nine hundred and fifty-six.'
85. Of hair-holes, of the hair of the beard and of the head, there are three hundred thousand.
86. Of sensitive parts of the body, there are one hundred and seven.
87. Of joints, there are two hundred.
88. Of (atoms of) hairs (of the body), there are fifty-four Kōlis (or five hundred and forty millions) and sixty-seven Lakshas (making in all five hundred and forty-six millions and seven hundred thousand).
89. The navel, the principle of vital action (which dwells in the heart), the anus, semen, blood, the temples, the head, the throat, and the heart are the seats of the vital airs.
90. The two arms, the two legs, the belly, and the head are the six limbs.
91. Adeps, marrow, the left lung, the navel, the right lung, the liver, the spleen, the small cavity of the heart, the kidneys, the bladder, the rectum, the stomach, the heart, the large cavity (intestine), the
anus, the belly, and the two bowels in it (are the inner parts of the body).

92. The pupils of the eye, the eyelashes\(^1\), the outer parts of the ears, the ears themselves, the tragus of each ear, the cheeks, the eyebrows, the temples, the gums, the lips, the cavities of the loins, the two groins, the scrotum, the two kidneys and breasts of females, which are composed of phlegm, the uvula, the hindparts, the arms, the shanks, the thighs, the fleshy parts of the shanks and thighs, the palate, the two bones (or muscles) at the upper end of the bladder, the chin, the soft palate, and\(^2\) the nape of the neck: these are the ‘places’ (of vital energy) in the body.

93. Sound, tangibility, form or colour, savour, and odour are the (five) objects of sense.

94. Nose, eye, skin, tongue, and ear are the (five) organs of perception.

95. Hands, feet, anus, parts of generation, and tongue are the (five) organs of action.

96. Mind, intellect, the individual Self, and the indiscrete\(^1\) are ‘that which exceeds the senses.’

97. This human frame, O Earth, is called ‘field.’ He who knows (how to enter and how to leave) it is denominated, by those conversant with the

---

92. \(^1\) Others interpret akshikūte, ‘the eyelashes,’ by ‘the joints between the eyes and the nose.’ (Nand.) See also Böhtlingk’s new Dictionary. — \(^2\) The use of the particle \(ka\) implies, according to Nand., that the feet, hands, and other limbs mentioned in an analogous passage of Yāgñavalkya (III, 99) have also to be included in this enumeration.

96. \(^1\) Nand. interprets avyaktam, ‘the indiscrete,’ by pradhānam, ‘the chief one.’ Both terms are in the Sāṅkhya system of philosophy synonyms of prakṛti, ‘that which evolves or produces everything else.’
subject, 'the knower of the field' (i.e. Self or Soul).

98. Know me, O illustrious one, to be the Self of all fields (whether born from the womb, or arisen from an egg, or from sweat, or from a germ or shoot). Those striving after final emancipation must constantly seek to understand the 'field' and to obtain a knowledge of the knower of the field.

XCVII.

1. Sitting with the feet stretched out and crossed so as to touch the thighs, with the right hand (stretched out and) resting upon the left, with the tongue fixed in the palate, and without bringing the one row of teeth in contact with the other, with the eyes directed to the tip of the nose, and without glancing at any of the (four) quarters of the sky, free from fear, and with composure, let him meditate upon (Purusha), who is separate from the twenty-four entities,

XCVII. I. Y. III, 198–200. — 9. Y. III, 111, 201. This chapter treats of the means for obtaining that knowledge of the Ätman or Self, which has been declared at the end of the last chapter to be the road to final emancipation. (Nand.)

1. 'The twenty-four (it should be twenty-five) entities are stated in the Sâukhya to consist of the root-principle (mūlaprakṛiti), the seven productions evolved from it (vīkrītāyā), the sixteen productions evolved from these, and Purusha (the soul), who is neither producer nor produced. (1) The "root-principle" is composed of the three qualities in equipoise: sattva, rajas, and tamas (the most accurate rendering of these terms is perhaps that proposed by Elliot, "pure unimpassioned virtue," "passion," and "depravity inclining to evil." See Fitz-Edward Hall, Preface to Sâukhyapravâsanabhâshya, p. 44). (2) The "great entity" (Mahat) is the cause of apprehension. (3) The "self-consciousness" (ahāmkāra) is the cause of refer-
2. He who is eternal, beyond the cognisance of the senses, destitute of qualities, not concerned with sound, tangibility, form, savour, or odour, knowing everything, of immense size,

3. He who pervades everything, and who is devoid of form,

4. Whose hands and feet are everywhere, whose eyes, head, and face are everywhere, and who is able to apprehend everything with all the senses.

5. Thus let him meditate.

6. If he remains absorbed in such meditation for a year, he obtains the accomplishment of Yoga (concentration of the thought and union with the Supreme).

7. If he is unable to fix his mind upon the being

ring all objects to self. (4–8) The “subtile elementary particles” (tanmātras) are identical with sound, tangibility, form, taste, and odour. (9–19) The eleven senses (i.e. the organs of perception and action enumerated in CXVI, 94, 95, and manas, “the mind”), and (20–24) the five “grosser elements” (ether, air, fire, water, and earth) are productions (from the former entities). Purusha, who is neither producer nor produced, is the twenty-fifth entity.’ (Nand.)

2, 3. According to Nand., all the properties of Purusha mentioned in this Sūtra are such as distinguish him from the rest of the entities, the first two distinguishing him from ‘self-consciousness’ (ahāmkrāta), the voidness of quality distinguishing him from the ‘root-principle’ (mūlaprakṛiti), which is composed of three qualities, &c.

4. The properties of Pūrusha here mentioned are faculties only, so that there is no contradiction to the ‘voidness of form’ and the other properties enumerated in the preceding Sūtras. (Nand.)

6. The external signs of the accomplishment of Yoga, as stated by Yāgñavalkya (III, 202 seq.), are, the faculty of entering another body and of creating anything at will, and other miraculous powers and qualities. (Nand.)
destitute of form, he must meditate successively on earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, intellect, self, the indiscrete, and Purusha: having fully apprehended one, he must dismiss it from his thoughts and fix his mind upon the next one in order.

8. In this way let him arrive at meditation upon Purusha.

9. If unable to follow this method also, he must meditate on Purusha shining like a lamp in his heart, as in a lotus turned upside down.

10. If he cannot do that either, he must meditate upon Bhagavat Vāsudeva (Vishnu), who is adorned with a diadem, with ear-rings, and with bracelets, who has the (mystic mark) Srivatsa and a garland of wood-flowers on his breast, whose aspect is pleasing, who has four arms, who holds the shell, the discus, the mace, and the lotus-flower, and whose feet are supported (and worshipped) by the earth.

11. Whatever he meditates upon, that is obtained by a man (in a future existence): such is the mysterious power of meditation.

12. Therefore must he dismiss everything perish-

7. The term nirākāra, 'the being destitute of form,' evidently refers to Purusha here (cf. Sūtra 3), though Nand. interprets it as an epithet of 'Brahman.'— 8 'Intellect' (buddhi) and 'self' (ātman), according to Nand., mean 'the great entity' (mahat) and 'self-consciousness' (ahamkāra), cf. note on Sūtra 1. — 9 'The indiscrete' (avyaktam) means 'the chief one' (pradhānam), i.e. the Sānkhya 'root-principle' (see XCVI, 96). — 4 Nand. takes Purusha in this Sūtra and in 13, 15 to mean 'the twenty-sixth entity,' but it appears clearly from Sūtra 1, as from 16 also, that the Vishnu-sūtra, like the Sānkhya system, assumes twenty-five entities only, not twenty-six, like Yama, upon whose authority Nand.'s statement is based.

9. Nand. interprets the term Purusha here by ātman, 'self.'
able from his thoughts and meditate upon what is imperishable only.

13. There is nothing imperishable except Purusha.

14. Having become united with him (through constant meditation), he obtains final liberation.

15. Because the great lord pervades the whole universe (pura), as he is lying there (sete), therefore is he denominated Puru-sha by those who reflect upon the real nature (of the Supreme Spirit).

16. In the first part and the latter part of the night must a man bent on contemplation constantly and with fixed attention meditate upon Purusha Vishnu, who is destitute of (the three) qualities (sattva, ragas, and tamas) and the twenty-fifth entity.

17. He (or it) is composed of the entities, beyond the cognisance of the senses, distinct from all the (other) entities, free from attachment (to the producer, &c.), supporting everything, devoid of qualities and yet enjoying (or witnessing the effect of) qualities.

18. It exists without and within created beings (as being enjoyed and as enjoyer), and in the shape both of immovable things (such as trees or stones) and of movable things (such as water or fire); it is undistinguishable on account of its subtlety; it is out of reach (imperceptible), and yet is found in the heart.

16. ¹ See Sūtra 1, note.

17. Thus according to the reading asaktam, which is mentioned and explained as a var. lect. by Nand. He himself reads aakātam, ‘independent of Sakti, power, i.e. the producer, the power of creation (prakṛti), or illusion (māyā).’ Māyā and prakṛti are occasionally used as synonymous terms in the Sāṅkhya.
19. It is not distinct from creation, and yet distinct from it in outward appearance; it anni-
hilates and produces by turns (the world), which consists of everything that has been, that will be,
and that is.

20. It is termed the light of the sidereal bodies and the enemy of darkness (ignorance), it is know-
ledge, it should be known, it may be understood (by meditation), it dwells in every man's heart.

21. Thus the 'field,' knowledge (or meditation), and what should be known\(^1\) have been concisely de-
cleared; that faithful adherent of mine who makes himself acquainted therewith, becomes united to me
in spirit.

XCVIII.

1. When Vishnu had finished his speech\(^1\), the goddess of the earth inclined her knees and her
head before him and said:

2. 'O Bhagavat! Four (out of the five) grosser elements\(^1\) are receiving their support from thee, and
are constantly about thee: the ether, in the form of the shell; the air, in the form of the discus; the
fire, in the form of the mace; and the water, in the form of the lotus. Now I also desire to attend
upon thee, in my own shape, as the ground which Bhagavat's feet tread upon.'

---

\(^1\) The 'field' has been discussed in XCVI, 43–97, 'knowledge' in XCVII, 1, and 'what should be known' in XCVII, 2–20. (Nand.)

XCVIII. 1. \(^1\) Vishnu's speech is contained in Chapters II–XCVII. (Nand.)

2. \(^1\) The fifth grosser element is the earth. See XCVII, 1, note.
3. Having been addressed thus by the goddess of the earth, Bhagavat answered, ‘So be it.’
4. And the goddess of the earth, her desire having been gratified, did as she had said.
5. And she praised the god of the gods (as follows):
6. ‘Om. Adoration be to thee.
7. ‘Thou art the god of the gods.
8. ‘Thou art Vâsudeva.
9. ‘Thou art the creator.
10. ‘Thou art the god (who creates, preserves, and destroys) at will.
11. ‘Thou art the gratifier of human desires.
12. ‘Thou art the guardian of the earth.
13. ‘There is neither beginning, nor middle, nor end in thee.
14. ‘Thou art the lord (protector) of creatures.
15. ‘Thou art the strong lord of creatures.
16. ‘Thou art the exalted lord of creatures.
17. ‘Thou art the lord of strength.
18. ‘Thou art the lord of holy speech.
19. ‘Thou art the lord (creator and preserver) of the world.
20. ‘Thou art the lord of heaven.
21. ‘Thou art the lord of woods (who makes the trees grow).

10. ‘Or Kâmadeva means the god (or brilliant one) who is sought by those striving for religious merit, gain, love, or final liberation.’ (Nand.) The same interpretation is given by Saṅkara in his Commentary on the Vishnu-sahasranâma. The ordinary meaning of Kâmadeva is ‘the god of love.’
15, 16. Nand. renders the terms supragâpati and mahâpragâpati by ‘the protector of those who have a splendid progeny (such as Kâraṇa)’ and ‘the lord of him who has a large progeny (Brahman).’
22. 'Thou art the lord (producer) of (mother's) milk.
23. 'Thou art the lord of the earth (and causest it to yield its produce)
24. 'Thou art the lord of the waters.
25. 'Thou art the lord of the (eight) quarters of the sky.
26. 'Thou art the lord of (the principle) Mahat.
27. 'Thou art the lord of the wind.
28. 'Thou art the lord of happiness.
29. 'Thou art Brahman personified.
30. 'Thou art dear to Brâhmânas.
31. 'Thou pervadest everything.
32. 'Thou surpassest all conception.
33. 'Thou art attainable by knowledge (meditation).
34. 'Thou art invoked at many (offerings).
35. 'Thou art praised with many (hymns of the Veda).
36. 'Thou likest everything sacred.
37. 'Thou art fond of Brahman (the Veda).
38. 'Thou belongest to the (gods called) Brahma-kâyas.
39. 'Thy size is immense.
40. 'Thou belongest to the Mahârâgas.

26. See XCVII, 1, note.
28. Lakshmîpati has been translated according to Nand.'s interpretation. It usually denotes the husband of Lakshmi.
30. Or 'Brâhmânas are dear to thee.' Both explanations of the term brâhmânapriya are admissible, and mentioned by Nand. and by Saṅkara.
40, 41. Nand. interprets the two terms mahârâgika and katur-mahârâgika by 'he whose series of transmigrations is immense,' and 'he whose immense series of transmigrations is fourfold,' and
41. 'Thou belongest to the four Mahârâgas.
42. 'Thou art brilliant.
43. 'Thou art most brilliant.
44. 'Thou art the seven (parts of a Sâman, or
the seven divisions of the universe).
45. 'Thou art most blessed.
46. 'Thou art tone.
47. 'Thou art Tushita (or "satisfied with the
honours shown to thee by faithful attendants")..
48. 'Thou art Mahâtushita (or "highly satisfied
even without being worshipped").
49. 'Thou art the tormentor (destroyer of the
world).
50. 'Thou art wholly created.
51. 'Thou art uncreated.
52. 'Thou art obsequious (to thy followers).
53. 'Thou art sacrifice.
54. 'Thou art the (recipient of the) great sacrifice.
55. 'Thou art connected with sacrifices.
56. 'Thou art the fit recipient of offerings.
57. 'Thou art the consummation of offerings.
58. 'Thou art invincible.

he refers the latter epithet to the four parts, of which Purusha is
said to consist. He quotes Rig-veda X, 90, 4, where it is said
that Purusha ascended to the sky with three of his constituent
parts, and that the fourth remained in this world. But both terms
cannot be separated etymologically from Mahârâga, the name of
a certain class of deities in the Buddhistic system of religion.

44. Thus Nand. Compare I, 56, note.
46. Nand.'s interpretation of the epithet svara, 'tone' (or 'air
breathed through the nostrils'), as being a compound of the prefix
su and the root ri in the sense of 'acquisition, insight,' and meaning
'most wise,' is inadmissible.
54. This epithet, according to Nand., refers to the sacrifice
mentioned in a text of the Vâgasan. Samhitâ (XIX, 12), which
begins with the words 'The gods prepared a sacrifice.'
59. ‘Thou art Vaikuntha.
60. ‘Thou art unbounded (both in time and space).
61. ‘Thou surpassest (the organs of sense, mind, and intelligence).
62. ‘Thou art of old.
63. ‘Thou art friendly to the gods.
64. ‘Thou art the protector of living beings.
65. ‘Thou wearest radiant locks of hair.
66. ‘Thou takest thy share of acts of worship.
67. ‘Thou takest thy sacrificial cake.
68. ‘Thou art lord over everything.
69. ‘Thou art the support of all.
70. ‘Thy ears are pure.
71. ‘Never ceasing homage is paid to thee.
72. ‘Thou art blazing fire (or “Thou art shining with clarified butter offered up to thee”).
73. ‘Thou cuttest (foes) to pieces with thy axe.
74. ‘Thou hast a lotus springing from thy navel.
75. ‘Thou holdest a lotus (in thy hand).
76. ‘Thou wearest a garland of lotus-flowers.
77. ‘Thou art the lord of the senses.
78. ‘Thou hast one horn.

59. Nand. proposes two interpretations of this epithet: 1. the producer of Māyā (the power of illusion); 2. the son of Vikunthâ, the mother of Vishnu in one of his Avatâras. Vaikuntha is also the name of Vishnu’s paradise.

70. ‘I.e. “thou hearest the sacred revelation.” Or suñjīravah= “he whose names are pure.”’ (Nand.) The same interpretation is given by Sañkara. See also Mahâbhârata XII, 13250.

73. ‘The epithet khandâparasu refers either to Vishnu’s slaying the Daityas in the form of Siva, or to his wearing an axe as the slayer of the Kshatriyas in the form of Parâsurâma.’ (Nand.) The latter interpretation is proposed by Sañkara also, and khandâparasu is a very common epithet of Parâsurâma.

78. The one horn is meant, by which Vishnu, in his descent as
79. 'Thou art the great boar.
80. 'Thou art the tormentor (of the Asuras, or of the righteous and the unrighteous).
81. 'Thou art eternal.
82. 'Thou art infinite. 83. Thou art Purusha. 84. Thou art the great (unbounded) Purusha. 85. Thou art (the sage) Kapila. 86. Thou art the teacher of the Sāṅkhya. 87. Thy powers are everywhere. 88. Thou art virtue. 89. Thou art the giver of virtue. 90. Thy body is virtue (law). 91. Thou art the giver of both virtue and wealth. 92. Desires are gratified by thee. 93. Thou art Vishnu. 94. Thou art triumphant everywhere. 95. Thou art capable of bearing (the extremities of heat and cold and any others). 96. Thou art Kṛṣṇa. 97. Thou art the lotus-eyed god. 98. Thou art Nārāyana (the son of Nara). 99. Thou art the final aim. 100. Thou art the resort of all beings. 101. Adoration, adoration (be to thee)'
102. The goddess of the earth, after her desire had been gratified, and after she had thus praised

a fish, is said to have dragged the ship of Manu behind him. (Nand.)
79. This epithet refers to Vishnu's boar-incarnation. See I, 1 seq.
85, 86. See Introduction.
101. Nand. observes that the divers epithets which are given to Vishnu in this chapter are precisely equal in number to the ninety-six chapters, of which the law part of the Vishnu-sūtra is composed. This coincidence is curious enough, though it is not quite perfect. For it is by a highly artificial interpretation only that Nand. makes out Sūtra 101 to contain an epithet of Vishnu, viz. by interpreting the two separate words nāmo nāma as a compound, meaning 'he who is worshipped by the worshipful, i.e. by Brahma and the other gods;' and Sūtra 6 contains no epithet at all.
(Vishnu) with a cheerful mind, addressed herself to the goddess (Lakshmi).

XCIX.

1. After having seen Sṛ (Lakshmi), the goddess of the earth, highly pleased, questioned (in the following manner) that goddess, who was stroking the feet of Vishnu, the god of the gods, who was shining with the splendour of her austerities, and whose face was radiant like melted gold.

2. ‘O charming lady! Thy hands are as beautiful as the expanded red lotus. Thou art holding the feet of him whose navel resembles the expanded red lotus. Thou art constantly residing in an abode resembling the expanded red lotus. Thy waist has the colour of the expanded red lotus.

3. ‘Thy eyes resemble blue lotus-flowers; thy hue is radiant like gold; thy robe is white; thy body is adorned with gems; thy face is radiant like the moon; thou art resplendent like the sun; thy power is immense; thou art the sovereign (or producer) of the world.

4. ‘Thou art repose (final liberation), the highest among the (four) objects of human pursuit; thou art Lakshmi; thou art a support (in danger); thou art Sṛ; thou art indifference (the freedom from all worldly pursuits and appetites, which is the consequence of final emancipation); thou art victory;

4. The ‘four objects of human pursuit’ are, kāma, ‘desire’ (and its gratification), artha, ‘gain,’ dharma, ‘religious merit,’ and moksha, ‘final emancipation.’ The goddess is called Lakshmi, because she is the aim (lakshyate) of all beings. She is called Sṛ, because she serves Purushottama (Vishnu), or because she is the resort of all. (Nand.)
thou art beauty; thou art the splendour (of the sun and moon personified); thou art renown; thou art prosperity; thou art wisdom; thou art the power of expression; thou art the purifier.

5. ‘Thou art the food of the manes; thou art forbearance; thou art the earth (or the repository of wealth); thou art fixity; thou art the basis (or stability); thou art the source of the benefit derived from sacrifices; thou art highest prudence; thou art wide-spread renown; thou art freedom from envy; thou art the food given to the gods; thou art mental power; thou art intelligence.

6. ‘As the first of the gods (Vishnu) pervades the whole aggregate of the three worlds (sky, atmosphere, and earth), even so doest thou, O black-eyed bestower of gifts. Yet I inquire for the dwelling, in which thy superhuman power is residing.’

7. The goddess of the earth having thus spoken to her, Lakshmi, standing by the side of the chief of the gods, enunciated the following answer: ‘I am constantly at the side of the brilliant destroyer of Madhu, O goddess, who shinest like gold.

8. ‘But learn from me, where I reside (besides), O support of the world, from the instruction of him, whom I am constantly reflecting upon in my mind, and whom the virtuous call the husband of Sri, and from my own recollection.

9. ‘I reside in the sun, in the moon, and in the cloudless atmosphere in which the flock of the stars is spread out. (I reside) in that cloud, from which the waters of the rain pour down, in that cloud

6. Lakshmi is said to pervade everything, like Vishnu himself, because she is his Sakti, i.e. his energy or active power personified as his wife. (Nand.)
which is adorned with Indra’s bow, and in that
cloud from which the rays of lightning flash forth.
10. ‘(I reside) in bright gold and silver, and in
spotless gems and clothes, O goddess of the earth.
(I reside) in rows of whitewashed palaces and in
temples decorated with the attributes of deities.
11. ‘(I reside) in fresh cow-dung, in a noble el-
phant in rut, in a horse exulting in his vigour, in
a proud bull, and in a Brâhmaṇa who studies the
Veda.
12. ‘I reside in a throne, in an Âmalaka
(Dhâtri) shrub, in a Bèl tree, in an umbrella, in a
shell (trumpet), in a lotus-flower, in blazing fire, and
in a polished sword or mirror.
13. ‘I reside in jars filled with water and in
painted (halls), in which there are chowries and
fans; in splendid golden vessels, and in earth
recently thrown up.
14. ‘(I reside) in milk, butter, fresh grass, honey,
and sour milk; in the body of a married woman, in
the frame of an unmarried damsel, and in the frame
of (images of) gods, of ascetics, and of officiating
priests.
15. ‘(I reside) in an arrow, in one who has
returned (victorious) from battle, and in one who
has fallen on the field of honour and proceeded to
a seat in heaven; in the sound of (repeating) the
Veda, in the flourish of the shell (trumpet), in the
sacrificial exclamations addressed to the gods and to
the manes, and in the sound of musical instruments.
16. ‘(I reside) in the consecration of a king, in
the marriage ceremony, in a sacrifice, in a bride-
groom, in one who has washed his head, in white
flowers, in mountains, in fruits, in (islets in the
middle of a river and other) pleasant spots, and in large streams.

17. ‘(I reside) in lakes filled with water, in (pure) waters, and in ground covered with fresh grass, in a wood abounding in lotuses (and fruits), in a newborn infant, in a suckling, in one exulting in joy, in a virtuous man, and in one wholly bent upon practising the law.

18. ‘(I reside) in a man who observes approved usages, in one who constantly acts up to the sacred law, in one modestly, and in one splendidly attired, in one who keeps his organs of sense and his mind under control, in one free from sin, in one whose food is pure, and in one who honours his guests.

19. ‘(I reside) in one who is satisfied with his own wife (and does not covet other men’s wives), in one bent upon doing his duty, in one eminently virtuous, in one who refrains from eating too often (i.e. three or four times a day), in one constantly adorned with flowers, in one who associates with such as anoint their limbs with fragrant unguents, in one who is scented with perfumes (himself), and in one adorned (with bracelets and ear-rings).

20. ‘(I reside) in one habitually veracious, in one friendly towards all creatures, in a married householder, in one forbearing, in one free from wrath, in one skilled in his own business, and in one skilled in other men’s business, in one who never thinks of any but propitious things, and in one constantly humble.

21. ‘(I reside) in women who wear proper ornaments always, who are devoted to their husbands, whose speeches are kind, who keep up saving habits, who have sons, who keep their household utensils in
good order, and who are fond of offering domestic oblations.

22. "(I reside) in women who keep the house clean (by scouring it, plastering it with cow-dung, and the like), who keep their organs of sense under control, who are not quarrelsome, contented, strictly observing the law, and charitable; and I always reside in the destroyer of Madhu.

23. 'I do not remain separated from Purushottama ¹ for a single moment.'

C.

1. Those among the twice-born who will act according to (the precepts promulgated in) this excellent law-code, which has been proclaimed by the god himself, shall obtain a most excellent abode in heaven.

2. It purifies from sin, it is auspicious, it leads to heaven, procures long life, knowledge (of the four objects of human pursuit) and renown, and increases wealth and prosperity.

3. It must be studied, it must be borne in mind, it must be recited, it must be listened too, and it must be constantly repeated at Srāddhas by persons desirous of prosperity.

[4. This most sublime, mysterious collection of doctrines has been proclaimed to thee, O goddess of the earth. In a kindly spirit and for the best of the world (have I promulgated) this body of eternal

23. ¹ See I, 51.

C. 2. See XCIX, 4, note.

4. This last clause I consider, for divers reasons, to be an addition made by a modern copyist. ¹. It is not commented upon in
laws, which is conducive to happiness, the best means of purification, destructive of bad dreams, productive of a great deal of religious merit, and the source of prosperity.

Dr. Bühler's copy of the Vaigayantī. 2. It takes up, without any purpose, the speech of Vishnu, which had been concluded in XCVII, 21. 3. Recommendations to study and recite the laws just promulgated, like those contained in C, 1–3, form the conclusion of several other Dharmaśastras. 4. The substantive saubhāgyam is used like an adjective. 5. The first part of the whole passage is a detached hemistic.
GENERAL INDEX.

p. refers to the pages in the Introduction and Notes.

Adoption, xv, 3-27; xxii, 43.
Adultery, v, 40, 41, 192; xxxvii, 9; liii, 2, 8.
Akshay Bar, p. 256.
Alakánandá river, p. 257 seq.
Allahabad, p. 256; lxxxv, 28.
Ascetic (religious mendicant), p. 14; v, 115, 132, 152; vi, 27; viii, 2; lix, 16, 27; lx, 26; lxiii, 36; lxxxi, 18; xcix, 145 duties of, xcvi; female ascetics, p. xxiv; xxxvi, 7.
Astrologers, iii, 75; lxxxi, 7.
Atheism, p. xxx; ix, 31; p. 135; xxxvii, 31; liv, 15.
Auspicious objects, p. xxx; lxiii, 29-33.
Bàramulá, p. 256 seq.
Barbarians (Mlecchás), xxii, 76; lxvi, 49; lxxi, 59; lxxxiv.
Bathing, directions for, xxviii, 5; lxiv.
Bénares, p. xxxiii; lxxxv, 28.
Betwah river, p. 250.
Body, twelve excretions of the human, xxii, 81; apertures, xxiii, 51; parts, p. xx; xcvi, 43-95.
Brâhmans, rank, duties, and livelihood of, ii; lxvii, 31; various privileges of, iii, 26, 58, 63, 72, 73, 76, 96; v, 1-8, 94; ix, 15, 23; xxxiii, 47; lxvii, 34, &c.; objects of royal benevolence, iii, 79, 81-84; sanctity of, xix, 20-23; various gifts to, xlvi, 8; xlix, 2; l, 33; lxxxviii, 6, &c.
Buddhists, pp. xxi, xxx, 202, 312.
Bulls, set at liberty, v, 150; lxxxi; bull’s hide of land, v, 181-183; xci, 4; bull-fights, lxxi, 29.
Caste, the four principal castes, i, 47, 48, 61, 63; ii, iii, 4; xxvii, 18; lxxxiv, 4. Diversity of caste affects the legislation, iii, 56-63; v, 19-26, 35-41, 98-104, &c.; the legal rate of interest, vi, 2; the law of evidence, viii, 15-23; ix, 10-15; the law of inheritance, xviii, 1-40; the performance of funerals, xix, 1-4; the laws regarding impurity, xxii, 1-4, 10-24, 63-65, 73, 84; xxiii, 47, 48; the marriage laws, xxiv, 1-8, 28; xxvi; xxvii, 5; the sacraments, xxvii, 6-9, 15-26; the classification of crimes, xxxv, 1; xxxvi, 1, 6; xxxvii, 13; xxxviii, 1; xl, 1; the law of penance, l, 6-14; li, 50-58; liv, 2-7, 30; lv, 2; lvii, 15, 16, &c.; the acquisition of wealth, ii, 10-15; lviii, 6-8; the sipping of water, lxii, 9; the reception of guests, lxvii, 34-41. Mixed castes, xvi.
Cows, sanctity of, xxxiii, 57-61.
Crime, cause of, xxxiii, 1, 2, 6; nine degrees of, 3-5; xxxiv-xlxi; consequences of, xliv, 1-10; unnatural crimes, v, 42, 44; xxxviii, 4, 5; liii, 3, 4, 7.
Debts, recovery of, vi, 1, 18-26, 40; liability for, 27-39; the ‘three debts,’ lxxxvii, 29.
Dekhan, pp. xxiv, xxx, 257, 258, 259.
Deposits, v, 169-171; xxxvi, 3; lii, 4.
Documents, p. xxiv; iii, 82; v, 9, 10, 187; vi, 23, 25, 26; vii.
Dowry, of a wife, XVII, 18; p. 173; LVIII, 9.
Dvârákâ, p. 258.

Earth, goddess of the, pp. x, xxviii; visits Kâtyâpa, I, 19-21, 30-32; described, 22-29; visits and questions Vishnu, 33-46, 48-62; is addressed by him, 47, 63-65; v, 193; XIX, 24; XXII, 93; XXIII, 46; XLVII, 10; XCVI, 97, 98; converted into an attendant of Vishnu, XCVIII, 1-5; praises him, 6-101; addresses Lakshmi, XCVIII, 102-104, LCXVIII, 6.

Eating, rules relating to, LXVII, 37-43; LXVIII.

Evidence, threefold, VI, 23.

Excrements, voiding of, LX.

Father, v, 120; VI, 33, 35; XV, 43-47; XVI, 1, 16; XVII, 1-3, 6, 18, 20, 23; XVIII, 43; XIX, 3, 4; XXI, 12; XXII, 33, 34, 86; XXIV, 38; XXX, 44, 45; XXXI, 2-10; XXXVII, 6; XLVIII, 20; p. 232; LXIII, 14, 17; p. 238; LXV; LXVII, 28, 29.

Food, forbidden, LI.

Gambling, v, 134, 135; VIII, 2; LVIII, 11; LXII, 45; LXXVIII, 41.

Ganges, p. XXX; XIX, 11, 12; XX, 23; XXXII, 61; LXIV, 17; p. 248; LXXV, 10; p. 257, 258.

Gayâ, pp. 256, 257, 259; LXXXV, 67.

Gifts, from kings to Brâhmazas, III, 81-84; to a woman from her male relatives, XVII, 18; illicit, XXXVII, 12; LIV, 2-8, 14, 15; householder to bestow, LIX, 14-18, 26-28; LXVII, 26-46; various gifts and corresponding rewards, LXXVII, LXXVIII, XC-XCII; persons unworthy to receive, XCIII, 7-10.

Godârâ river, p. 257; LXXXV, 42.

Grants, royal, p. xxi; III, 82, 83.

Guests, reception of, LXVII, 27-46.

Gugarât, p. xxvii.

Gunti river, LXXXV, 43.

Haridvâr, LXXXV, 28.

Hells, twenty-one, XLIII, 1-22; torments inflicted in, 23-45.

Hermit, p. 14; V, 134; XVII, 15, 16; LI, 66; LIX, 27; p. 194; LX, 26; duties of, XCIV, XCV.

Himâlayas, I, 35; XIII, 3; pp. 255, 257 (bis), 258; LXXXV, 65.

Homicide and murder, v, 4, 11, 189-191; XXXV, 1; XXXVI, 1, 2; XXXVII, 13; L, 6-15; LIV, 32; LV, 2.

Householder, p. 14; VI, 38; LI, 66; LIX, 1-19, 27-30; LX, 26; LXI, 1; pp. 224, 228; XCIV, 1; XCIX, 20.

Idols, v, 174; IX, 33; XIV, 2; XXII, 53; XXIII, 34; LXIII, 27; LXV, 1; LXI, 60; LXXII, 8; XC, 20-22; XCIX, 14.

Inauspicious objects, p. XXX; LXXXIII, 34-38.

Incest, v, 7; XXXIV, 1; XXXV, 1; XXXVI, 4-7; LIII, 1.

Indus river, LXXXV, 50.

Inheritance, sons legitimate and adopted, XV, 1-29; exclusion from participation, 30-39; duties incumbent upon the heirs, 39-47; partition of property, XVII, 1-3, 23; XVIII, 1-41; collateral succession, XVII, 4-17; succession to females, 18-21; indivisible property, 22; XVIII, 42-44.

Initiation, XXVII, 15-28; LIV, 26.

Interest, rate of, VI, 2-5, 7, 10-17; on amicable loans, 40; lending money at, II, 13; XL, 1.

Judges, III, 73, 74; V, 180, 195; VII, 3; IX, 33; XI, 10.

Jupiter, planet, XLIX, 9.

Kâsîmr, pp. XV, 257, 258.

Kattivar, pp. XV, 258.

Kings, principal duties of, III, 1-3, 44; their capital, officers, and income, 4-32, 70-75; conduct in peace and war, 33-69, 85-97; liberality enjoined in, 76-84; documents attested by, 82; VII, 2, 3; may not give evidence, VIII, 2; inherit unclaimed property, XVII, 13; are officially pure, XXII, 48, 52.

Krîshna (Kistna) river, p. 259 (bis).

Kshatriyas, rank, duties, and livelihood of, II.
GENERAL INDEX.

Lakshmi, the consort of Vishnu, 1, 43; p. 293; praise of, xcix, i-6; her omnipresence, 7-23.
Law, titles of, p. xxi; four feet of, Lxxxvi, 15.

Manes, obligations to, the see Srâd-dhas.
Marriage, necessity of, xv, 31; xxiv, 38-41; plurality of wives, xv, 41; xviii, 1-40; xxiv, 1-4; xvi, 1-3; intermarriage, p. xxi; xvi, 2-17; xviii, 1-40; xxiv, 1-8; intermarriage forbidden, xxvi, 4-7; ineligible wives, xxiv, 9-16; eight forms of, 17-17; xvii, 19, 20; ceremony of, xxi, 32, 53; xxiv, 5-8; xxvii, 14; xxviii, 18; liv, 16; xcix, 16; connubial intercourse, LIX.

Mind, xxii, 92; lxxii, 1, 2, 6, 7; xcvi, 96.
Mother, vi, 31, 32; xvi, 2; xvii, 7; xviii, 34; xxiv, 38; xxi, 2-10; xxiv, 1; xxvii, 6; xlvi, 20; lxxi, 1; lxxii, 29.

Nilgiri hills, lxxxv, 13.

Oceans, i, 15; lxxxvii, 9.

Ordeals, p. xxiv; vi, 23; general rules, ix; ordeal by balance, x; ordeal by fire, xi; ordeal by water, xii; ordeal by poison, xiii; ordeal by sacred libation, xiv.

Orders, the four, i, 47, 63; iii, 3; lxi, 27-29; lx, 26; p. 232.

Outcasts, viii, 2; xv, 32, 35; xvii, 22; xxii, 56, 57; xxx, 14; xxv, 3-5; p. 136 (bis); xlvi, 25; li, 11; liv, 25; lvii, 3, 4; lxxi, 17; lxxii, 15, 23.

Pañgâb, pp. xv, 259.

Penance, for perjury, viii, 16, 17; liv, 9; for impurity, xxii, 9-18, 58-80; for students, xxviii, 48-53; xxxii, 9; li, 43-45; for the nine principal degrees of crime, xxxiv-xxlii; various forms of, xlvi-xlvi; l, 1-5, 15-24, &c.; for homicide and murder, l, 6-14; lv, 2, 3; for taking life and cutting plants, l, 25-50; for tasting forbidden food, li, 1-58; for theft, lii, 1-14; for illicit intercourse, liii; for various offences, liv; for secret sins, lv.

Phalgu river, lxxxv, 22.
Physicians, v, 175-177; li, 10; lxxi, 66; lxxxii, 9.
Pledges, v, 181-184; vi, 2, 5-8.
Pokur (Pushkara), p. 205; lxxxv, 1-3; p. 258.
Possession, v, 184-187.

Priests, iii, 70; xxiv, 20; xxix, 3, 4; lxxxvi, 17; xcvi, 1; xcix, 14.
Property, of minors, &c., iii, 65; separate property of a woman, xvii, 18; three kinds of, lviii.
Punishment, theory of, iii, 90-95; v, 193-196; fines, iv, 14; for capital crimes, v, 1-18; for abuse and assault, 19-39, 60-76; for illicit intercourse, 40-47; for theft, &c., 48-59, 77-90; for various offences, 91-182; for unjustly accusing a creditor, vi, 18.

Purification, of men and animals, xxii; of things, xxiii.

Qualities (in philosophy), xcvi, 53; p. 287; xcvi, 2, 16, 17.

Sacraments, ii, 3; p. 106; xxvii, 1-17, 26.

Sacrifices, regular, lxix, 1-13; five principal, 20-26; xciv, 5.

Sacrosanct fees, i, 8; ii, 11; xxii, 4, 16; l, 31; lxxxiii, 26; lxxiv, 1; lxxxvi, 17; xc, 4; xcvi, 1.

Sales, laws of, v, 124-130, 164-166, 174; xxxvii, 14; li, 12; liv, 17-22; lviii, 10.

Satara, p. 259.

Sattee, p. xxix seq.; xx, 39; xxv, 14.

Self-defence, v, 188-190.


Sighting water, lxii.

Sleep, rules relating to, lxx.

Sone river, lxxxv, 33.

Sons, legal position of, v, 120; vi, 32, 35, 36; xv, 28-43; xvi, 16; xvii, 1-3, 23; xviii, 1-40; twelve kinds of, xv, 1-27; merit of having, 44-47.
Student, p. 14; V, 132; XVII, 12, 16; XXII, 44, 85-87; LI, 43-45; LIX, 27; LX, 26; XCVI, 35; duties of, XXVIII, XXXI, XXXII; perpetual, XXV, 17; XXVIII, 46; study of the Veda, XXX.

Suicides, XXII, 47, 56, 58-60.
Sureties, V, 121; VI, 41-43.
Surju river, LXXXV, 32.

Srâdhas, Sapinda Karana, XX, 33; XXII, 12-23; Ekoddhara, XXII, 1-11; Nâandimukha, p. 92; Nāvarâdha, XLVIII, 21; regular Srâddhas (Pârvana, &c.), LXXIII, LXXVI; Anvârâkâ, LXXIV; special, LXXVII; heavenly rewards for, LXXVIII; general rules, LXXIX-LXXXI; unfit and fit guests and places, LXXXII-LXXXV.

Sûdras, rank, duties, and livelihood of, II; their degraded position, XVIII, 5; XIX, 1-4; XXVI, 4-7; XXVII, 9; XXVIII, 40; &c.

Taxes, II, 12; III, 16, 22-30.
Teeth, cleaning the, LXI.
Theft, III, 66, 67; V, 6, 77-90, 136; XXXV, 1; XXXVI, 3; XLIV, 12-43; XLV, 5, 9-14, 25; XLVIII, 22; LII; LV, 5; LVIII, 11.

Tolls, III, 16, 31; V, 131-133.
Travelling, rules relating to, LXIII, 2-51; LXXI, 69.
Treasure-trove, III, 56-64.
Trimbak, p. 257 (bis).
Tûngabhadra, p. 259.

Vaiyás, rank, duties, and livelihood of, II.
Vindhya, pp. xxvii, 256, 258.

Week, pp. xxix, xxxii; LXXVIII, 1-7.
Widow, 'appointment' of, pp. xxiv, 312; XV, 3; her right of inheritance, XVII, 4; self-immolation of, see Sattee.
Witnesses, V, 120; VI, 24; VII, 2-4, 13; incompetent, VIII, 2-6; competent, 7-9; p. 312; examination of, 10-39; perjury conditionally sanctioned, 15; false, V, 179; VII, 8; VIII, 37, 40; X, 9; XXXVI, 2; LIV, 9.

Women, legal position of, VI, 15, 30-32, 37; VII, 10; VIII, 2; IX, 23; XV, 2-25; XVI, 1, 2; XVII, 4, 5, 7, 18, 22; XVIII, 34, 35; XXII, 19, 32; XXIV, 38-41; XXVI; duties of, XXV; XCIX, 21, 22.

Yamunâ (Jumna), LXXXV, 35.
SANSKRIT INDEX.

p. refers to the pages in the Introduction and Notes.

Abhinirmukta, p. xxvii.
Abhrāmāsa, p. 274.
Adbhur, LXVII, 10.
Ādityadarśana, XXVII, 10.
Ādityas, XIV, 2; LXIII, 12.
Aghamarśana, 1. hymn of, XXII, 10; LV, 7; LVI, 3, &c.; 2. penance, XLVI, 2-9.
Agni, p. 41; XXI, 7; LXVII, 3; LXXXIII, 12, 15; p. 234; LXXXIX, I, 2; XC, 3; XCI, 13.
Agnihotra, LIX, 2; LXVII, 44; LXVIII, 6.
Agnihotrin, LXVIII, 6; LXXXVII, 6.
Āgrayana, LX, 6.
Āhīna sacrifice, p. 137; LIV, 25.
Ākāśa, LXVII, 20.
Aksha, IV, 8, 9.
Aksāyodaka, p. 84.
Aksikūre, p. 286.
Ākṣāra, XXIX, 1.
Ākṣādaka, p. 261.
Ākṣyuta (‘eternal’), I, 60; LXVII, 2; XCIII, 81.
Amedhya, p. 102.
Ārāṇya, XXIX, 1.
Ārāṇyaka, p. 251.
Āśīrva (‘eternal’), I, 60; LXVII, 2; XCIII, 81.
Āśīrvaṇa, LXVII, 2.
Āśīrvaṇāna, XXVII, 11.
Antya, p. 29.
Anumati, LXVII, 3.
Anvashrakās, LXXXIII, 9; LXXIV, 1; LXVI, 1.
Aparāraka, p. xxxii.
Aparastamba, pp. ix, xiii, xvi, xx, xxii, xxiii, xxxi, xxxii, xxxvi.
Arbuda, p. 284.
Ārdra, p. 177.
Arsha, I, p. 106 seq.; 2. marriage, XXIV, 18, 21, 31, 35.
Āryāvarta, p. xxx; LXXXV, 4.
Ashrákās, LXXXIII, 8; LXXIV, 1; LXXVI, 1.
Asuras, I, 16, 60; LXXXIII, 11; p. 250; XCIII, 80; Āsura marriage, XXIV, 18, 24.
Āsvins, LXV, 2; XC, 24.
Ātharvavīras, LVI, 22.
Ātharva-veda, pp. xi, xxxi; V, 191; XXX, 37.
Ātiguru, XXXI, 1.
Atikṣikāra penance, LIV, 30.
Atipātakāṇi, p. xxx.
Ātisāntapana penance, XLVI, 21.
Atithi, etymology of, LXVII, 34.
Ātreyī, Atrigotrā, p. 133 seq.
Avākīrṇa, XXVIII, 52.
Āvyakta, pp. 286, 289.
Āyogava caste, XVI, 4, 8.
Bālātapa, p. 227.
Bālī-offerings, XLIX, 3; LXI, 24; LXVII, 4-22.
Bandhu, XVII, 10.
Baudhāyana, pp. ix, xiii, xvi, xix, xx, xxii, xxiii.
Bhagavat (‘venerable’), I, 18, 61; XLIX, 1; LXV, 1; p. 208; XC, 3; XCVII, 10; XCVIII, 2, 3.
Bhāgavata-purāṇa, p. xxviii.
Bhāgavatas, p. xxviii.
Bhārundas, LVI, 13.
Brahman, I, 1, 50; XX, 13-16, 23; XXIV, 33; XXVIII, 47; XXX, 31; XXXI, 7, 10; XLVII, 10; LIXIX, 8; LI, 61; LV, 10, 17, 18; LX, 1; LXII, 2, 6; LXVII, 19; p. 256; XCVII, 7; p. 289; XCVIII, 29, 37; pp. 292, 296; Brāhma marriage, XVII, 19; XXIV, 18, 19, 29, 33.

X 2
Brähmanapriya, p. 293.
Brihaspati, xc, 3.

Dadhikrāvan, LXXV, 12.
Daityas, I, 49; XX, 25; p. 295.
Daiva marriage, XXIV, 18, 20, 30, 34.
Daksha, XLVIII, 8.
Darapūraṇamāsa sacrifices, LIX, 4.
Dattaka, xv, 18.
Devakāta, p. 205.
Dhanvantari, LXXVII, 3.
Dharaṇā, IV, 12.
Dhārāma, p. 281.
Dharma, X, 10; LXXVII, 10; xc, 10, 28.
Dharma-sūtra, pp. ix, xii-xiv, xvi-xx, xxv, xxix, xxxii.
Dharmaśāstra (‘Institutes of the Sacred Law’), p. xxxii; III, 70; VIII, 8; XXX, 38; LXXIII, 16; LXXXIII, 8.
Dhāra, etymology of, X, 10.
Dināra, p. xxv.
Drona, p. 101.
Drupadā-sāvitrī, LXXV, 21.
Durgā-sāvitrī, LVI, 9.
Dvīpas, the seven, I, 15, 16.

Gandharvas, I, 17; XXIV, 37; L, 63; XCI, 12; Gāndharva marriage, XXIV, 18, 23, 28, 37.
Gaṇeśa, pp. xix, xxi.
Garbha, p. 113.
Gāruḍa-purāṇa, pp. xxix, 141, 143, 281.
Gāthās, p. xvii.
Gautama, pp. x, xvi, XX, xxxvi.
Gāyatrī (Sāvitrī), p. xi; XXII, 10, &c.; sanctity of, XXVIII, 38; LIV, 26; LV, 11-21; LXIV, 39.
Gorōkana, p. 105.
Gosūkta, LVI, 18.
Gotra, p. 106 seq.
Govinda, p. 9.
Govrata penance, L, 16-24.

Gagannātha, 1. epithet of Vishnu, I, 58; 2. jurist, pp. 63, 64.
Ganārādana, I, 19, 31.
Gātakarman, XXVII, 4.


Hari, I, 36.
Hasta, p. 56.
Hiranyakesin, pp. ix, xiii, xvii.

Indra (Sakra, Vāsava), V, 196; XX, 23-25; XXX, 6; LXVII, 3, 15; p. 242; xc, 3; xcix, 9.
Iṣṭakās, LXVII, 7.
Iṣhī Vairavānari, LIX, 10.
Iṣvara, p. 199.
Ithāsa (‘Epics’), pp. xxxii; III, 70; XXX, 38; LXXIII, 16; LXXIII, 7.

Kāraṇa, I, 54.
Kaiyata, p. xiv.
Kāla, XX, 21-28.
Kālāpaka, Kālāpas, pp. xiv, xxvi.
Kalpa, I, 1; XX, 12, 17, 24; XLIII, 23.
Kāmādeva, p. 292.
Kapila, XCIII, 85.
Karsha, Kārśāpaṇa, IV, 13.
Kauyapa, I, 20, 21, 30-33; XX, 26; p. 292.
Kātha, Kāthas, pp. ix, xiv-xvi, xxv-xxvii.
Kātha, p. xv.

Kāṭaka, pp. xi, xii, xiv-xxv, xxv-xxvii, 85, 186, 208-210, 213, 233, 236, 261, 262.
Kāṭaka Srauta-sūtra, pp. xii, xiv, xxvi.
Kāyasthas (‘scribes’), pp. xxiv, xxx; VII, 3.
Ketava, I, 39; XLIX, 8.
Ketavannyaaka (king), pp. xxxiii.
Khandaṇāruṇa, p. 295.
Krikṣtra penance, LII, 5; LIV, 25 seq.
Krikṣbratekrikṣtra penance, XLVI, 13.
Krīṣna, p. 9; LXXV, 59; XCIII, 96.

Krishna, L, 6, 7.
Kṣīroda (milk-ocean), I, 32-39.
Kullūka, pp. xxxv, 17, 27, 51, 52, 70, 74 (passim), 75, 96, 100, 104, 118, 139, 147, 160, 166, 170, 172, 179, 184, 216, 227, 241, 249, 250, 274, 280.

Kundāsin, p. 148.
Kūṣumaṇḍaṇis, p. xi; VIII, 16; LVI, 7; LXXVI, 12.
Kandāla (Kândāla) caste, origin and position of, XVI, 6, 11, 14.
Kandra, xci, 12.
Kândrâyana penance, various forms of, XLVII.
Karakas, pp. xv, xvi, xxvi.
Karaka-sākha. See Kâtbaka.
Karanañyūha, pp. xiv, xcv.
Kârâyañyas, p. xv. See also Kâtbas, Kâtbaka, Kâtbaka Gṛhya-sūtra.
Kâtryugasa, xx, 10-12; xlix, 46.
Lakshmīpati, p. 293.
Mâdhaba, p. 70.
Madhu, slayer of (Vishnū), I, 40, 44, 54; xcix, 22.
Mâdhvî, Mâdhûka, Mâdhvika wines, xxii, 82, 83.
Madhyama, p. 17.
Madyânugata, p. 139.
Mâghadha caste, XVI, 5, 10.
Mahâbhârata, pp. xxviii, xxix, 9, 51, 81 (bis), 82, 131, 132, 215, 279, 295.
Mahâbhâshya. See Patañjali.
Mahâpragâpati, p. 292.
Mahârâgasa, xcviii, 40, 41.
Mahârâvâ, p. xxvii.
Mahâsântapanâ penance, XLVI, 20.
Mahâvrata, i. penance, L, 1-5; 2. Sâman, LXVI, 24.
Mahidhara, p. 209.
Maireya, xxii, 83.
Maitrâyâvyas, pp. xvi, xxvi, xxvii.
Mâswa, etymology of, LI, 78.
Mânava Gṛhya-sūtra, pp. xxvi, 213.
Mânava, pp. xxv-xcvii.
Mânava Srauta-sūtra, p. xxvi.
Manogâna, p. 260.
Mantra, i. epithet of Vishnû, I, 53; 2. Mantras in the Vishnû-sūtra, pp. x-xii; 3. purificatory, LVII.
Manu, i. code of, pp. ix, xxii-xxvii, xxxi; 2. Manus, xx, 24.
Manvantara, xx, 11; XLIII, 24.
Maruts, LXVII, 13.
Mâsha, IV, 7, 8.
Mâshaka, IV, 9, 11, 12.
Medhâtithi, pp. 139, 178.
Mitâksharâ. See Vignânesvara.
Mitrâ, LXVII, 3.
Mitramitra, p. xxxiii.
Mrityu, LXVII, 10.
Mûlakrikkhra penance, XLVI, 15.
Nâgavana, p. 15.
Nâga, p. 204.
Nakshastras, twenty-eight, LXXVIII, 8-35.
Nâmadheya, LXXVII, 5.
Nâmaka, p. xxi.
Nandapanâtha, pp. xxxii-xxxvi.
Nârada-smriti, pp. xvi, xxii, xxv.
Nârâyana, I, 50; pp. 280, 281; xcviii, 98.
Nâstikavrûti, p. 177.
Nirukta. See Yâska.
Nishâda caste, LI, 14.
Nishekakarman, LXXVII, 1.
Nishka, IV, 10.
Niyoga, p. xxiv; XV, 3.
Om, xxx, 33; LV, 9-21; xcviii, 6.
Pâkayaññas, LV, 20; LX, 1.
Pâma, IV, 14.
Pâñâgavya, p. 89.
Pâñâaka, LXXIII, 5-9; LXXIV, 1.
Pâñâlās, p. xv seq.
Parâka penance, LXVI, 18.
Parapûrvâ, p. 91.
Parâkrikṣa penance, LXVI, 23.
Pârvika, p. 190.
Pajûndha, LX, 5.
Pâtâka, p. 200.
Pâtâla, i, 15.
Patañjali, i. grammarian, p. xiv; 2. philosopher, p. 281.
Pattrâ, p. 74.
Pâvamâns, LV, 8.
Pâjâs, I, 17; LI, 73; p. 250; Pâjâsaka marriage, XXIV, 18, 26.
Pitrârpani, LXVIII, 23.
Pradyumnâ, LXII, 2.
Prâgâpati (the lord of creatures), LV, 18; LVII, 11; LXII, 1, 6; LXVII, 3; LXVII, 1, &c.; Prâgâpata marriage, XXIV, 18, 22, 32, 36; Prâgâpata penance, XLVI, 10.
Prâkrâmakap, p. xxx.
Prâkâra, p. 75.
Prâkâryâma, LV, 9.
Prâstha, xc, 1.
Prâtiâkhyas, p. 254.
Prâvâgita, p. xxx.
Prâvâgita, p. xxx.
Pukkas caste, XVI, 5, 9.
Pumâsvâna, XVII, 2.
Punarbhû, XV, 8, 9.
Purāna ('Legends'), p. xxxii; XXX, 38; LXXIII, 16; LXXXIII, 7.

Purusha, XX, 16, 19; LXIV, 28; LXVII, 2; pp. 287-289; XCVII, 1, 7-9, 15, 16; p. 294; XCVIII, 83, 84.

Purushasūkta, pp. xi, 156; LV, 6; LVI, 26; LXIV, 23, 28, &c.

Purushavrata, LVI, 15.

Purushottama, I, 51, 58; XCIX, 23.

Pūshan, LXXVI, 9.

Pustaka, p. xxii seq.; XVIII, 44; XXIII, 56.

Putra, etymology of, XV, 44.

Rahasya, p. 11.

Rākshasas, I, 17; p. 250; XCIII, 12; Rākshasa marriage, XXIV, 18, 25.

Rāmāyaṇa, pp. xiv, 51, 79.

Rasātala, I, 12, 45; p. 3.

Raurava, p. 140.

Revati, xc, 26.

Rig-veda, XXX, 26, 34.

Rīshi, the seven, I, 16; XX, 26; XXIV, 9; XXXVII, 29; XLVII, 10; XLVIII, 6, 17; LXI, 29; LXXI, 83; p. 259. Cf. Arsha.

Rītiga, XXIII, 3.

Rudra, XLVII, 10; LXXIII, 12; p. 256.

Śāhasa, p. 48.

Sakulya, XVII, 11.

Samānārāhapaśravā, p. 107.

Sāma-veda, p. x; I, 4, 6; XXX, 26, 36.

Samyāva, LI, 37.

Sandhini, p. 167.

Śāṅkharaṇa, LXVII, 2.

Śāṅkhyya, pp. xxiv, xxviii, 286 seq.; XCVIII, 86.

Śaṅtapanaka penance, XLVI, 19.

Sapinda, p. 68; XII, 5.

Sapindikarana, XX, 33, 34; XXI, 12-23.

Satya, LXVII, 2.

Śāvitrī. See Gāyatrī.

Śāvya, pp. 209, 220.

Śhrtiśadana, p. 268 seq.

Śimantonnayana, XCVII, 3.

Śnātaka, pp. 120, 203; duties of, LXI.

Soma, 1. god, XXI, 6; LXVII, 3, 18; p. 234; LXXVI, 16; 2. Soma-sacrifice, I, 8; XXXII, 8; LI, 9, 25; LIV, 25; LX, 8, 9, &c.; 3. Soma juice or plant, I, 6; LIV, 17; p. 178 seq.

Sthānaka, p. 284.

Śrīdāna, XVIII, 18.

Suprajāpati, p. 292.

Suras, I, 16, 60.

Śūrya, XCII, 11.

Śūta caste, XVI, 6, 13.

Suvarna, IV, 9, 10.


Śvayambhū ('the self-existent'), XV, 44; LI, 61.

Śvayamhitabhadha, p. 74.

Śvayamvara, p. 110.

Śakti, p. 298.

Śaṅkara, pp. 9, 292, 293, 295 (bis).

Sesha, I, 39-41.

Śīlaphalaka, p. 118.

Śīras, LV, 9.

Śtakrikkhastra penance, XLVI, 12.

Śiva, p. xxx; XXXI, 7; pp. 258, 295.

Śrī, XCIX, 1, 4, 8; Śrī Hiranyakesā, LXVII, 9.

Śrīphalakrikkhastra penance, XLVI, 16.

Śulka, XVII, 18.

Śvapaḍa caste, p. 29; LXVII, 26.

Śvetadvipa, XLIX, 4.

Taksha, LXVII, 5.

Taptakrikkastra penance, XLVI, 11.

Tirtha, 1. place of pilgrimage, II, 16; V, 132; XXIII, 46; XXXV, 6; XXXVI, 8; LXXIII, 9; LXXXV; 2. parts of the hand called Tirtha, LXII, 1-4, 6; LXIV, 30, 31.

Trasareṇu, IV, 1.

Tretā fires, XXXI, 7, 8; p. 191.

Tretā Yuga, see Yuga.

Trimūrti, p. xxii.

Triṣāviketa, LXXXIII, 2.

Trisuparna, LXI, 23; LXXXIII, 16.

Tulāpurusha penance, XLVI, 22.

Tushita, XCVIII, 47.

Udakakrikkhastra penance, XLVI, 14.

Uḍāḍhyāya, XXIX, 2.

Uṇākarman, XXX, 1-3, 24; p. 312.

Upanishads, I, 9.

Upatasha, LXVII, 5.

Uragnas, I, 17.

Ushnisha, p. 205.

Utsarga, XXX, 1-3, 25; p. 312.

Vaidehaka caste, XVI, 6, 12.
Vaiguṇḍyantī, p. xxxii.
Vaiṣkuntā, XCVIII, 59.
Vaiśravaṇa, LXVII, 14.
Vaiśravāda, sacrifice, rules relating to the, LXIX, 13, 22; LXVII.
Vaittarāni, river, p. 141.
Vākaspati ('the lord of holy speech'), I, 58; XCVIII, 18.
Vālginda, XLIV, 30.
Varadarāja, p. 70.
Varāhamihira, pp. xxiii, xxxii.
Vārāhīmāsā, p. 249.
Varuna, LXVII, 3, 11, 17; XCI, 2.
Vāsishṭha, pp. xvi-xx, xxvii, xxxvii, xxxii.
Vāstoshpati, LXVII, 3, 11.
Vasu, LXXXIII, 12; p. 235.
Vāsudeva, I, 60; XLIX, 1; LXV, 1; p. 208; LXVII, 2; XC, 3, 17, 19-21; XCVII, 10; XCVIII, 8.
Vasusheha, I, 59.
Veda, or Vedas collectively, I, 16; III, 70; XXII, 90, &c.; three Vedas, p. xxxi; VIII, 8; XXXI, 7; LV, 10, &c.; four Vedas, I, 3; XXX, 34-37.
Vedaṅgas, p. xxxii; I, 16, 53; XXVIII, 35; XXIX, 1; XXX, 3; LXXXIII, 6.
Vighnānevara, pp. xxxii, 62, 70, 74, 100, 182, 229, 241, 246, 250.
Virvedavās, LXVII, 31; LXXXIII, 27; offerings to the, see Vaiśravāda.
Vratas of a student, p. 121.
Vratī, p. 92.
Vṛātya, xxvii, 27.
Vyāhritis, LV, 9-21; Vyāhritī Sāmans, LVI, 12.
Vyākarana ('Grammar'), pp. xxxi, 4; LXXXIII, 7.
Vyātīpāta, LXVII, 4.
Vyāgnavalkya, pp. x, xvi, xx-xxii, xxv, xx, xxxii (bis).
Yagur-veda, pp. x, xiii-xvi, xxv, xxvi; XXX, 26, 35.
Yakshas, I, 17.
Yama, XX, 39; XLIII, 32, 33, 37; LXIV, 42; LXVII, 16; Yama Aṅgiras, XXI, 8; p. 234.
Yāsaka, pp. xiv, xviii, xxii seq.
Yatra kvañotpādita, p. 63 seq.
Yatudhānas, LXXXIII, 11; LXXXI, 4.
Yoga, pp. xx, xxiv, xxviii; XCVII, 6.
Yoga-Jāstra, pp. xx, 281.
Yuga, xx, 6-12; XCI, 3.
Yugadāya, p. 266.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

1, 17 (p. 4) read Rākshasas — I, 22 (p. 5) for bow read shaft — V, 48 (p. 29) and V, 77 (p. 31) for or one read and one — VIII, 9 (p. 49) before one add and approved by both (parties) — XIV, 4 (p. 61) close before an — XVIII, 19, 22 (p. 72) for Sūdra read Vaiśya — XVIII, 38 (p. 73) for two parts read eight parts — XXI, 1 (p. 83) read clothes, ornaments, and — XXI, 5 (p. 84) for added fuel to read strewed grass round — XXII, 68 (p. 94) for head read beard — XXIII, 22 (p. 100) for sesamum read mustard — XXIII, 36 (p. 101) read grain exceeding — XXIII, 38 (p. 102) read cow, trodden or smeared — XXIV, 7 (p. 106) for whip read goad — XXX, 3 (p. 123) invert the position of Upākarman and Utsarga — XLIX, 8 (p. 156) ditto of full and new — LI, 57, 58 (p. 169) for left read given.

Notes: page 12, after -4-9 add (14) and after -16, 17. add M. x, 63; Y. 1, 122 — p. 14, note 1, before -79, 80. add 77, 78. Y. 1, 308, 313. -78. M. vii, 79. — p. 25, note 1, read 140-146...XLV, L. Add at the end of this note —196. M. viii, 386 — p. 30 add 52. I have translated the reading paṅkharatam, which however is hardly so appropriate as the reading paṅkharatam, ‘fifty’ kārshapānas. See M. viii, 2, 97 — p. 32 add 88. It is perhaps more advisable to translate 'shall pay')... (as a fine),' than to supply the above parentheses. The reading of Nand.’s gloss is doubtful — p. 42, l. 7 from below, after 45 add ; Colebrooke, Dig. i, 5, CLXXXV. —37. Y. II, 48. — p. 54 add 20, 22. The translation of śrīsha by ‘fine’ rests upon Nand.’s comment — p. 62 add Gautama (XVIII, 6) speaks of the appointment of ‘one who belongs to the same caste’ (Bühler); but the term yonimātra is ambiguous, and may be referred to ‘relatives on the mother’s side’ as well. — p. 123, note 1, read 34-38 and 43-47 — p. 131, 17, read The next proverb (18) — p. 132, 3, read XXXIII — p. 138, 35, read XLVII and XLVI, 18. — p. 162 add 5. Thus Nand. Taken as part of a Dvandva compound, vratāni would mean ‘and the Vratas.’ See M. XI, 152 — p. 185, 3 and p. 186, 26 read x, 190 and x, 90. — p. 190 read LIX, 1. M. III, 67 — p. 198, 5 add ‘ekakara, “one who has one hand only” (Nand.), may also mean “with one hand.” ‘ See Āpast. i, i, 4, 21; Gaut. IX, 11. — p. 202, 36.1 Professor Max Müller points out to me, that the Buddhist Bhikshus do ‘wear the marks of an order to which they do not belong’—na vidhivat pravraganti. Viewed in this light, Nand.’s interpretation tends to confirm my own. Cf. Āpast. i, 6, 18, 31.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| א ├─── א ├─── י ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── ל ├─── מ ├─── נ ├─── ע ├─── פ ├─── צ ──── ע ├─── ק ├─── л ├─── м ├─── н ├─── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── ك ──── ل ──── م ──── ن ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── ك ──── ل ──── م ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── ك ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ────ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──── м ──── н ──── ع ──── ف ──── ض ──── ع ──── к ──── л ──
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHINESE</th>
<th>Y</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HEBREW</td>
<td></td>
<td>א</td>
<td>י</td>
<td>נ</td>
<td>ס</td>
<td>ב</td>
<td>פ</td>
<td>ס</td>
<td>ת</td>
<td>ל</td>
<td>ה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARABIC</td>
<td></td>
<td>ا</td>
<td>ي</td>
<td>ن</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ب</td>
<td>ف</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ت</td>
<td>ل</td>
<td>ه</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERSIAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>ا</td>
<td>ی</td>
<td>ن</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ب</td>
<td>ف</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ت</td>
<td>ل</td>
<td>ه</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERSIAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>ا</td>
<td>ی</td>
<td>ن</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ب</td>
<td>ف</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ت</td>
<td>ل</td>
<td>ه</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>ز</td>
<td>ه</td>
<td>ن</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ب</td>
<td>ف</td>
<td>س</td>
<td>ت</td>
<td>ل</td>
<td>ه</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANSKRIT</td>
<td></td>
<td>ॐ</td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>व</td>
<td>स</td>
<td>त</td>
<td>थ</td>
<td>ध</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>ह</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISSONARY ALPHABET</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Class</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSONANTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Semivocalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Spiritus asper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 lenis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 asper assimilatus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 lenis assimilatus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Tenuis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 aspiata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 assimilata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Media</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 aspiata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 assimilata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Nasalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Semivocalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 mollis 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 mollis 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 Spiritus asper 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 asper 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 lenis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 asperimus 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 asperimus 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentales modificatae</td>
<td>38 Tenuis</td>
<td>39 &quot; aspirata</td>
<td>40 Media</td>
<td>41 &quot; aspirata</td>
<td>42 Nasalis</td>
<td>43 Semivocalis</td>
<td>44 &quot; fricata</td>
<td>45 &quot; diacritica</td>
<td>46 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>47 &quot; lenis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Labiales.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>48 Tenuis</th>
<th>p</th>
<th>49 &quot; aspirata</th>
<th>ph</th>
<th>50 Media</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>51 &quot; aspirata</th>
<th>bh</th>
<th>52 Tenuissima</th>
<th>p</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 Nasalis</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>54 Semivocalis</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>55 &quot; aspirata</td>
<td>hw</td>
<td>56 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>57 &quot; lenis</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 Anusvāra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 Visarga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missionary Alphabet</td>
<td>III Class</td>
<td>II Class</td>
<td>I Class</td>
<td>Vowels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zend</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vowels**

1. Neutralis
2. Laryngo-palatalis
3. " longa
4. Gutturals brevis
5. " longa
6. Palatals brevis
7. " longa
8. Dentalis brevis
9. " longa
10. Lingualis brevis
11. " longa
12. Labialis brevis
13. " longa
14. Gutturo-palatalis brevis
15. Gutturo-palatalis
16. Gutturo-palatalis brevis
17. Gutturo-palatalis
18. Gutturo-labialis brevis
19. Gutturo-labialis
20. Gutturo-labialis brevis
21. Gutturo-labialis
22. Gutturo-labialis brevis
23. Gutturo-labialis
24. Palatals brevis
25. Palatals brevis
26. Labialis brevis
27. Labialis brevis
28. Labialis
29. Labialis brevis
30. Labialis
31. Labialis brevis
32. Labialis
33. Labialis brevis
34. Labialis
35. Labialis brevis
36. Labialis
37. Labialis brevis
38. Labialis
39. Labialis brevis
40. Labialis
41. Labialis brevis
42. Labialis
43. Labialis brevis
44. Labialis
45. Labialis brevis
46. Labialis
47. Labialis brevis
48. Labialis
49. Labialis brevis
50. Labialis
51. Labialis brevis
52. Labialis
53. Labialis brevis
54. Labialis
55. Labialis brevis
56. Labialis
57. Labialis brevis
58. Labialis
59. Labialis brevis
60. Labialis
61. Labialis brevis
62. Labialis
63. Labialis brevis
64. Labialis
65. Labialis brevis
66. Labialis
67. Labialis brevis
68. Labialis
69. Labialis brevis
70. Labialis
71. Labialis brevis
72. Labialis
73. Labialis brevis
74. Labialis
75. Labialis brevis
76. Labiais
August, 1881.


BOOKS

PUBLISHED FOR THE UNIVERSITY BY

HENRY FROWDE,

AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,

7 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON.

ALSO TO BE HAD AT THE

CLARENDON PRESS DEPOSITORY, OXFORD.

——

LEXICONS, GRAMMARS, &c.

(See also Clarendon Press Series pp. 24, 26.)

A Greek-English Lexicon, by Henry George Liddell, D.D.,
1870. 4to. cloth, 11. 16s.

A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, compiled from the
best authorities. 1850. 34mo. bound, 3s.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentsation, by H. W.
Chandler, M.A. 1862. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Etymologicon Magnum. Ad Codd. MSS. recensuit et notis

Suidae Lexicon. Ad Codd. MSS. recensuit Thomas Gaisford,
S.T.P. Tomi III. 1834. fol. cloth, 3l. 2s.

Scheller's Lexicon of the Latin Tongue, with the German ex-
planations translated into English by J. E. Riddle, M.A. 1835. fol.
cloth, 11. 11s.

A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's
Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten by
Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D., and Charles Short, LL.D., Professor of
Latin in Columbia College, New York. 1879. 4to. cloth, 11. 11s. 6d.

Scriptores Rei Metricae. Edidit Thomas Gaisford, S.T.P.
Tomi III. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Sold separately:

Hephaestion, Terentianus Maurus, Proclus, cum annotationibus, etc.
Tomi II. 10s. Scriptores Latini. 5s.

[2]
The Book of Hebrew Roots, by Abu 'L-Walid Marwân ibn Janâh, otherwise called Rabbi Yônâh. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by Ad. Neubauer. 1875. 4to. cloth, 21. 7s. 6d.


Thesaurus Syriacus: colledgeunt Quatremère, Bernstein, Lorschbach, Arnoldi, Field: edidit R. Payne Smith, S.T.P.R.

Fasc. I-V. 1868-79. sm. fol. each, 11. 1s.

A Practical Grammar of the Sanskrit Language, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, for the use of English Students, by Monier Williams, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. Fourth Edition, 1877. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By Monier Williams, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. 1872. 4to. cloth, 4l. 14s. 6d.

Nalopâkhyânam. Story of Nala, an Episode of the Mahâ-Bhârata: the Sanskrit text, with a copious Vocabulary, and an improved version of Dean Milman's Translation, by Monier Williams, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Improved. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 15s.


An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late Richard Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. Vigfússon. With an Introduction, and Life of Richard Cleasby, by G. Webbe Dasent, D.C.L. 1874. 4to. cloth, 3l. 7s.

A List of English Words the Etymology of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to the above. By W. W. Skeat, M.A., stitched, 2s.


Cornish Drama (The Ancient). Edited and translated by E. Norris, Esq., with a Sketch of Cornish Grammar, an Ancient Cornish Vocabulary, etc. 2 vols. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

The Sketch of Cornish Grammar separately, stitched, 2s. 6d.

An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, arranged on an Historical Basis. By W. W. Skeat, M.A., Elrington and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon in the University of Cambridge, To be completed in Four Parts. Parts I-III, 4to. 10s. 6d. each. Part IV. In the Press.
GREEK CLASSICS, &c.


Aeschylus: Annotationes Guil. Dindorffii. Partes II. 1841. 8vo. clotb, 10s.

Aeschylus: Scholia Graeca, ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a Guil. Dindorffio. 1851. 8vo. clotb, 5s.


Each Play separately, limp, 2s. 6d.

The Text alone, printed on writing paper, with large margin, royal 16mo. clotb, 8s.

The Text alone, square 16mo. clotb, 3s. 6d.

Each Play separately, limp, 6d. (See also pp. 28, 29.)


The Text, Vol. I. 5s. 6d. The Notes, Vol. II. 4s. 6d.

Sophocles: Scholia Graeca: Vol. I. ed. P. Elmsley, A.M. 1825. 8vo. clotb, 4s. 6d.

Vol. II. ed. Guil. Dindorfius. 1852. 8vo. clotb, 4s. 6d.

Euripides: Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorffii. Tomi II. 1834. 8vo. clotb, 10s.

Euripides: Annotationes Guil. Dindorffii. Partes II. 1840. 8vo. clotb, 10s.

Euripides: Scholia Graeca, ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a Guil. Dindorffio. Tomi IV. 1863. 8vo. clotb, 1l. 1s.

Euripides: Alcestis, ex recensione Guil. Dindorffii. 1834. 8vo. sewed, 2s. 6d.

Aristophanes: Comoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorffii. Tomi II. 1835. 8vo. clotb, 11s. (See page 27.)


Aristophanem, Index in: J. Caravellae. 1822. 8vo. clotb, 3s.

Tomi IV. 1835. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 2s.

Anecdota Graeca e Codd. MSS. Bibliothecae Regiae Parisiensis. Edidit J. A. Cramer, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 1839. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 2s.

Apsinis et Longini Rhetorica. E Codicibus MSS. recensuit Joh. Bakius. 1849. 8vo. cloth, 3s.

Aristoteles; ex recensione Immanuelis Bekkeri. Accedunt Indices Sylburgiani. Tomi XI. 1837. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.
The volumes (except vol. IX.) may be had separately, price 5s. 6d. each.

Aristotelis Ethica Nicomachea, ex recensione Immanuelis Bekkeri. Crown 8vo. cloth, 5s.


Demosthenes: ex recensione Guili. Dindorfii. Tomi I. II. III. IV. 1846. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Demosthenes: Tomi V. VI. VII. Annotationes Interpretum. 1849. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Demosthenes: Tomi VIII. IX. Scholia. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Harpocratia Lexicon, ex recensione G. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Heracliti Ephesii Reliquiae. Recensuit I. Bywater, M.A. Appendicis loco addita sunt Diogenis Laertii Vita Heracliti, Particulæ Hippocratei De Diaeta Libri Primi, Epistolae Heraclitæae. 1877. 8vo. cloth, price 6s.

Herculaneum Voluminum Partes II. 1824. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Homerus: Ilias, cum brevi Annotatione C. G. Heynii. Accedunt Scholia minora. Tomi II. 1834. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Homerus: Ilias, ex rec. Guili. Dindorfii. 1856. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Vols. I. II. 1875. 8vo. cloth, 24s. Vols. III. IV. 1877. 8vo. cloth, 36s.

Homerus: Odyssea, ex rec. Guili. Dindorfii. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Homerus: Scholia Graeca in Odyssean. Edidit Guili. Dindorfius. Tomi II. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 15s. 6d.

Homerum, Index in: Seberi. 1780. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Homer: A Complete Concordance to the Odyssey and Hymns of Homer; to which is added a Concordance to the Parallel Passages in the Iliad, Odyssey, and Hymns. By Henry Dunbar, M.D., Member of the General Council, University of Edinburgh. 1880. 4to. cloth, 1l. 1s.
Oratores Attici ex recensione Bekkeri:
I. Antiphon, Andocides, et Lysias. 1832. 8vo. cloth, 7s.
II. Isocrates. 1832. 8vo. cloth, 7s.
III. Isaeus, Aeschines, Lycurgus, Dinarchus, etc. 1823. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Scholia Graeca in Aeschinem et Isocratem. Edidit G. Dindorfus. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Paroemiographi Graeci, quorum pars nunc primum ex Codd. MSS. vulgatur. Edidit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 1836. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Plato: The Apology, with a revised Text and English Notes, and a Digest of Platonic Idioms, by James Riddell, M.A. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Plato: Philebus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by Edward Poste, M.A. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Plato: Sophistes and Politicus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 1866. 8vo. cloth, 18s.

Plato: Theaetetus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 1861. 8vo. cloth, 9s.

Plato: The Dialogues, translated into English, with Analyses and Introductions, by B. Jowett, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek. A new Edition in 5 volumes, medium 8vo. 1875. cloth, 3l. 10s.

Plato: The Republic, translated into English, with an Analysis and Introduction, by B. Jowett, M.A. Medium 8vo. cloth, 13s. 6d.


Plotinus. Edidit F. Creuzer. Tomi III. 1835. 4to. 1l. 8s.

Stobaei Florilegium. Ad MSS. fidem emendavit et supplevit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 1822. 8vo. cloth, 1l.


Thucydidae: Translated into English, with Introduction, Marginal Analysis, Notes, and Indices. By B. Jowett, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek. 2 vols. 1881. Medium 8vo. cloth, 1l. 12s.

Xenophon: Historia Graeca, ex recensione et cum annotationibus L. Dindorfi. Second Edition, 1852. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Xenophon: Expeditio Cyri, ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. Dindorfi. Second Edition, 1855. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Xenophon: Institutio Cyri, ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. Dindorfi. 1857. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Xenophon: Memorabilia Socratis, ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. Dindorfi. 1862. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.
Xenophon: Opuscula Politica Equestria et Venatica cum Arriano Libello de Venatione, ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. Dindorfii. 1866. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

THE HOLY SCRIPTURES, &c.

The Holy Bible in the earliest English Versions, made from the Latin Vulgate by John Wycliffe and his followers: edited by the Rev. J. Forshall and Sir F. Madding. 4 vols. 1850. royal 4to. cloth, 3l. 3s. Also reprinted from the above, with Introduction and Glossary by W. W. Skeat, M.A.,
The New Testament in English, according to the Version by John Wycliffe, about A.D. 1380, and Revised by John Purvey, about A.D. 1388. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 6s.
The Books of Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon: according to the Wyclifite Version made by Nicholas de Hereford, about A.D. 1381, and Revised by John Purvey, about A.D. 1388. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.
The Holy Bible: an exact reprint, page for page, of the Author-ized Version published in the year 1611. Demy 4to. half bound, 1l. 1s.


Vetus Testamentum ex Versione Septuaginta Interpretum secundum exemplar Vaticanum Romae editum. Accedit potior varietas Codicis Alexandrini. Tomi III. Edito Aliter. 18mo. cloth, 18s.

Origens Hexaplorum quae supersunt; sive, Veterum Interpretum Graecorum in totum Vetus Testamentum Fragmenta. Edidit Fredericus Field, A.M. 2 vols. 1867-1874. 4to. cloth, 5l. 5s.

Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Latina, cum Paraphrasi Anglo-Saxonica. Edidit B. Thorpe, F.A.S. 1835. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Gallica et Cod. M.S. in Bibl. Bouleianâ adservato, una cum Versione Latina alisque Monumentis perversutis. Nunc primum descripto edidit Franciscus Michel, Phil. Doct. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Psalms in Hebrew without points. 1879. Crown 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Libri duodecim Prophetarum Minorum in Ling. Aegypt. vulgo Coptica. Edidit H. Tattam, A.M. 1836. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Novum Testamentum Graece. Antiquissimorum Codicum Textus in ordine parallelo dispositi. Accedit collatio Codicis Sinaïticæ. Edidit E. H. Hansell, S.T.B. Tomi III. 1864. 8vo. half morocco, 2l. 12s. 6d.

Novum Testamentum Graece. Accedunt parallelae S. Scripturae loca, necnon vetus capitulorum notatio et canones Eusebii. Edidit Carolus Lloyd, S.T.P.R., necnon Episcopus Oxoniensis. 18mo. cloth, 3s.
The same on writing paper, with large margin, cloth, 10s. 6d.

Novum Testamentum Graece juxta Exemplar Millianum. 18mo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
The same on writing paper, with large margin, cloth, 9s.

Evangelia Sacra Graece. fcap. 8vo. limp, 1s. 6d.

The Greek Testament, with the Readings adopted by the Revisers of the Authorised Version:—
(1) Pica type. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
(2) Long Primer type. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
(3) The same, on writing paper, with wide margin, cloth, 10s. 6d.


Novum Testamentum Coptice, cura D. Wilkins. 1716. 4to. cloth, 12s. 6d.

Evangeliorum Versio Gothica, cum Interpr. et Annott. E. Benzelii. Edidit, et Gram. Goth. praemisit, E. Lye, A.M. 1759. 4to. cloth, 12s. 6d.

Diatessaron; sive Historia Jesu Christi ex ipsis Evangelistarum verbis apte dispositis confecta. Ed. J. White. 1856. 12mo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


The Five Books of Maccabees, in English, with Notes and Illustrations by Henry Cotton, D.C.L. 1833. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


FATHERS OF THE CHURCH, &c.

Liturgies, Eastern and Western. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Liturgical Glossary, by C. E. Hammond, M.A. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

An Appendix to the above. 1879. Crown 8vo. paper covers, 1s. 6d.

St. Athanasius: Historical Writings, according to the Benedictine Text. With an Introduction by William Bright, D.D., Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History, Oxford. 1881. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


The Canons of the First Four General Councils of Nicaea, Constantinople, Ephesus, and Chalcedon. 1877. Crown 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


Clementis Alexandrini Opera, ex recensione Guili. Dindorfii. Tomi IV. 1869. 8vo. cloth, 3l.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini in XII Prophetas. Edidit P. E. Pusey, A.M. Tomi II. 1868. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.


Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini Commentarii in Lucae Evangelium quae supersunt Syriace. E MSS. apud Mus. Britan. edidit R. Payne Smith, A.M. 1858. 4to. cloth, 1l. 2s.

The same, translated by R. Payne Smith, M.A. 2 vols. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaei, aliorumque Opera Selecta. E Codd. Syriacis MSS. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca Bodleiana asservatis primus edidit J. J. Overbeck. 1865. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Eusebii Pamphilii Evangelicae Praeparationis Libri XV. Ad Codd. MSS. recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 1843. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 10s.

Eusebii Pamphilii Evangelicae Demonstrationis Libri X. Recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. Tomi II. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Eusebii Pamphilii contra Hieroclem et Marcellum Libri. Recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Eusebius' Ecclesiastical History, according to the text of Burton, with an Introduction by William Bright, D.D. 1872. Crown 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Eusebii Pamphili Hist. Eccl.: Annotationes Variorum. Tomi II. 1842. 8vo. cloth, 17s.

Evagrii Historia Ecclesiastica, ex recensione H. Valesii. 1844. 8vo. cloth, 4s.


Origenis Philosophumena; sive omnium Haeresium Refutatio, E Codice Parisino nunc primum edidit Emmanuel Miller. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 10s.


Socrates' Ecclesiastical History, according to the Text of Hussey, with an Introduction by William Bright, D.D. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Sozomeni Historia Ecclesiastica. Edidit R. Hussey, S.T.B. Tomi III. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Theodorei Ecclesiasticae Historiae Libri V. Recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Theodorei Graecarum Affectionum Curatio. Ad Codices MSS. recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 1839. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Dowling (J. G.) Notitia Scriptorum SS. Patrum aliorumque vet. Eccles. Mon. quae in Collectionibus Anecdotorum post annum Christi moocc. in lucem editis continentur. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, &c.

Baeda Historia Ecclesiastica. Edited, with English Notes, by G. H. Moberly, M.A. 1869. crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Bingham’s Antiquities of the Christian Church, and other Works. 10 vols. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 3l. 3s.

Bright (W., D.D.). Chapters of Early English Church History. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 12s.


Burnet’s Life of Sir M. Hale, and Fell’s Life of Dr. Hammond. 1856. small 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Cardwell’s Two Books of Common Prayer, set forth by authority in the Reign of King Edward VI, compared with each other. Third Edition, 1852. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Cardwell’s Documentary Annals of the Reformed Church of England; being a Collection of Injunctions, Declarations, Orders, Articles of Inquiry, &c. from 1546 to 1716. 2 vols. 1843. 8vo. cloth, 18s.

Cardwell's History of Conferences on the Book of Common Prayer from 1551 to 1690. Third Edition, 1849. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


Vol. II. Part I. 1873. Medium 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. Part II. 1878. Church of Ireland; Memorials of St. Patrick. stiff covers, 3s. 6d.

Formularies of Faith set forth by the King's Authority during the Reign of Henry VIII. 1856. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Fuller's Church History of Britain. Edited by J. S. Brewer, M.A. 6 vols. 1845. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 19s.

Gibson's Synodus Anglicana. Edited by E. Cardwell, D.D. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 6s.

Hussey's Rise of the Papal Power traced in three Lectures. Second Edition, 1853. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Inett's Origines Anglicanae (in continuation of Stillingfleet). Edited by J. Griffiths, M.A. 3 vols. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

John, Bishop of Ephasus. The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by William Cureton, M.A. 1853. 4to. cloth, 1l. 12s.

The same, translated by R. Payne Smith, M.A. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Knight's Life of Dean Colet. 1823. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Le Neve's Fasti Ecclesiae Anglicanae, Corrected and continued from 1715 to 1853 by T. Duffus Hardy. 3 vols. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

The Liturgy and Ritual of the Celtic Church. By F. E. Warren, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Oxford. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

Missale Vetus Anglo-Saxonicum: the Liturgy of the Anglo-Saxon Church. By the same Editor. In Preparation.

Noelli (A.) Catechismus sive prima institutio disciplinaque Pietatis Christianae Latine explicata. Editio nova cura Guil. Jacobson, A.M. 1844. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Prideaux's Connection of Sacred and Profane History. 2 vols. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Primers put forth in the Reign of Henry VIII. 1848. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Records of the Reformation. The Divorce, 1527—1533. Mostly now for the first time printed from MSS. in the British Museum and other Libraries. Collected and arranged by N. Pocock, M.A. 1870. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 16s.
Reformatio Legum Ecclesiasticarum. The Reformation of Ecclesiastical Laws, as attempted in the reigns of Henry VIII, Edward VI, and Elizabeth. Edited by E. Cardwell, D.D. 1850. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Shirley's (W. W.) Some Account of the Church in the Apostolic Age. Second Edition, 1874. 1cap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Shuckford's Sacred and Profane History connected (in continuation of Prideaux). 2 vols. 1848. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Stillingfleet's Origines Britannicae, with Lloyd's Historical Account of Church Government. Edited by T. P. Pantin, M.A. 2 vols. 1842. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Stubb's (W.). Registrum Sacram Anglicanum. An attempt to exhibit the course of Episcopal Succession in England. 1858. small 4to. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Strype's Works Complete, with a General Index. 27 vols. 1821-1843. 8vo. cloth, 7l. 13s. 6d. Sold separately as follows:—
Memorials of Cranmer. 2 vols. 1840. 8vo. cloth, 11s.
Life of Parker. 3 vols. 1828. 8vo. cloth, 16s. 6d.
Life of Grindal. 1821. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.
Life of Whitgift. 3 vols. 1822. 8vo. cloth, 16s. 6d.
Life of Aylmer. 1820. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.
Life of Cheke. 1821. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.
Life of Smith. 1820. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.
Ecclesiastical Memorials. 6 vols. 1822. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 13s.
Annals of the Reformation. 7 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 3s. 6d.
General Index. 2 vols. 1828. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Sylloge Confessionum sub tempus Reformandae Ecclesiae editarum. Subjiciuntur Catechismus Heidelbergensis et Canones Synodi Dordrechanae. 1827. 8vo. cloth, 8s.

ENGLISH THEOLOGY.

Beveridge's Discourse upon the XXXIX Articles. The third complete Edition, 1847. 8vo. cloth, 8s.

Bilson on the Perpetual Government of Christ's Church, with a Biographical Notice by R. Eden, M.A. 1842. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Biscoe's Boyle Lectures on the Acts of the Apostles. 1840. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.


Burnet's Exposition of the XXXIX Articles. 1845. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Burton's (Edward) Testimonies of the Ante-Nicene Fathers to the Doctrine of the Trinity and of the Divinity of the Holy Ghost. 1831. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Butler's Works, with an Index to the Analogy. 2 vols. 1874. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Butler's Sermons. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Butler's Analogy of Religion. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Chandler's Critical History of the Life of David. 1853. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Chillingworth's Works. 3 vols. 1838. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s. 6d.

Clergyman's Instructor. Sixth Edition, 1855. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Comber's Companion to the Temple; or a Help to Devotion in the use of the Common Prayer. 7 vols. 1841. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 11s. 6d.

Cranmer's Works. Collected and arranged by H. Jenkyns, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College. 4 vols. 1834. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 10s.

Enchiridion Theologicum Anti-Romanum.
Vol. I. Jeremy Taylor's Dissuasive from Popery, and Treatise on the Real Presence. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 8s.
Vol. II. Barrow on the Supremacy of the Pope, with his Discourse on the Unity of the Church. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.
Vol. III. Tracts selected from Wake, Patrick, Stillingfleet, Clagett, and others. 1837. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

[Fell's] Paraphrase and Annotations on the Epistles of St. Paul. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Greswell's Harmonia Evangelica. Fifth Edition, 1856. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Greswell's Prolegomena ad Harmoniam Evangelicam. 1840. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Greswell's Dissertations on the Principles and Arrangement of a Harmony of the Gospels. 5 vols. 1837. 8vo. cloth, 3l. 3s.


Hammond's Paraphrase and Annotations on the New Testament. 4 vols. 1845. 8vo. cloth, 1l.

Hammond's Paraphrase on the Book of Psalms. 2 vols. 1850. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Heurtley's Collection of Creeds. 1858. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Homilies appointed to be read in Churches. Edited by J. Griffiths, M.A. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.
Hooker's Works, with his Life by Walton, arranged by John Keble, M.A. *Sixth Edition*, 1874. 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 11s.6d.

Hooker’s Works; the text as arranged by John Keble, M.A. 2 vols. 1875. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Hooper’s (Bp. George) Works. 2 vols. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 8s.

Jackson’s (Dr. Thomas) Works. 12 vols. 1844. 8vo. cloth, 3l. 6s.

Jewel’s Works. Edited by R. W. Jelf, D.D. 8 vols. 1847. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 10s.

Patrick’s Theological Works. 9 vols. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Pearson’s Exposition of the Creed. Revised and corrected by E. Burton, D.D. *Sixth Edition*, 1877. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Pearson’s Minor Theological Works. Now first collected, with a Memoir of the Author, Notes, and Index, by Edward Churton, M.A. 2 vols. 1844. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Sanderson’s Works. Edited by W. Jacobson, D.D. 6 vols. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 10s.


Stillingfleet’s Origines Sacrae. 2 vols. 1837. 8vo. cloth, 9s.

Stillingfleet’s Rational Account of the Grounds of Protestant Religion; being a vindication of Abp. Laud’s Relation of a Conference, &c. 2 vols. 1844. 8vo. cloth, 10s.


Waterland’s Review of the Doctrine of the Eucharist, with a Preface by the present Bishop of London. 1880. crown 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.


Wyclif. Select English Works. By T. Arnold, M.A. 3 vols. 1871. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

ENGLISH HISTORICAL AND DOCUMENTARY WORKS.


Two of the Saxon Chronicles parallel, with Supplementary Extracts from the Others. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossarial Index, by J. Earle, M.A. 1865. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Magna Carta, a careful Reprint. Edited by W. Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History. 1879. 4to. stiibed, 1s.


Burnet's History of His Own Time, with the suppressed Passages and Notes. 6 vols. 1833. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.

Burnet’s History of James II, with additional Notes. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Carte’s Life of James Duke of Ormond. A new Edition, carefully compared with the original MSS. 6 vols. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 5s.

Clarendon’s (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. To which are subjoined the Notes of Bishop Warburton. 7 vols. 1849. medium 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.

Clarendon’s (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. 7 vols. 1839. 18mo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Clarendon’s (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Also His Life, written by Himself, in which is included a Continuation of his History of the Grand Rebellion. With copious Indexes. In one volume, royal 8vo. 1842. cloth, 1l. 2s.

Clarendon’s (Edw. Earl of) Life, including a Continuation of his History. 2 vols. 1857. medium 8vo. cloth, 1l. 2s.

Clarendon’s (Edw. Earl of) Life, and Continuation of his History. 3 vols. 1827. 8vo. cloth, 16s. 6d.

Calendar of the Clarendon State Papers, preserved in the Bodleian Library. In three volumes. 1869–76.

Vol. I. From 1523 to January 1649. 8vo. cloth, 18s.
Vol. II. From 1649 to 1654. 8vo. cloth, 16s.
Vol. III. From 1655 to 1657. 8vo. cloth, 14s.
Calendar of Charters and Rolls preserved in the Bodleian Library. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 11s. 6d.

Freeman's (E. A.) History of the Norman Conquest of England; its Causes and Results. In Six Volumes. 8vo. cloth, 5l. 9s. 6d.
   Vols. I-II together, 3rd edition, 1877. 1l. 16s.
   Vol. III, 2nd edition, 1874. 1l. 1s.
   Vol. IV, 2nd edition, 1875. 1l. 1s.
   Vol. V, 1876. 1l. 1s.
   Vol. VI. Index. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary ("Liber Veritatum"): Selected Passages, illustrating the condition of Church and State, 1403-1458. With an Introduction by James E. Thorold Rogers, M.P. Small 4to. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Lloyd's Prices of Corn in Oxford, 1583-1830. 8vo. sewed, 1s.

Luttrell's (Narcissus) Diary. A Brief Historical Relation of State Affairs, 1678-1714. 6 vols. 1857. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 4s.

May's History of the Long Parliament. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

   Vols. III and IV in the Press.

Sprigg's England's Recovery; being the History of the Army under Sir Thomas Fairfax. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 6s.

Whitelock's Memorials of English Affairs from 1625 to 1660. 4 vols. 1853. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1os.

Protests of the Lords, including those which have been expunged, from 1624 to 1874; with Historical Introductions. Edited by James E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 1875. 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

Enactments in Parliament, specially concerning the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. Collected and arranged by J. Griffiths, M.A. 1869. 8vo. cloth, 12s.

Ordinances and Statutes [for Colleges and Halls] framed or approved by the Oxford University Commissioners. 1863. 8vo. cloth, 12s.—Sold separately (except for Exeter, All Souls, Brasenose, and Corpus), at 1s. each.

Statuta Universitatis Oxoniensis. 1880. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

The Student's Handbook to the University and Colleges of Oxford. Fifth Edition. 1879. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Index to Wills proved in the Court of the Chancellor of the University of Oxford, &c. Compiled by J. Griffiths, M.A. 1862. royal 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Catalogue of Oxford Graduates from 1659 to 1850. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.
CHRONOLOGY, GEOGRAPHY, &c.

Clinton’s Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the LVth to the CXIIIrd Olympiad. Third edition, 1841. 4to. cloth, 1l. 14s. 6d.

Clinton’s Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the CXXIVth Olympiad to the Death of Augustus. Second edition, 1851. 4to. cloth, 1l. 12s.

Clinton’s Epitome of the Fasti Hellenici. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Clinton’s Fasti Romani. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Rome and Constantinople, from the Death of Augustus to the Death of Heraclius. 2 vols. 1845, 1850. 4to. cloth, 3l. 9s.

Clinton’s Epitome of the Fasti Romani. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 7s.

Cramer’s Geographical and Historical Description of Asia Minor. 2 vols. 1833. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Cramer’s Map of Asia Minor, 15s.

Cramer’s Map of Ancient and Modern Italy, on two sheets, 15s.

Cramer’s Description of Ancient Greece. 3 vols. 1828. 8vo. cloth, 16s. 6d.

Cramer’s Map of Ancient and Modern Greece, on two sheets, 15s.

Grosswell’s Fasti Temporis Catholici. 1852. 4 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.

Grosswell’s Tables to Fasti, 4to., and Introduction to Tables, 8vo. 1852. cloth, 15s.

Grosswell’s Origines Kalendariae Italicæ. 1854. 4 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

Grosswell’s Origines Kalendariae Hellenicæ. 6 vols. 1862. 8vo. cloth, 4l. 4s.

MATHEMATICS, PHYSICAL SCIENCE, &c.

Archimedes quae supersunt omnia cum Eutocii commentariis ex recensione Josephi Torelli, cum novâ versione Latinâ. 1792. fol. cloth, 1l. 5s.

Bradley’s Miscellaneous Works and Correspondence. With an Account of Harriot’s Astronomical Papers. 1832. 4to. cloth, 17s.

Reduction of Bradley’s Observations by Dr. Busch. 1838. 4to. cloth, 3s.
Astronomical Observations made at the University Observatory, Oxford, under the direction of C. Pritchard, M.A., Savilian Professor of Astronomy. No. 1. 1878. Royal 8vo. paper covers, 3s. 6d.

Treatise on Infinitesimal Calculus. By Bartholomew Price, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Oxford.


Vol. III. Statics, including Attractions; Dynamics of a Material Particle. Second Edition, 1868. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Vol. IV. Dynamics of Material Systems; together with a Chapter on Theoretical Dynamics, by W. F. Donkin, M.A., F.R.S. 1869. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Rigaud’s Correspondence of Scientific Men of the 17th Century, with Table of Contents by A. de Morgan, and Index by the Rev. J. Rigaud, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. 2 vols. 1841–1862, 8vo. cloth, 18s. 6d.

Daubeney’s Introduction to the Atomic Theory. 1850. 16mo. cloth, 6s.

Vesuvius. By John Phillips, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Geology, Oxford. 1869. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Geology of Oxford and the Valley of the Thames. By the same Author. 1871. 8vo. cloth, 21s.

Synopsis of the Pathological Series in the Oxford Museum. By H. W. Adland, M.D., F.R.S., 1867. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Thesaurus Entomologicus Hopeianus, or a Description of the rarest Insects in the Collection given to the University by the Rev. William Hope. By J. O. Westwood, M.A., F.L.S. With 40 Plates. 1874. Small folio, half morocco, 7l. 10s.


Johannes Müller on Certain Variations in the Vocal Organs of the Passeres that have hitherto escaped notice. Translated by F. J. Bell, B.A., and edited with an Appendix, by A. H. Garrod, M.A., F.R.S. With Plates. 1878. 4to. paper covers, 7s. 6d.
BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Ebert's Bibliographical Dictionary, translated from the German. 4 vols. 1837. 8vo. cloth, 11. 1os.

Cotton's List of Editions of the Bible in English. Second Edition, corrected and enlarged. 1852. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Cotton's Typographical Gazetteer. 1831. 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.

Cotton's Typographical Gazetteer, Second Series. 1866. 8vo cloth, 12s. 6d.

Cotton's Rhemes and Doway. An attempt to shew what has been done by Roman Catholics for the diffusion of the Holy Scriptures in English. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 9s.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Bacon's Novum Organum. Edited, with English notes, by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Bacon's Novum Organum. Translated by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d. (See also p. 35.)

The Works of George Berkeley, D.D., formerly Bishop of Cloyne; including many of his writings hitherto unpublished. With Prefaces, Annotations, and an Account of his Life and Philosophy, by Alexander Campbell Fraser, M.A. 4 vols. 1871. 8vo. cloth, 21l. 18s.

The Life, Letters, &c. 1 vol. cloth, 16s. See also p. 35.

The Logic of Hegel; translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Prolegomena by William Wallace, M.A. 1874. 8vo. cloth, 14s.


A Course of Lectures on Art, delivered before the University of Oxford in Hilary Term, 1870, by John Ruskin, M.A., Slade Professor of Fine Art. 8vo. cloth, 6s.


Sturlunga Saga, including the Islendinga Saga of Lawman Sturla Thordsson and other works. Edited with Prolegomena, Appendices, Tables, Indices, and Maps, by Dr. Gudbrand Vigfusson. In 2 vols. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 21l. 2s.

Casauboni Ephemerides, cum praefatione et notis J. Russell, S.T.P. Tomi II. 1850. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

The Ormulum; with the Notes and Glossary of Dr. R. M. White. Edited by Rev. R. Holt, M.A. 1878. 2 vols. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 21s.
The Sacred Books of the East. Translated by various Oriental Scholars, and edited by F. Max Müller.


Vol. II. **The Sacred Laws of the Aryas, as taught in the Schools of Ápastamba, Gautama, Vâsishtha, and Baudhâyana.** Translated by Georg Bühler. Part I, Ápastamba and Gautama. **8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.**


Vol. IV. **The Veddâd.** Translated by James Darmesteter. **8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.**

Vol. V. **The Bundahi, Bahman Yast, and Shâyast-lâ-Shâyast.** Translated by E. W. West. **8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.**

Vols. VI and IX. **The Qur'ân.** Parts I and II. Translated by Professor E. H. Palmer. **8vo. cloth, 21s.**

Vol. VII. **The Institutes of Vishnu.** Translated by Professor Julius Jolly. **8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.**

Vol. X. **The Dhammapada,** translated by Professor F. Max Müller; and **The Sutta Nipāta,** translated by Professor Fausböll; being Canonical Books of the Buddhists. **8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.**

Vol. XI. **The Mahâparinibbâna Sutta, The Tevijja Sutta, The Mahâsudassana Sutta, The Dhamma-Kakappavattana Sutta.** Translated by T. W. Rhys Davids. **8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.**

The following Volumes are also in the Press, viz:—

Vol. VIII. **The Bhagavadjīta, Sanatsuṭṭiya, and Anugītā.** Translated by Kashinath Trimbak Telang.

Vol. XII. **The Satapatha-Brâhmaṇa,** by Professor Eggeling.

Vol. XIII. **The Patisokkha,** by T. W. Rhys Davids. **The Mahâvagga,** by Dr. H. Oldenberg.

Vol. XIV. **The Sacred Laws of the Æryas, as taught in the Schools of Vâsishtha and Baudhâyana,** by Professor Georg Bühler.

Clarendon Press Series.

The Delegates of the Clarendon Press having undertaken the publication of a series of works, chiefly educational, and entitled the Clarendon Press Series, have published, or have in preparation, the following.

Those to which prices are attached are already published; the others are in preparation.

I. ENGLISH.

A First Reading Book. By Marie Eichens of Berlin; and edited by Anne J. Clough. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 4d.

Oxford Reading Book, Part I. For Little Children. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 6d.

Oxford Reading Book, Part II. For Junior Classes. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 6d.


An English Grammar and Reading Book, for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. By O. W. Tancock, M.A., Head Master of Norwich School. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Typical Selections from the best English Writers, with Introductory Notices. Second Edition. In Two Volumes. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d. each.


Part I. In the Press.


Specimens of English Literature, from the ‘Ploughmans Crede’ to the ‘Shepeheardes Calender’ (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By W. W. Skeat, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


Chaucer. The Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; The Monkes Tale; The Clerkes Tale; The Squirees Tale, &c. Edited by W. W. Skeat, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Tale of the Man of Lawe; The Pardoneres Tale; The Second Nonnes Tale; The Chanouns Yemannes Tale. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. (See also p. 22.)

Old English Drama. Marlowe’s Tragical History of Dr. Faustus, and Greene’s Honourable History of Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay. Edited by A. W. Ward, M.A., Professor of History and English Literature in Owens College, Manchester. 1878. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.


The Tempest, 1s. 6d. King Lear, 1s. 6d.

As You Like It, 1s. 6d. A Midsummer Night’s Dream, 1s. 6d.

Julius Caesar, 2s. Coriolanus, 2s. 6d.

Richard the Third, 2s. 6d. Henry the Fifth. In the Press.

(For other Plays, see p. 23.)


Bunyan. Holy War, Life and Death of Mr. Badman, &c. Edited by E. Venables, M.A. In Preparation. (See also p. 23.)

Locke's Conduct of the Understanding. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, etc., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.


Burke. Four Letters on the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide Directory of France. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. J. Payne, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. (See also p. 23.)

Also the following in paper covers:

Goldsmith. The Deserted Village. 2d.

Gray. Elegy, and Ode on Eton College. 2d.

Johnson. Vanity of Human Wishes. With Notes by E. J. Payne, M.A. 4d.


Milton. With Notes by R. C. Browne, M.A.
   Lycidas, 3d. L'Allegro, 3d. II Penseroso, 4d. Comus, 6d.
   Samson Agonistes, 6d.

Parnell. The Hermit. 2d.

A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS,

Designed to meet the wants of Students in English Literature, by the late Rev. J. S. Brewer, M.A., of Queen's College, Oxford, and Professor of English Literature at King's College, London.

1. Chaucer. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; The Knightes Tale; The Nonne Prestes Tale. Edited by R. Morris, Editor of Specimens of Early English, &c., &c. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d. (See also p. 21.)

   Book I. Eighth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
   Book II. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

   I. The Merchant of Venice. 1s.
   II. Richard the Second. 1s. 6d.
   III. Macbeth. 1s. 6d. (For other Plays, see p. 21.)

5. **Bacon.**
   I. Advancement of Learning. Edited by W. Aldis Wright, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

   *Sold separately,* Vol. I. 4s.; Vol. II. 3s. (See also p. 22.)

7. **Dryden.** Select Poems. Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astræa Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; The Hind and the Panther. Edited by W. D. Christie, M.A. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

8. **Bunyan.** The Pilgrim's Progress, Grace Abounding, Relation of the Imprisonment of Mr. John Bunyan. Edited, with Biographical Introduction and Notes, by E. Venables, M.A. 1879. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

   I. Essay on Man. *Sixth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.


   I. Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
   II. Reflections on the French Revolution. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. (See also p. 22.)

   I. The Didactic Poems of 1782, with Selections from the Minor Pieces, A.D. 1779–1783. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
   II. The Task, with Tirocinium, and Selections from the Minor Poems, A.D. 1784–1799. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
II. LATIN.


A First Latin Exercise Book. By the same Author. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda, or Easy Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Passages for Translation into Latin. For the use of Passmen and others. Selected by J. Y. Sargent, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Oxford. Fifth Edition. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


Caesar. The Commentaries (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By Charles E. Moberly, M.A.
Part I. The Gallic War. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
Part II. The Civil War. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.
The Civil War. Book I. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Cicero. Selection of interesting and descriptive passages. With Notes. By Henry Walford, M.A. In three Parts. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. Each Part separately, limp, 1s. 6d.
Part I. Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.
Part II. Omens and Dreams: Beauties of Nature.
Part III. Rome's Rule of her Provinces.


Cicero. Select Orations (for Schools). With Notes. By J. R. King, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Cornelius Nepos. With Notes. By Oscar Browning, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Part I. The Caudine Disaster.
Part II. Hannibal's Campaign in Italy.
Part III. The Macedonian War.


Catulli Veronensis Liber. Iterum recognovit, apparatum criticum prolegomena appendices addidit, Robinson Ellis, A.M. 1878. Demy 8vo. cloth, 16s.

A Commentary on Catullus. By Robinson Ellis, M.A. 1876. Demy 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta, secundum recognitionem Robinson Ellis, A.M. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Cicero de Oratore. With Introduction and Notes, by A. S. Wilkins, M.A., Professor of Latin, Owens College, Manchester. Book I. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 6s. Book II. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Cicero's Philippic Orations. With Notes. By J. R. King, M.A. Second Edition. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


Cicero. Select Letters. Text. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Cicero pro Cuenfio. With Introduction and Notes. By W. Ramsay, M.A. Edited by G. G. Ramsay, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Selections from the less known Latin Poets. By North Pinder, M.A. 1869. Demy 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin. With Introductions and Notes. 1874. By John Wordsworth, M.A. 8vo. cloth, 18s.


Vergil: Suggestions Introductory to a Study of the Aeneid. By H. Nettleship, M.A. 8vo. sewed, 1s. 6d.


The Roman Satura: its original form in connection with its literary development. By H. Nettleship, M.A. 8vo. sewed, 1s.


The Roman Poets of the Augustan Age. By William Young Sellar, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Edinburgh. Virgil, 1877. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

The Roman Poets of the Republic. By the same Author. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 1881. 8vo, cloth, 14s.

III. GREEK.


A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from Liddell and Scott's 4th edition, chiefly for the use of Schools. Nineteenth Edition. Carefully Revised throughout. 1880. Square 12mo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their forms, meaning, and quantity; embracing all the Tenses used by Greek writers, with references to the passages in which they are found. By W. Veitch. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Elements of Greek Accentuation (for Schools); abridged from his larger work by H. W. Chandler, M.A., Waynflete Professor of Moral and Metaphysical Philosophy, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
A Series of Graduated Greek Readers;—

First Greek Reader. By W. G. Rushbrooke, M.L., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, Second Classical Master at the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Second Greek Reader. By A. M. Bell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Third Greek Reader. In Preparation.

Fourth Greek Reader; being Specimens of Greek Dialects. With Introductions and Notes. By W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Fifth Greek Reader. Part I. Selections from Greek Epic and Dramatic Poetry, with Introductions and Notes. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Part II. By the same Editor. In Preparation.

The Golden Treasury of Ancient Greek Poetry; being a Collection of the finest passages in the Greek Classic Poets, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

A Golden Treasury of Greek Prose, being a collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., and J. E. L. Shadwell, M.A. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Aeschylus. Prometheus Bound (for Schools). With Introduction and Notes by A. O. Prickard, M.A., Fellow of New College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Aeschylus. Agamemnon. With Introduction and Notes by Arthur Sidgwick, M.A., Tutor of Corpus Christi College, Oxford; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant Master of Rugby School. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. Just Published.

Aristophanes. In Single Plays, edited, with English Notes, Introductions, etc., by W. W. Merry, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. The Clouds, 2s. The Acharnians, 2s.

Other Plays will follow.


Cebes. Tabula. With Introduction and Notes by C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Euripides. Alcestis (for Schools). By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Euripides. Helena (for Schools). By the same Editor. In the Press.
Herodotus. Selections from. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Map, by W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Homer. Odyssey, Books I—XII (for Schools). By W. W. Merry, M.A. Nineteenth Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Book II, separately, 1s. 6d.

Homer. Odyssey, Books XIII—XXIV (for Schools). By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Homer. Iliad, Book I (for Schools). By D. B. Monroe, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Homer. Iliad, Book XXI. Edited with Notes, etc., for the use of Schools, by Herbert Hailstone, M.A., late Scholar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. Extr. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 6d.

Lucian. Vera Historia (for Schools). By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 6d.


Oedipus Rex, Oedipus Coloneus, Antigone, 1s. 9d. each.

Ajax, Electra, Trachiniæ, Philoctetes, 2s. each.

Sophocles. Oedipus Rex: Dindorf's Text, with Notes by the present Bishop of St. David's. Ext. fcap. 8vo. limp, 1s. 6d.

Theocritus (for Schools). With Notes. By H. Kynaston, M.A. (late Snow), Head Master of Cheltenham College. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


**Clarendon Press, Oxford.**


**A Homeric Grammar.** By D. B. Monro, M.A. In the Press.

**Sophocles.** The Plays and Fragments. With English Notes and Introductions, by Lewis Campbell, M.A., Professor of Greek, St. Andrews, formerly Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. 2 vols.


**Sophocles.** The Text of the Seven Plays. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


---

**IV. FRENCH.**


**Brachet's Historical Grammar** of the French Language. Translated into English by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

**Historical Outlines of French Literature.** By George Saintsbury, M.A. In Preparation.

**A Primer of French Literature.** By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

*French Classics, Edited by Gustave Masson, B.A.*

**Corneille's Cinna, and Molière's Les Femmes Savantes.** With Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

**Racine's Andromaque, and Corneille's Le Menteur.** With Louis Racine's Life of his Father. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

**Molière's Les Fourberies de Scapin, and Racine's Athalie.** With Voltaire's Life of Molière. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Selections from the Correspondence of Madame de Sévigné and her chief Contemporaries. Intended more especially for Girls' Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
Voyage autour de ma Chambre, by Xavier de Maistre; Ourika, by Madame de Duras; La Dot de Suzette, by Fievée; Les Jumeaux de l'Hôtel Connelle, by Edmond About; Mésaventures d'on Écolier, by Rodolphe Töpffer. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Regnard’s Le Joueur, and Brueys and Palaprat’s Le Grondeur. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Louis XIV and his Contemporaries; as described in Extracts from the best Memoirs of the Seventeenth Century. With English Notes, Genealogical Tables, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

V. GERMAN.

LANGE’S German Course. By HERMANN LANGE, Teacher of Modern Languages, Manchester:

The Germans at Home; a Practical Introduction to German Conversation, with an Appendix containing the Essentials of German Grammar. Second Edition. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

The German Manual; a German Grammar, a Reading Book, and a Handbook of German Conversation. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

A Grammar of the German Language. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

This ‘Grammar’ is a reprint of the Grammar contained in ‘The German Manual,’ and, in this separate form, is intended for the use of students who wish to make themselves acquainted with German Grammar chiefly for the purpose of being able to read German books.

German Composition; Extracts from English and American writers for Translation into German, with Hints for Translation in footnotes. In the Press.

Lessing’s Laokoon. With Introduction, English Notes, etc. By A. Hamann, Phil. Doc., M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Wilhelm Tell. A Drama. By Schiller. Translated into English Verse by E. Massie, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Also, Edited by C. A. Buchheim, Phil. Doc., Professor in King’s College, London:


Schiller’s Wilhelm Tell. With a Life of Schiller; an historical and critical Introduction, Arguments, and a complete Commentary. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Schiller’s Historische Skizzen; Egmonts Leben und Tod, and Belagerung von Antwerpen. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
Goethe's Iphigenie auf Tauris. A Drama. With a Critical Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.

Modern German Reader. A Graduated Collection of Prose. Excerpts from Modern German Writers:—
Part I. With English Notes, a Grammatical Appendix, and a complete Vocabulary. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
Parts II and III in preparation.

In Preparation.
Schiller's Maria Stuart. With Notes, Introduction, &c.
Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans. With Notes, Introduction, &c.
Selections from the Poems of Schiller and Goethe.
Lessing's Nathan der Weise. With Introduction, Notes, etc.

VI. MATHEMATICS, &c.
Figures Made Easy: a first Arithmetic Book. (Introductory to 'The Scholar's Arithmetic.') By Lewis Hensley, M.A., formerly Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6d.

Answers to the Examples in Figures made Easy, together with two thousand additional Examples formed from the Tables in the same, with Answers. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 1s.

The Scholar's Arithmetic; with Answers to the Examples. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

The Scholar's Algebra. An Introductory work on Algebra. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


An Elementary Treatise on the same subject. Edited, from the materials left by Professor Clerk Maxwell, by W. Garnett, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In the Press.

A Treatise on the Kinetic Theory of Gases. By Henry William Watson, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1876 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Geodesy. By Colonel Alexander Ross Clarke, C.B., R.E. 1880. 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.

VII. PHYSICAL SCIENCE.


A Cycle of Celestial Objects, Observed, Reduced, and Discussed by Admiral W. H. Smyth, R.N. Revised, condensed, and greatly enlarged by G. F. Chambers, F.R.A.S. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 21s.


A Treatise on Heat, with numerous Woodcuts and Diagrams, by Balfour Stewart, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. Fourth Edition. 1881. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Lessons on Thermodynamics. By R. E. Baynes, M.A., Senior Student of Christ Church, Oxford, and Lee's Reader in Physics. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


Crystallography. By M. H. N. Story-Maskelyne, M.A., Professor of Mineralogy, Oxford; and Deputy Keeper in the Department of Minerals, British Museum. In the Press.

VIII. HISTORY.


Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo. price 12s. each.


A Short History of the Norman Conquest of England. By E. A. Freeman, M.A. Extra fcp. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


A History of Germany and of the Empire, down to the close of the Middle Ages. By J. Bryce, D.C.L., Regius Professor of Civil Law in the University of Oxford.

A History of British India. By S. J. Owen, M.A., Reader in Indian History in the University of Oxford.

A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers of the Marquess Wellesley, K.G., during his Government of India, Edited by S. J. Owen, M.A., formerly Professor of History in the Elphinstone College, Bombay. 1877. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 4s.

A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to India of Field-Marshal the Duke of Wellington, K.G. By the same Editor. 1880. 8vo. cloth, 24s.


A History of Greece from its Conquest by the Romans to the present time, B.C. 146 to A.D. 1864. By George Finlay, LL.D. A new Edition, revised throughout, and in part re-written, with considerable additions, by the Author, and Edited by H. F. Tozer, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford. 1877. 7 vols. 8vo. cloth, 3l. 10s.


IX. LAW.

The Elements of Jurisprudence. By Thomas Erskine Holland, D.C.L., Chichele Professor of International Law and Diplomacy, and Fellow of All Souls College, Oxford. 1880. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Institutes of Justinian, edited as a recension of the Institutes of Gaius. By the same Editor. 1873. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.


Also sold in Parts, in paper covers, as follows:—

Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.
Part II. Family Law. 1s.
Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1). 3s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 2). 4s. 6d.

An Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation. By Jeremy Bentham. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.


X. MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

Bacon. Novum Organum. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

Locke’s Conduct of the Understanding. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, etc., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Selections from Berkeley, with an Introduction and Notes. For the use of Students in the Universities. By Alexander Campbell Fraser, LL.D. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d. (See also p. 18.)

The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Seventh Edition, with a Collection of Examples. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. By the same Author. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 6s.


XI. ART, &c.


A Treatise on Counterpoint, Canon, and Fugue, based upon that of Cherubini. By the same Author. Second Edition. 4to. cloth, 16s.

A Treatise on Musical Form and General Composition. By the same Author. 4to. cloth, 10s.

XII. MISCELLANEOUS.

The Construction of Healthy Dwellings; namely Houses, Hospitals, Barracks, Asylums, etc. By Douglas Galton, late Royal Engineers, C.B., F.R.S., etc. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


A System of Physical Education: Theoretical and Practical. By Archibald Maclaren. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


English Plant Names from the Tenth to the Fifteenth Century. By J. Earle, M.A. Small fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

An Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary by Dr. Gudbrand Vigfusson and F. York Powell, M.A. 1879. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Dante. Selections from the Inferno. With Introduction and Notes. By H. B. Cotterill, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Tasso. La Gerusalemme Liberata. Cantos i, ii. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

The Modern Greek Language in its relation to Ancient Greek. By E. M. Geldart, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


A Handbook of Phonetics, including a Popular Exposition of the Principles of Spelling Reform. By Henry Sweet, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE,
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, 7 PATERNOSTER ROW,
OXFORD: CLARENDON PRESS DEPOSITORY,
116 HIGH STREET.

The Delegates of the Press invite suggestions and advice from all persons interested in education; and will be thankful for hints, &c. addressed to the Secretary to the Delegates, Clarendon Press, Oxford.
### OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS.

**Three New editions, on India paper, extremely thin and light.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IS.</th>
<th>and professions of obedience.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quicken thou me according to thy word.</td>
<td>ver. 40, Ps. 145. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I have declared my ways, and thou ardest me: teach me thy statutes.</td>
<td>ver. 12, Ps. 25. 4, 11. 27. 11. 96. 11. Ps. 145. 5. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts: so shall I talk of thy wondrous works.</td>
<td>Ps. 107. 36. Heb. 2. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 My soul melteth for heaviness: strengthen thou me according unto thy word.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Remove from me the way of lying: and grant me thy law graciously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 I have chosen the way of truth:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**PSALMS. and professions of obedience.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LORD;</th>
<th>quicken thou me according to thy word.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26 I have declared my ways, and thou hearest me: teach me thy statutes.</td>
<td>ver. 40, Ps. 145. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts: so shall I talk of thy wondrous works.</td>
<td>ver. 12, Ps. 25. 4, 11. 27. 11. 96. 11. Ps. 145. 5. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 My soul melteth for heaviness: strengthen thou me according unto thy word.</td>
<td>Ps. 107. 36. Heb. 2. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Remove from me the way of lying: and grant me thy law graciously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 I have chosen the way of truth:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Specimen leaves will be sent on application.**

---

**No. 2A. Minion 8vo. Thin.**

(SUPERINTENDENT'S EDITION.)

| Size, 7½ inches long, 5½ inches broad, and 1 inch thick. Weight 22 ounces. |
|---|---|
| Paste grain morocco, limp. | 0 18 6 |
| Persian morocco, limp. | 0 15 6 |
| Turkey morocco, limp. | 0 18 0 |
| Turkey morocco, flap edges. | 1 1 0 |
| Levant morocco, lined calf, flap edges. | 1 4 0 |
| Ditto, very flexible, silk sewed, red. under gold in the round—the most durable binding extant. | 1 11 6 |

---

**No. 5A. Ruby 16mo. Thin.**

(Pocket Edition.)

| Size, 5½ inches long, 4½ inches broad, and 1 inch thick. Weight 15 ounces including binding. 1466 pp. |
|---|---|
| Paste grain morocco, limp. | 0 9 0 |
| Persian morocco, limp. | 0 11 0 |
| Turkey morocco, flap edges. | 0 18 0 |
| Turkey morocco, flap edges. | 0 15 6 |
| Levant morocco, lined calf, flap edges. | 0 18 0 |
| Ditto, very flexible, silk sewed, red. under gold in the round—the most durable binding extant. | 1 2 6 |

---

**No. 6A. Pearl 16mo. Thin.**

(Smallest Edition.)

| Size, 5½ inches long, 3½ inches broad, and 1 inch thick. Weight 12½ ounces. |
|---|---|
| Paste grain morocco, limp. | 0 7 0 |
| Persian morocco, limp. | 0 8 0 |
| Turkey morocco, limp. | 0 10 0 |
| Turkey morocco, flap edges. | 0 12 0 |
| Levant morocco, lined calf, flap edges. | 0 14 6 |
| Ditto, very flexible, silk sewed, red. under gold in the round—the most durable binding extant. | 0 18 0 |

---

With Apocrypha, extra. 0 2 3
With Prayer-Book, extra. 0 2 3
### The Oxford Bible for Teachers

Six Editions printed on best Rag-made printing paper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>of obedience.</th>
<th>Width of Margin.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thou testes.</td>
<td>7 1/4 inches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td>7 1/4 inches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>7 1/4 inches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ness</td>
<td>7 1/4 inches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IS. and professions of obedience.

- **Ps.** 32:1-25: My soul cleaveth unto the dust, that thou wilt hear my voice; and 26 I have declared my ways, and thou knowest me: so shall I understand the way of thy precepts; and 27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts; and 28 My soul melteth for heaviness;...  

#### IALMS. and professions of obedience.

- **Ps.** 32:1-25: My soul cleaveth unto the dust, that thou wilt hear my voice; and 26 I have declared my ways, and thou knowest me: so shall I understand the way of thy precepts; and 27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts; and 28 My soul melteth for heaviness;...  

#### SALMS. and professions of obedience.

- **Ps.** 32:1-25: My soul cleaveth unto the dust, that thou wilt hear my voice; and 26 I have declared my ways, and thou knowest me: so shall I understand the way of thy precepts; and 27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts; and 28 My soul melteth for heaviness;...  

#### PSAALMS. and professions of obedience.

- **Ps.** 32:1-25: My soul cleaveth unto the dust, that thou wilt hear my voice; and 26 I have declared my ways, and thou knowest me: so shall I understand the way of thy precepts; and 27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts; and 28 My soul melteth for heaviness;...  

#### No. 1. Minion Small 4to. (9 1/2 x 7 1/4 inches.)

- Cloth boards, red edges...
- Persian morocco, limp...
- Best Turkey morocco, limp...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, lined calf, with flap edges...

#### No. 2. Minion Crown 8vo. (7 1/4 x 5 1/2 inches.)

- Cloth boards, red edges...
- French morocco, gilt edges...
- Paste Grain morocco, limp...
- French morocco, circuit edges...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, calf lined, with flap edges...

#### No. 3. Nonpareil 8vo. (7 1/2 x 4 3/4 inches.)

- Persian morocco, red under gold edges...
- Best Turkey morocco...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, calf lined, with flap edges...

#### No. 4. Red Line Edition. Nonpareil 8vo. (7 1/2 x 4 3/4 inches.)

- Persian morocco, red under gold edges...
- Best Turkey morocco...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, calf lined, with flap edges...

#### No. 5. Ruby 16mo. (6 1/2 x 4 3/4 inches.)

- Cloth boards, red edges...
- French morocco, gilt edges...
- Paste Grain morocco, limp...
- French morocco, circuit edges...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, lined calf, with flap edges...

#### No. 6. Pearl 16mo. (5 1/2 x 3 3/4 inches.)

- Cloth boards, red edges...
- French morocco, gilt edges...
- Paste Grain morocco, limp...
- French morocco, circuit edges...
- Best Turkey morocco, circuit edges...
- Levant morocco, calf lined, with flap edges...
THE OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS
CONTAINS THE FOLLOWING
HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE BIBLE.

I. NOTES ANALYTICAL, CHRONOLOGICAL, HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL, ZOOLOGICAL, BOTANICAL, AND GEOLOGICAL.

1. Notes on the Old Testament:
   i. Title of the Bible.
   ii. Hebrew Divisions of the Bible:
      (a) The Law.
      (b) The Prophets.
      (c) The Scriptures.
   iii. Divisions of the English Bible:
      (a) The Prophetic.
      (b) The Historical Books.
      (c) The Poetical Books.
      (d) The Prophetic Books.
   iv. Analysis and Summary of each.


3. Family of the Heroes.


10. Names, Titles, and Offices of Christ.


   i. Early Copies.
   ii. Divisions of the New Testament:
      (a) Constitutional and Historical.
      (b) Didactic.
      (c) Prophetic.
   iii. Analysis and Summary of each.


17. Geography and Topography of Palestine.

18. Mountains of Scripture, with their Associations.

19. Rivers and Lakes of Scripture, and Events connected with each.

20. Ethnology of Bible Lands.

21. Quadrupeds named in the Bible, with Description of each.

22. Summary of Mammalia of the Bible.

23. Fisheries of Palestine, with their Products.


26. Reptiles of Scripture.

27. Insects of Palestine.


29. Geology of Bible Lands:
   i. Mineral Substances, &c.
   ii. Metals.
   iii. Precious Stones.

30. Music and Musical Instruments:
   i. Stringed Instruments.
   ii. Wind Instruments.
   iii. Instruments of Percussion.


32. The Jewish Year.

33. Words Obsolete or Ambiguous.

34. Words Used Symbolically.

35. Blank Leaves for MS. Notes.

II. AN INDEX TO THE HOLY BIBLE.

III. THE NEW OXFORD CONCORDANCE.

IV. DICTIONARY OF SCRIPTURE PROPER NAMES, WITH THEIR PRONUNCIATION, MEANINGS, AND REFERENCES.

V. SCRIPTURE ATLAS (INDEXED).

1. The Nations of the Ancient World.
2. Armenia, Assyria, Babylonia, Syria, &c., in the Patriarchal Ages.
3. Canaan in the Patriarchal Ages.
4. Egypt and the Sinai Peninsula, Illustrating the Journeys of the Israelites to the Promised Land.
5. Canaan as Divided Among the Tribes.
6. Dominions of David and Solomon.
7. The Kingdoms of Judah and Israel.
8. Assyria and the Adjacent Lands, Illustrating the Captivities.
11. The Roman Empire in the Apostolic Age.
THE OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS.

Extracts from Opinions.

"The large collection of varied information which you have appended to the Oxford Bible for Teachers, in a form so readily available for reference, has evidently been compiled with the greatest care; and the testimony which you have received to its accuracy is a guarantee of its high value. I cannot doubt that the volume, in its various forms, will be of great service."—The Archbishop of Canterbury.

"The notion of including in one volume all the helps that a clergyman or teacher would be likely to want for the study of the Bible has never been realised before with the same success that you have attained in the Oxford Bible for Teachers. In the small edition (Ruby 16mo. thin), by the use of paper very skilfully adapted to the purpose, there is a Bible with an Atlas, a Concordance, an Index, and several Tractates on various points of Biblical antiquity, the whole, in a very solid binding, weighing a pound and an ounce: no great weight for what is really a miniature library. The clergy will probably give the preference to the larger book, marked No. 4. This includes the Apocrypha, with all the helps to the use of the Bible that distinguish the series. Its type is excellent. Many clerics are obliged to write sermons when travelling from place to place. This volume would serve as a small library for that purpose, and not too large for the most moderate portmanteau. I think that this work in some of its forms should be in the hands of every teacher. The atlas is very clear and well printed. The explanatory work and the indices, so far as I have been able to examine them, are very carefully done. I am glad that my own University has, by the preparation of this series of books, taken a new step for the promotion of the careful study of the Word of God. That such will be the effect of the publication I cannot doubt."—The Archbishop of York.

"It would be difficult, I think, to provide for Sunday-School Teachers, or indeed for other students of the Bible, so much valuable information in so convenient a form as is now comprised in the Oxford Bible for Teachers."—The Bishop of London.

"The idea of a series of Bibles in different types, corresponding page for page with one another, is one which the Dean has long wished to see realised for the sake of those who find the type of their familiar copies no longer available . . . . The amount of information compressed into the comparatively few pages of the Appendix is wonderful. And the Dean is glad to hear that the help of such eminent contributors has been available for its compilation. The Concordance seems to be sufficiently full for reference to any text that may be required."—The Dean of Rochester.

"Having by frequent use made myself acquainted with this edition of the Holy Scriptures, I have no hesitation in saying that it is a most valuable book, and that the explanatory matter collected in the various appendices cannot but prove most helpful, both to teachers and learners, in acquiring a more accurate and extensive knowledge of the Word of God."—The Bishop of Lichfield.

"I have examined the Oxford Bible for Teachers with very great care, and congratulate you upon the publication of so valuable a work. It contains within a reasonable compass a large mass of most useful information, arranged so conveniently as to be easily accessible, and its effect will be not merely to aid, but also, I think, to stimulate the studies of the reader. The book is also printed so beautifully, and is so handsome in every way, that I expect it will be greatly sought after, as a most acceptable present to any who are engaged in teaching in our Sunday Schools and elsewhere."—The Dean of Canterbury.
THE OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS.

Extracts from Opinions (continued).

"I have examined with some care a considerable portion of the 'Helps to the Study of the Bible,' which are placed at the end of the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS, and have been much struck with the vast amount of really useful information which has there been brought together in a small compass, as well as the accuracy with which it has been compiled. The botanical and geological notices, the account of the animals of Scripture, &c., seem to be excellent, and the maps are admirable. Altogether, the book cannot fail to be of service, not only to teachers, but to all who cannot afford a large library, or who have not time for much independent study."—The Dean of Peterborough.

"I have been for some time well aware of the value of the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS, and have been in the habit of recommending it, not only to Sunday-School Teachers, but to more advanced students, on the ground of its containing a large mass of accurate and well-digested information, useful and in many cases indispensable to the thoughtful reader of Holy Scripture; in fact, along with the Bible, a copious Index, and a Concordance complete enough for all ordinary purposes, this one volume includes a series of short but comprehensive chapters equivalent to a small library of Biblical works."—The Bishop of Limerick.

"Having examined the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS carefully, I am greatly pleased with it. The 'Helps to the Study of the Bible' at the end contain a great amount of most valuable information, well calculated not only to lead to a good understanding of the text, but to stimulate the student to further efforts. It differs from many publications in this, that the information is so admirably arranged, that it is well suited for reference, and is easily available for the student. The edition would be most useful to Sunday-School Teachers, a great help to those who desire that the young shall have a real knowledge of the Word of God."—The Bishop of Cork.

"The OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS may, I think, without exaggeration, be described as a wonderful edition of the Holy Scriptures. The clearness and beauty of the type, and the convenient shape of the volume, leave nothing to be desired. I know nothing of the same compass which can be compared to the 'Helps to the Study of the Bible' for fulness of information and general accuracy of treatment. It is only real learning which can accomplish such a feat of compression."—The Bishop of Derby and Raphoe.

"I consider the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS to be simply the most valuable edition of the English Bible ever presented to the public."—The Ven. Archdeacon Rechen.

"The OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS is in every respect, as regards type, paper, binding, and general information, the most perfect volume I have ever examined."—The Rev. Preliminary Wilson, of the National Society's Depository.

"The essence of fifty expensive volumes, by men of sacred learning, is condensed into the pages of the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS."—The Rev. Andrew Thomson, D.D., Edinburgh.

"The latest researches are laid under contribution, and the Bible Student is furnished with the pick of them all."—Dr. Stoughton.

"The whole combine to form a Help of the greatest value."—Dr. Angus.

"I cannot imagine anything more complete or more helpful."—Dr. W. Morley Punshon.

"I congratulate the teacher who possesses it, and knows how to turn its 'Helps' to good account."—Dr. Kennedy.
THE OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS.

Extracts from Opinions (continued).

"The OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS is the most valuable help to the study of the Holy Scriptures, within a moderate compass, which I have ever met with. I shall make constant use of it; and imagine that few who are occupied with, or interested in the close study of the Scriptures, will allow such a companion to be far from their side."—THE REV. BALDWIN BROWN.

"I do not think I shall ever leave home without the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS, for one can scarcely miss his ordinary books of reference when this Bible is at hand. I know no other edition which contains so much valuable help to the reader."—THE REV. A. H. CHANTERIS, D.D., Dean of the Chapel Royal.

"The OXFORD BIBLES FOR TEACHERS are as good as ever we can expect to see."—THE REV. C. H. SPURGEON.

"The modest title of the work scarcely does justice to the range of subjects which it comprehends, and the quality of their treatment. As a manual of Biblical information and an auxiliary of Biblical study, it is unrivalled. It is as exhaustive as it is concise,—no irrelevant matter has been introduced, and nothing essential to Biblical study seems to have been omitted,—and in no instance, so far as I can judge, has thoroughness or accuracy been sacrificed to the necessities of condensation."—THE REV. ROBERT N. YOUNG, of Headingley College, Leeds.

"The OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS is really one of the greatest boons which in our day has been offered to the reading public. The information given is so various, and so complete, as scarcely to leave a single desideratum. To Christians, in their quiet researches at home, or in the course of extensive journeys, or in preparation for the duties of tuition, it is simply invaluable, and constitutes in itself a Biblical Library. The range of topics which it seeks to illustrate is very great, while the care and accuracy manifest in the articles deserves the highest praise. It is no exaggeration to say, that to the mass of Christian people it saves the expense of purchasing and the toil of consulting a library of volumes. At the same time, I know no book more likely to stimulate enquiry, and to give the power of appreciating further research into the history, structures, and meaning of the Sacred Oracles."—DR. GOOLD, of Edinburgh.

"I have only recently possessed one of the OXFORD BIBLES FOR TEACHERS; and after a most patient examination of it, am astonished at the immense amount of accurate and carefully digested matter it contains: and that, too, of a kind precisely adapted to the Teacher's needs. Would that such a Bible had been within my reach when I first began my teaching life; and would that I had possessed one earlier, since I began to write for Teachers. As I look at its upwards of 300 pages of 'Helps to the Study of the Bible,' I recall my toilsome pilgrimage through many volumes, at much expenditure of time, for what is here so distinctly stated and tabulated. With such a desk companion I might have done so much more, and done it so much better. All I can do now is to entreat all Teachers who need a perfectly reliable Bible for study or class purposes, to procure one of the OXFORD BIBLES FOR TEACHERS. This I do most earnestly. And I would add that as a presentation volume by a class to its Teacher, or by a School to its Superintendent, no gift would be better appreciated or more appropriate than the small quarto size with its wide margin, and magnificent type, and superb flexible binding."—THE REV. JAMES COMFYR GRAY, Author of "Class and Desk," "Topical for Teachers," "Biblical Museum," &c., &c.

"These admirable Bibles must tend to extend the fame even of the Oxford Press."—THE RIGHT HON. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.
THE OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS

IS RECOMMENDED BY

The ARCHBISHOP of CanterBURY.
The ARCHBISHOP of YORK,
The BISHOP of LONDON,
The BISHOP of WINDSOR,
The BISHOP of BANGOR,
The BISHOP of CARLISLE,
The BISHOP of CIRICHESTER,
The BISHOP of ELY,
The BISHOP of GLouceSTER and BRISTOL,
The BISHOP of LICHFIELD,
The BISHOP of LLANDAFF,
The BISHOP of MANCHESTER,
The BISHOP of OXFORD,
The BISHOP of PETERBOROUGH,
The BISHOP of RONP.
The BISHOP of ROCHESTER,
The BISHOP of SALISBURY,
The BISHOP of St. ALBANS,
The BISHOP of St. ASAPH,
The BISHOP of St. DAVIDS,
The BISHOP of WORCESTER,
The BISHOP of SODOR and MAN,
The BISHOP of BEDFORD,
The DEAN of GANTEURY,
The DEAN of DURHAM,
The DEAN of RANGOR,
The DEAN of NELLA,
The DEAN of ELY,
The DEAN of EXETER,
The DEAN of HEREFOURD,
The DEAN of LICHFIELD,
The DEAN of LLANDAFF,
The DEAN of MANCHESTER,
The DEAN of NEWCASTLE UPON TYNE,
The DEAN of PETERBOROUGH,
The DEAN of RONP.
The DEAN of ROCHESTER,
The Late DEAN of WORCESTER,
CANON LIDDON,
CANON GREGORY,
The ARCHBISHOP of ARMAGH,
The ARCHBISHOP of DUBLIN,
The BISHOP of MEATH,
The BISHOP of DOWNEY and CONNOR,
The BISHOP of KILDARE,
The BISHOP of LIMERICK,
The BISHOP of DURRY and BAPHOK,
The BISHOP of CASHEL,
The BISHOP of KILMORE,
The BISHOP of CORK,
The BISHOP of O'SBORNE,
The VEN. ARCHDEACON REICHEL,
The PRINCIPAL of THE THEOLOGICAL COLLEGE, GLOUCESTER,
The PRINCIPAL of THE NATIONAL SOCIETY'S TRAINING COLLEGE, BATTERSEA,
The CANON in CHARGE of the DIVINITY SCHOOL, TRURO,
The PRINCIPAL of ST. BEES COLLEGE,
The PRINCIPAL of THE THEOLOGICAL COLLEGE, WELLS,
The PRINCIPAL of LICHFIELD THEOLOGICAL COLLEGE,
The PRINCIPAL, ST. DAVID'S COLLEGE,
Dr. BISH, WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE, M.P., LL.D.
The REV. A. H. CHARTERIS, D.D., Professor of Bibliology in the University of Edinburgh,
Dr. LEE, Professor of Ecclesiastical History in the University of Glasgow,
The Right Hon. JOHN INGLIS, D.C.L., LL.D., Chancellor of the University of Edinburgh,
The EARL of SHAFTESBURY,
Dr. ANGUS,
Dr. STOUGHTON,
The REV. C. H. SPURGEON,
Dr. RIGG, of the Westminster Normal Institution,
Dr. KENNEDY,
The REV. EDWIN PAXTON HOOD,
The REV. W. MORLEY FUNDON, LL.D.,
The REV. HORATIUS BONAR, D.D.,
Dr. GOULD, of Edinburgh,
PROFESSOR BINKER, D.D.,
PROFESSOR BLAIRK, D.D.,
DR. ANDREW THOMSON, of Edinburgh,
Dr. DAVID BROWN, Principal of Free Church College, Aberdeen.
PROFESSOR BALMONT, of Free Church College, Aberdeen.
Dr. W. LINDSEY ALEXANDER,
Dr. ALEXANDER MACLEAREN,
The REV. PRINCIPAL RAINY, D.D., of New College, Edinburgh,
Dr. JAMES MACGREGOR, of Edinburgh,
Dr. G. CO. SMITH, Principal of the Theological Institute, Dundee,
Dr. NEWTH, of New College,
The Rev. E. E. JENKINS, M.A., President of the Wesleyan Conference,
The REV. M. O. OSBORN, Secretary of the Wesleyan Conference,
Dr. GEORGE OSBORN, of the Theological Institution, Richmond,
The REV. R. GREEN,
The REV. W. HUDSON,
The REV. F. GEEVES,
Dr. W. F. POPE, Professor of Theology, Didsbury,
Dr. GERVAISE SMITH,
The REV. GEORGE MARTIN,
Dr. FALDING,
Dr. CHARLES STANFORD,
Dr. LANDELS,
The REV. JOHN H. GODWIN,
The REV. J. C. HARRISON,
The REV. JOSEPH WOOD, M.A.,
Dr. CUMMING,
The REV. COLIN CAMPBELL McKECHNIE,
The REV. R. TUCK, B.A.,
The REV. PRINCIPAL M'CALL, of Hackney College,
The REV. ROBERT N. YOUNG, of Headingley College, Leeds,
The REV. R. VAUGHAN PRYCE, M.A., LL.D., of Chesterhur College,
The REV. PROFESSOR REYNOLDS, B.A., D.D., of Chesterhur College,
The Late Dr. JOSEPH MULLENS, Foreign Secretary of the London Missionary Society,
The REV. T. G. BOOK, B.A., President of the Baptist College, Boston, Leeds,
The REV. CHARLES CHAPMAN, M.A., of Western College, Plymouth,
The REV. ALEXANDER HANNAY, Secretary of the Congregational Union of England and Wales,
The REV. W. H. GRIFFITH, M.A., Principal of Independent College, Tavistock,
Dr. ALEXANDER THOMSON, Professor of Hebrew in the Lancashire Independent College,
The REV. JAMES COMPTON GRAY, Author of "Class and Desk," "Topics for Teachers," "Biblical Museum," etc., etc.,
The REV. J. EDWIN BROWN, B.A.,
Sir CHARLES REED, Chairman of the London School Board,
W. H. GROSER, Chairman of the Publication Committee of the Sunday School Union.
Just Ready, Pica 16mo.

FOUR LIGHT VOLUMES, IN FINGER CASE, FROM £1 3 0.

THE HOLY BIBLE,
FOR THE USE OF INVALIDS.

$7\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{1}{4} \times 4$ inches.

THE LORD is my shepherd;
I shall not want.
2 He maketh me to lie down
in green pastures: he leadeth
me beside the still waters.

4 He that hath clean
and a pure heart; who
not lifted up his soul to
vanity, nor sworn deceit.
5 He shall receive the

IN VARIOUS BINDINGS, FROM 3s. 6d.

THE SMALLEST BIBLE IN THE WORLD.

$4\frac{1}{2} \times 2\frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4}$ inches.

"The type of this dainty little volume, though necessarily very
minute, is clear and legible."—The Times.

"It is printed on tough India paper of extreme thinness, and is
wonderfully clear."—The Guardian.

"When bound in limp morocco leather it weighs less than 3\frac{1}{2} oz."—
The Athenæum.

"It will pass through the post for a penny, and yet contains the whole
of the Authorised Version from Genesis to Revelation."—The Graphic.

"It is not only a curiosity, but so convenient as not to encumber an
ordinary waistcoat pocket."—The Globe.

"It is smaller than an ordinary Prayer-Book, and can be read
easily enough. * * * * It is a curiosity of the Binder's as well as
of the Printer's art."—The Spectator.

"Besides being a marvel as regards size, the little volume is a
model of printing, highly creditable to the Oxford University Press."—
The Standard.

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE,
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
7, PATERNOSTER ROW.